



System Security Configuration Guide for Cisco 8000 Series Routers, IOS XR Release 26.1.x

First Published: 2026-02-28

Americas Headquarters

Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
<http://www.cisco.com>
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

All printed copies and duplicate soft copies of this document are considered uncontrolled. See the current online version for the latest version.

Cisco has more than 200 offices worldwide. Addresses and phone numbers are listed on the Cisco website at www.cisco.com/go/offices.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/about/legal/trademarks.html>. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)

© 2025 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



CONTENTS

PREFACE

Preface xvii

Communications, Services, and Additional Information xvii

CHAPTER 1

New and Changed Feature Information 1

System Security Features Added or Modified in IOS XR Release 26.x.x 1

CHAPTER 2

YANG Data Models for System Security Features 3

Using YANG Data Models 3

CHAPTER 3

Implementing Trustworthy Systems 5

Need for Trustworthy Systems 5

Enable Trust in Hardware 6

Enable Trust in Hardware 6

Hardware Integrity Check Using Chip Guard Functionality 7

Attestation 8

Enable Trust in Software 9

Secure Boot 9

Secure iPXE – Secure Boot Over the Network 12

Verify Secure Boot Status 12

Establish and Maintain Trust at Steady State 12

SELinux 13

SELinux Policy 13

SELinux Mode 14

Role of the SELinux Policy in Boot Process 14

Secure Install 14

RPM Signing and Validation 15

- Third-Party RPMs 15
- SSD Encryption 15
 - DM-Crypt 16
 - AES-NI Support 17
 - CryptSetup 18
 - Encrypted Logical Volume 18
 - SSD Binding 19
 - Data Zeroization 19
- Runtime Defences (RTD) 19
 - Address Space Layout Randomization (ASLR) 19
 - Kernel Address Space Layout Randomization (KASLR) 19
 - Built-in Object Size Checker (BOSC) 20
 - Executable Space Protection (XSpace) 20
 - RTD Monitor 20
- Boot Integrity and Trust Visibility 20
- Secure gRPC 27
- Integrity Measurement Architecture (IMA) 27
 - IMA Signatures 28
- How Trustworthiness is Implemented 28
- Understanding Key Concepts in Security 29
- TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module 31
 - Guidelines for TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module 32
 - Benefits of TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module 33
 - Verify TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module protocols 34

CHAPTER 4

Configuring AAA Services 39

- Prerequisites for Configuring AAA Services 39
- Restrictions for Configuring AAA Services 39
- Information About Configuring AAA Services 40
 - User, User Groups, and Task Groups 40
 - User Categories 40
 - User Groups 40
 - Task Groups 41
 - Administrative Model 42

Administrative Access	42
AAA Database	43
Remote AAA Configuration	43
AAA Configuration	44
Authentication	45
Password Types	46
Type 8 and Type 9 Encryption Methods	46
Type 10 Password Encryption for User Management	46
Deprecation of Type 7 password and Type 5 secret	47
AAA Password Security for FIPS Compliance	52
AAA Password Security Policies	52
Minimum Password Length for First User Creation	55
Password Policy for User Secret	55
Task-based Authorization	56
Task IDs	56
General Usage Guidelines for Task IDs	56
Task IDs for TACACS+ and RADIUS Authenticated Users	57
Task Maps	57
Privilege Level Mapping	59
XML Schema for AAA Services	59
Netconf and Restconf for AAA Services	60
About RADIUS	60
Network Security Situations in Which RADIUS is Unsuitable	61
RADIUS Operation	61
RADIUS with DTLS Protection	62
RADIUS with TLS protection	67
Restrictions for RADIUS with TLS Protection	69
Supported ciphers	69
Configure RADIUS with TLS protection	70
Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) Marking Support for TACACS Packets	71
How to Configure AAA Services	72
Configure Task group	72
Task Group Configuration	73
Configure User Groups	75

Configure First User on Cisco Routers	76
Configure Users	77
Password Masking For Type 7 Password Authentication	80
Configure Type 8 and Type 9 Passwords	81
Configure Type 10 Password Encryption	82
Configure AAA Password Policy	83
Configure Password Policy for User Secret and Password	85
Display Username for Failed Authentication for Telnet Protocols	88
Enable Display of Username for Failed Authentication	90
Password Policy to Restrict Consecutive Characters	90
How to Restrict Consecutive Characters for User Passwords and Secrets	92
Configure Router to RADIUS Server Communication	95
Configure RADIUS Dead-Server Detection	98
Configure Per VRF AAA	100
New Vendor-Specific Attributes (VSAs)	100
Configure TACACS+ Server	102
Configure Authorization for a TACACS+ Server	106
Configure Authentication for a TACACS+ Server	107
Configure Accounting for a TACACS+ Server	108
Configure RADIUS Server Groups	108
Configure TACACS+ Server Groups	110
Configure Per VRF TACACS+ Server Groups	111
View TACACS+ information in Router	113
TACACS+ with TLS protection	117
How TACACS+ with TLS protection work	117
Guidelines for TACACS+ with TLS protection	118
Restrictions for TACACS+ with TLS protection	118
Configure TACACS+ with TLS protection	119
Configure AAA Method Lists	120
Configuring Authentication Method Lists	120
Configuring Authorization Method Lists	122
Configuring Accounting Method Lists	125
Generate Interim Accounting Records	127
Applying Method Lists for Applications	129

Enabling AAA Authorization	129
Enable Accounting Services	130
Configure Login Parameters	131
Command Accounting	132
Command Authorization Using Local User Account	132
Configure Command Authorization Using Local User Account	135
Feature Behavior and Use Case Scenarios	136
Configuration Example for AAA Services	138

CHAPTER 5

Implementing Certification Authority Interoperability	141
Implementing Certification Authority Interoperability	141
Prerequisites for Implementing Certification Authority	142
How to Implement CA Interoperability	142
Configure Router Hostname and IP Domain Name	142
RSA key pairs	143
Import Public Key to the Router	147
Declare Certification Authority and Configure Trusted Point	149
Authenticate CA	150
Request Your Own Certificates	155
CA enrollment URL	155
Configure Certificate Enrollment Using Cut-and-Paste	157
Certificate Authority Trust Pool Management	161
CA Certificate Bundling in the Trust Pool	161
Prerequisites for CA Trust Pool Management	161
Restrictions for CA trust pool management	161
Updating the CA Trustpool	161
Retrieve CRL through the HTTP Proxy Server	163
Configuring Optional Trustpool Policy Parameters	165
Handling of CA Certificates appearing both in Trust Pool and Trust Point	166
Expiry Notification for PKI Certificate	166
Learn About the PKI Alert Notification	167
Restrictions for PKI Credentials Expiry Alerts	168
Regenerate the Certificate	168
Automatic renewal of PKI certificate	169

- Pre-requisites 171
- Configuration Guidelines 172
- Configuration Example 172
- Integrating Cisco IOS XR and Crosswork Trust Insights 172
 - How to Integrate Cisco IOS XR and Crosswork Trust Insights 173
- Support for Ed25519 Public-Key Signature System 188
 - Generate Crypto Key for Ed25519 Signature Algorithm 189
 - Integrate Cisco IOS XR with Cisco Crosswork Trust Insights using Ed25519 190
- Public key-pairs 191
 - Usage guidelines for public key-pairs 193
 - Generate public key-pairs in XR config mode 193
 - System logs and error messages 194
- Information About Implementing Certification Authority 196
 - Supported Standards for Certification Authority Interoperability 196
 - Certification Authorities 197
 - Purpose of CAs 197
 - CA Registration Authorities 197

CHAPTER 6

Implementing Keychain Management 199

- Prerequisites for Configuring Keychain Management 199
- Restrictions for Implementing Keychain Management 199
- Information About Implementing Keychain Management 199
 - Lifetime of Key 200
- How to Implement Keychain Management 200
 - Configure Keychain 200
 - Configure Tolerance Specification to Accept Keys 202
 - Configure Key Identifier for Keychain 202
 - Configure Text for Key String 203
 - Determine Valid Keys 204
 - Configure Keys to Generate Authentication Digest for Outbound Application Traffic 205
 - Configure Cryptographic Algorithm 206
- Configuration Examples for Implementing Keychain Management 208
 - Configuring Keychain Management: Example 208

CHAPTER 7	MACSec Using EAP-TLS Authentication	209
	Guidelines and Limitations for EAP-TLS Authentication	209
	IEEE 802.1X Device Roles	210
	Prerequisites for MACSec MKA Using EAP-TLS Authentication	210
	MACsec with Local EAP-TLS Authentication	210
	Configure MACSec Encryption Using EAP-TLS Authentication	210
	Configure RADIUS Server	211
	Configure 802.1X Authentication Method	211
	Generate RSA Key Pair	211
	Configure Trustpoint	213
	Configure Domain Name	213
	Authenticate Certificate Authority and Request Certificates	213
	Configure EAP Profile	214
	Configure 802.1X Profile on the Device	214
	Configure MACSec EAP and 802.1X Profile on an Interface	215
	Verify MACSec EAP and 802.1X Configuration on Interface	215

CHAPTER 8	Implementing uRPF	219
	Understanding uRPF	219
	Configuring uRPF in Loose Mode	221
	Configuring uRPF in Strict Mode	222

CHAPTER 9	Implementing Type 6 Password Encryption	227
	How to Implement Type 6 Password Encryption	227
	Enabling Type6 Feature and Creating a Primary Key (Type 6 Server)	227
	Implementing Key Chain for BGP Sessions (Type 6 Client)	230
	Creating a BGP Session (Type 6 Password Encryption Use Case)	231

CHAPTER 10	Implementing Management Plane Protection	233
	Prerequisites for Implementing Management Plane Protection	233
	Restrictions for Implementing Management Plane Protection	233
	Information About Implementing Management Plane Protection	234
	Inband Management Interface	234

Out-of-Band Management Interface	234
Peer-Filtering on Interfaces	234
Control Plane Protection Overview	234
Management Plane	235
Management Plane Protection Feature	235
Benefits of the Management Plane Protection Feature	236
How to Configure a Device for Management Plane Protection	236
Configuring a Device for Management Plane Protection for an Inband Interface	236
Configuring a Device for Management Plane Protection for an Out-of-band Interface	237
Configuration Examples for Implementing Management Plane Protection	237
Configuring Management Plane Protection: Example	238
Additional References	239

CHAPTER 11
Implementing Secure Shell 241

Information About Implementing Secure Shell	242
SSH Server	243
SSH Client	243
SFTP Feature Overview	243
RSA Based Host Authentication	244
RSA Based User Authentication	245
SSHv2 Client Keyboard-Interactive Authentication	246
SSH and SFTP in Baseline Cisco IOS XR Software Image	246
CiscoSSH	247
Guidelines for Using CiscoSSH	249
Netconf access controls	253
Benefits of Netconf access control	254
Best practice for Netconf access control	254
Restrictions for Netconf access control	255
How Netconf access control works	255
Configure Netconf access control	256
Prerequisites for Implementing Secure Shell	257
Guidelines and Restrictions for Implementing Secure Shell	257
How to Implement Secure Shell	258
Configure SSH	258

Automatic generation of SSH host-key pairs	261
Configure the Allowed SSH Host-Key Pair Algorithms	263
Ed25519 Public-Key Signature Algorithm Support for SSH	264
How to Generate Ed25519 Public Key for SSH	266
Configure the SSH Client	266
Order of SSH Client Authentication Methods	268
How to Set the Order of Authentication Methods for SSH Clients	268
Configure Secure Shell: Example	268
Multi-channeling in SSH	269
Restrictions for Multi-channeling Over SSH	269
Client and Server Interaction Over Multichannel Connection	269
Configure Client for Multiplexing	270
SSH Configuration Option to Restrict Cipher Public Key and HMAC Algorithm	271
Disable HMAC Algorithm	272
Enable Cipher Public Key	272
User Configurable Maximum Authentication Attempts for SSH	274
Configure Maximum Authentication Attempts for SSH	275
X.509v3 Certificate-based Authentication for SSH	276
Configure X.509v3 Certificate-based Authentication for SSH	280
OpenSSH Certificate based Authentication for Router	286
Feature Highlights	289
Prerequisites	289
Configuration Example	289
Certificate-based user authentication using TACACS+ server	297
Public Key-Based Authentication of SSH Clients	298
Enable Public Key-Based Authentication of SSH Client	301
Public key-based Authentication to SSH Server on Routers	303
Guidelines and Restrictions for Public key-based authentication to Routers	306
Configure Public key-based Authentication to Routers	307
Delete Public Keys in the Routers	309
Multi-Factor Authentication for SSH	310
Multi-Factor Authentication Workflow	311
Set Up Multi-Factor Authentication for SSH	312
Selective Authentication Methods for SSH Server	315

Disable SSH Server Authentication Methods	316
SSH Port Forwarding	317
How to Enable SSH Port Forwarding	319
DSCP Marking for SSH Packets	322
Set DSCP Marking for SSH Packets from TCP Connection Phase	323
SSH server timeouts	324
Unused connection timeout for SSH sessions	324
Channel timeout for SSH sessions	328

CHAPTER 12**Configuring FIPS Mode 333**

Prerequisites for Configuring FIPS	334
How to Configure FIPS	334
Enable FIPS mode	335
Configure FIPS-compliant Keys	336
Configure FIPS-compliant Key Chain	339
Configure FIPS-compliant Certificates	340
Configure FIPS-compliant OSPFv3	341
Configure FIPS-compliant SNMPv3 Server	343
Configure FIPS-compliant SSH Client and Server	343

CHAPTER 13**Implementing Secure Logging 347**

System Logging over Transport Layer Security (TLS)	347
Restrictions for Syslogs over TLS	349
Configuring Syslogs over TLS	349
Security template framework for TLS applications	351
Restriction for security template	353
Configuration guidelines for security template framework	353
How security template framework works	354
Configure security template	356
TLS RFC 5289 compliance for security template	360

CHAPTER 14**Implementing MAC Authentication Bypass 361**

MAC Authentication Bypass	361
Configure MAC Authentication Bypass	366

CHAPTER 15**Cisco MASA Service 371**

- Why Do I Need Cisco MASA? 374
- Use Cases for Ownership Vouchers 374
- Authentication Flow 375
- Interacting with the MASA Server 376
 - Interacting with MASA Through Web Application 378
 - Interacting with MASA Through REST APIs 382
 - Interaction with MASA through gRPC 383
- Workflow to Provision a Router Using Ownership Voucher 384

CHAPTER 16**Implementing Lawful Intercept 387**

- Implementing lawful intercept 387
- Prerequisites for Implementing Lawful Intercept 389
- Restrictions and Usage Guidelines for Implementing Lawful Intercept 389
- Lawful Intercept Topology 390
- Benefits of Lawful Intercept 391
- Installing Lawful Intercept (LI) Package 392
 - Installing and Activating the LI Package 392
 - Uninstalling the LI Package 394
- How to Configure SNMPv3 Access for Lawful Intercept 397
 - Disabling SNMP-based Lawful Intercept 397
 - Configuring the Inband Management Plane Protection Feature 397
 - Enabling the Lawful Intercept SNMP Server Configuration 398
- Additional Information on Lawful Intercept 399
 - Interception Mode 399
 - Data Interception 399
 - Scale or Performance Values 399
 - Intercepting IPv4 and IPv6 Packets 399
 - Lawful Intercept Filters 399
 - Encapsulation Type Supported for Intercepted Packets 400
 - High Availability for Lawful Intercept 400
 - Preserving TAP and MD Tables during RP Fail Over 400
 - Replay Timer 401

CHAPTER 17	Device Ownership	403
	Establishing device ownership	403
	Clear device ownership	406
	Security profiles for Cisco IOS XR software	407

CHAPTER 18	Consent Tokens for Privileged Operations	409
	Provisioning Cisco-signed consent tokens	410
	Provisioning customer consent tokens	411

CHAPTER 19	Provision Third-party Key Packages	413
	Key packages	413
	Prerequisites for key packages	415
	Restrictions for key packages	416
	Install key packages on the router	416
	Handling key rotation	418

CHAPTER 20	EST protocol for Automated Certificate Provisioning	419
	EST protocol for automated certificate provisioning	419
	Configure the EST protocol	423

CHAPTER 21	802-1x Port Based Authentication	427
	802.1X port-based authentication	427
	Prerequisites for 802.1X Port-Based Authentication	430
	Usage guidelines and restrictions for 802.1X port-based authentication	430
	Understanding 802.1X Port-Based Authentication	431
	Configure 802.1X host-modes	432
	Configure 802.1X with remote RADIUS authentication	432
	Configure 802.1X with local EAP authentication	434
	Configure router as 802.1X supplicant	435
	Verify 802.1X Port-Based Authentication	436
	Show Command Outputs	436
	Syslog Messages	437

802.1X port-based authentication with MAB fallback	438
Conditions for MAB fallback from 802.1X authentication	439
Authentication failure scenarios of 802.1X and MAB	439
802.1X authentication failure scenarios	439
MAB authentication failure scenarios	440
Configure 802.1X port-based authentication with MAB fallback	440
RADIUS Change of Authorization for 802.1X and MAB sessions	442
RADIUS CoA requests for 802.1X and MAB sessions	443
Guideline for supporting RADIUS CoA for 802.1X and MAB sessions	445
Enable RADIUS CoA for 802.1X and MAB sessions	445



Preface

This guide describes the configuration procedure and examples for system security in Cisco 8000 Series Routers.

- [Communications, Services, and Additional Information](#), on page xvii

Communications, Services, and Additional Information

- To receive timely, relevant information from Cisco, sign up at [Cisco Profile Manager](#).
- To get the business results you're looking for with the technologies that matter, visit [Cisco Services](#).
- To submit a service request, visit [Cisco Support](#).
- To discover and browse secure, validated enterprise-class apps, products, solutions and services, visit [Cisco DevNet](#).
- To obtain general networking, training, and certification titles, visit [Cisco Press](#).
- To find warranty information for a specific product or product family, access [Cisco Warranty Finder](#).

Cisco Bug Search Tool

[Cisco Bug Search Tool \(BST\)](#) is a web-based tool that acts as a gateway to the Cisco bug tracking system that maintains a comprehensive list of defects and vulnerabilities in Cisco products and software. BST provides you with detailed defect information about your products and software.



CHAPTER 1

New and Changed Feature Information

This chapter lists all the features that have been added or modified in this guide. The table also contains references to these feature documentation sections.

- [System Security Features Added or Modified in IOS XR Release 26.x.x, on page 1](#)

System Security Features Added or Modified in IOS XR Release 26.x.x

Feature	Description	Changed in Release	Where Documented
802.1X port-based authentication	This feature was enhanced.	Release 26.1.1	802.1X port-based authentication, on page 427
SSH key strength: 3072 bits by default	This feature was introduced.	Release 26.1.1	Automatic generation of SSH host-key pairs, on page 261



CHAPTER 2

YANG Data Models for System Security Features

This chapter provides information about the YANG data models for System Security features.

- [Using YANG Data Models, on page 3](#)

Using YANG Data Models

Cisco IOS XR supports a programmatic way of configuring and collecting operational data of a network device using YANG data models. Although configurations using CLIs are easier and human-readable, automating the configuration using model-driven programmability results in scalability.

The data models are available in the release image, and are also published in the [Github](#) repository. Navigate to the release folder of interest to view the list of supported data models and their definitions. Each data model defines a complete and cohesive model, or augments an existing data model with additional XPath. To view a comprehensive list of the data models supported in a release, navigate to the **Available-Content.md** file in the repository.

You can also view the data model definitions using the [YANG Data Models Navigator](#) tool. This GUI-based and easy-to-use tool helps you explore the nuances of the data model and view the dependencies between various containers in the model. You can view the list of models supported across Cisco IOS XR releases and platforms, locate a specific model, view the containers and their respective lists, leaves, and leaf lists presented visually in a tree structure. This visual tree form helps you get insights into nodes that can help you automate your network.

To get started with using the data models, see the *Programmability Configuration Guide*.



CHAPTER 3

Implementing Trustworthy Systems

This chapter describes the key components that form the trustworthy security system in Cisco 8000 Series Routers.

- [Need for Trustworthy Systems, on page 5](#)
- [Enable Trust in Hardware, on page 6](#)
- [Enable Trust in Software, on page 9](#)
- [Establish and Maintain Trust at Steady State, on page 12](#)
- [How Trustworthiness is Implemented, on page 28](#)
- [Understanding Key Concepts in Security, on page 29](#)
- [TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module , on page 31](#)

Need for Trustworthy Systems

Global service providers, enterprises, and government networks rely on the unimpeded operation of complex computing and communications networks. The integrity of the data and IT infrastructure is foundational to maintaining the security of these networks and user trust. With the evolution to anywhere, anytime access to personal data, users expect the same level of access and security on every network. The threat landscape is also changing, with adversaries becoming more aggressive. Protecting networks from attacks by malevolent actors and from counterfeit and tampered products becomes even more crucial.

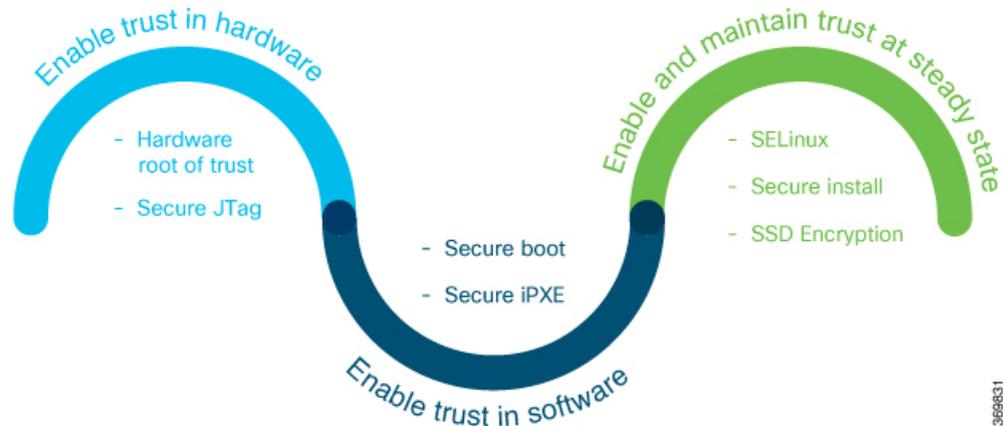
Routers are the critical components of the network infrastructure and must be able to protect the network and report on system integrity. A “trustworthy solution” is one that does what it is *expected* to do in a *verifiable* way. Building trustworthy solutions requires that security is a primary design consideration. Routers that constitute trustworthy systems are a function of security, and trust is about preventing as well as knowing whether systems have been tampered with.

In trustworthy systems, trust starts at the lowest levels of hardware and is carried through the boot process, into the operating system (OS) kernel, and finally into runtime in the OS.

The main components of implementing a trustworthy system are:

- Enabling trust in hardware with Hardware root-of-trust and secure JTAG
- Enabling trust in software with secure boot and secure iPXE
- Enabling and maintaining trust at steady state with Security-Enhanced Linux (SELinux), Secure install, and SSD Encryption

Figure 1: Ecosystem of Trustworthy Systems



Trustworthy systems must have methods to securely measure hardware, firmware, and software components and to securely attest to these secure measurements.

For information on key concepts used in this chapter, see the [Understanding Key Concepts in Security](#).

Enable Trust in Hardware

Trust in the hardware is enabled through:

Enable Trust in Hardware

The first component in implementing a trustworthy system is to enable trust in hardware.

Because software alone can't prove a system's integrity, truly establishing trust must also be done in the hardware using a hardware-anchored root of trust. Without a hardware root of trust, no amount of software signatures or secure software development can protect the underlying system from becoming compromised. To be effective, this root of trust must be based on an immutable hardware component that establishes a chain of trust at boot-time. Each piece of code in the boot process measures and checks the signature of the next stage of the boot process before the software boots.

A hardware-anchored root of trust is achieved through:

- **Anti-counterfeit chip:** All modules that include a CPU, as well as the chassis, are fitted with an anti-counterfeit chip, which supports co-signed secure boot, secure storage, and boot-integrity-visibility. The chip ensures that the device's software and hardware are authentic and haven't been tampered with or modified in any way. It also helps to prevent unauthorized access to the device's sensitive data by enforcing strong authentication and access control policies.
- **Secure Unique Device Identifier (SUDI):** The X.509 SUDI certificate installed at manufacturing provides a unique device identifier. SUDI helps to enable anti-counterfeit checks along with authentication and remote provisioning. The SUDI is generated using a combination of the device's unique hardware identifier (such as its serial number or MAC address) and a private key that is securely stored within the device. This ensures that each SUDI is unique and cannot be easily duplicated or forged. When a device attempts to connect to a network, the network uses the SUDI to authenticate the device, and ensure that it's

authorized to connect. This helps to prevent unauthorized access to the network and ensures that only trusted devices are allowed to connect.

- **Secure JTAG:** The secure JTAG interface is used for debugging and downloading firmware. This interface with asymmetric-key based authentication and verification protocols prevents attackers from modifying firmware or stealing confidential information. Secure JTAG typically involves a combination of hardware and software-based security measures. For example, it may include the use of encryption and authentication protocols to secure communications between the JTAG interface and the debugging tool. It may also involve the use of access control policies and permissions to restrict access to the JTAG interface to authorized users only.



Note Hardware-anchored root of trust is enabled by default on Cisco 8000 Series routers.

Verification

You can verify if trust is enabled in the hardware by executing the following command:

```
Router#show platform security integrity hardware
Wed Apr 17 11:19:03.202 UTC

+-----+
Node location: node0_RP0_CPU0
+-----+
TPM Name: node0_RP0_CPU0_aikido
Uptime: 52050
Known-good-digests:
Index  value
  0    hh4jzFB1xSGHZ4hKqnC2FEjqHg4tpx/chZ7YcTwLCco=
observed-digests:
Index  value
  0    hh4jzFB1xSGHZ4hKqnC2FEjqHg4tpx/chZ7YcTwLCco=
PCRs:
Index  value
  15   D11BGskyzeJ1LNYKuZK8Qq1lwkth0ru+0xWydL9YMdc=
```

Hardware Integrity Check Using Chip Guard Functionality

The chip guard feature helps detect if attackers have replaced a Cisco router's Application Specific Integrated Circuit (ASIC) chip or CPU chip with a counterfeit one when the device is in the manufacturing supply chain. The ASIC performs critical functions, such as scanning an egress queue for error causes and a CPU runs the operating system. If these chips are counterfeited, the performance, reliability, and security of the router is compromised. During the hardware integrity check, at the time of device boot, if the chip guard feature identifies a counterfeit ASIC or CPU, it halts the secure boot process and displays a warning to inform that the supply chain integrity has been compromised.

Why do We Need Chip Guard

The increased hardware supply chain attacks compromise physical components, where attackers replace the ASIC or CPU on a router with malware-infested chips. Once the ASIC or CPU is replaced, the integrity of the hardware is compromised. Counterfeit chips in a router may have hidden functionalities to create a larger security vulnerability. Cisco's chip guard feature detects counterfeit chips before the router is deployed in the network.

Stages of Chip Guard Implementation

The table shows the various stages through which chip guard is implemented on the router.

Stage	Process/Action	Result
1. Router Manufacturing	SHA 256 hashes of the electronic chip IDs of both the CPU and ASIC are programmed in the TAM chip and stored in a database known as Imprint DB.	The Imprint DB inside the TAM chip contains the SHA 256 hashes, which cannot be modified during the router's lifetime.
2. Router Deployed in the Field and Powered Up	During the secure boot process, the chip guard feature recomputes the SHA 256 hashes of the electronic chip IDs of both the CPU and ASIC and creates a database known as Observed DB.	The Observed DB values are stored inside the TAM chip.
3. Comparison of Imprint DB and Observed DB	DBs match	The router continues to boot. Depending on the capability of the underlying router, the chip guard feature validates either the CPU, ASIC, or both.
	DBs do not match	The router notifies that either the CPU or ASIC is counterfeit, and the secure boot process halts. A message is displayed on the console about the chip guard validation failure.

Action to be Taken on Hardware Validation Failure

If you receive a chip guard warning about integrity check failure, you must create a service request on the [Products Returns & Replacement \(RMA\)](#) website.

Attestation

Attestation enables external verifiers to check the integrity of the software running on the host. Implementing this feature on Cisco hardware helps you validate the trustworthiness of the hardware and software of network devices.

Once a router is up and running, you can send a request to an external verifier. The external verifier requests an attestation quote from the router. The TAM chip can output the PCR quote and audit log, and it signs the quote using an attestation private key for that specific router and responds to the verifier. The verifier uses Cisco-provided KGV hashes and the Attestation Public Certificate to verify the attested PCR quotes and audit logs. This verification is protected against repeat attacks using a nonce. Besides this, the verification ensures that the attestation is specific to a particular router by using attestation key pairs. These attestation key pairs are unique to each router. This ensures that attackers do not tamper with the router hardware, boot keys, boot configuration, and running software.

Proof of hardware integrity is recorded in the TAM as part of Chip Guard. This proof is made available through the following command:



Note The same data is also available through NETCONF for a remote attestation server:
Cisco-IOS-XR-remote-attestation-act.yang.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:NCS-540-C-LNT#show platform security attest pcr 0 trustpoint ciscoaik nonce
4567 location 0/RP0/CPU0
Thu Apr 11 05:44:10.808 UTC
Nonce: 4567

+-----+
Node location: node0_RP0_CPU0
+-----+
Uptime: 1198700
pcr-quote:
/IR4VACkxSBMkz6NurifDQRMBlG6pIhaeKFZWLp0FCRWGAAWBSfDPA97////AQWACQAWLAWWQALAWWAgE798LlOk4pIkyt50kG0^46LIQtuSvGUjG8y#
pcr-quote-signature:
mO8oFWzqStge3lDLXCs/Ez7ERksZyMb4auhJagWHa3aHsa9eME34Y/FMfIttjeAhcs<truncated>dUtpsPMGkrcroLIquTnaDlqKII+Gh4QbewdNky3Igiw#
pcr-index      pcr-value
  0              sL3H+Em2xzxXrNUoDF+kC47IXxN4V/d/7hYUXApXNoY=
```

See the [System Security Command Reference guide](#) for more commands.

Enable Trust in Software

The second component in implementing a trustworthy system is to enable trust in software.

In Cisco IOS XR7, trust in the software is enabled through:

- Secure Boot
- Secure iPX

Secure Boot

Table 1: Feature History Table

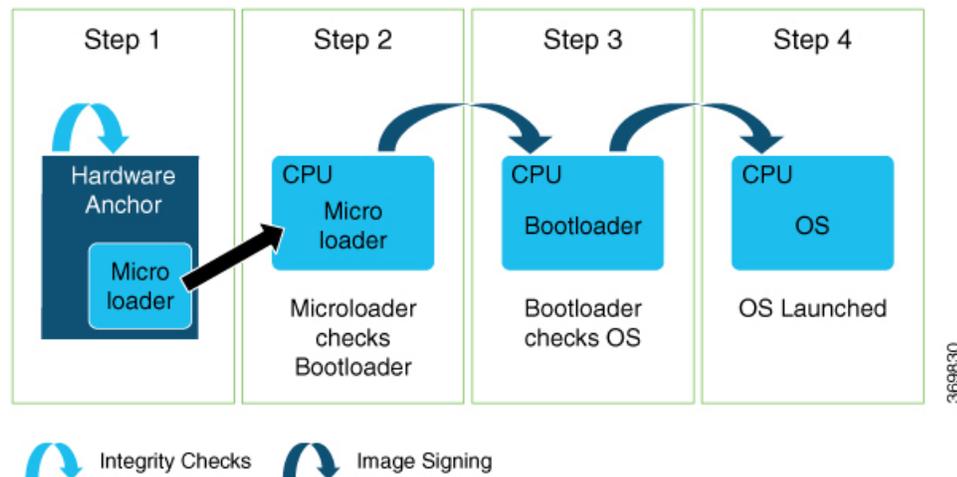
Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Secure Boot Status	Release 25.4.1	Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*) *This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8011-12G12X4Y-A • 8011-12G12X4Y-D

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Secure Boot Status	Release 25.1.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I
Secure Boot Status	Release 24.4.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM
Secure Boot Status	Release 7.8.1	<p>You can now verify whether the router is securely booted up with an authentic Cisco software image. We have introduced a show command to verify the secure boot status of the router. If the software image was tampered with, then the secure boot fails, and the router does not boot up. Before this release, there was no provision on the router to verify the secure boot status.</p> <p>The feature introduces these:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CLI: show platform security integrity log secure-boot status command. • YANG Data Model: Cisco-IOS-XR-attestation-agent-oper.yang Cisco native model (see GitHub)

Cisco Secure Boot helps to ensure that the code that executes as part of the software image boot up on Cisco routers is authentic and unmodified. Cisco IOS XR7 platforms support the hardware-anchored secure boot which is based on the standard Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI). This UEFI-based secure boot

protects the microloader (the first piece of code that boots) in tamper-resistant hardware, establishing a root of trust that helps prevent Cisco network devices from executing tainted network software.

Figure 2: Secure Boot



The intent of Secure Boot is to have a trust anchor module (TAM) in hardware that verifies the bootloader code. A fundamental feature of secure boot is the barrier it provides that makes it extremely difficult or nearly impossible to bypass these hardware protections.

Secure boot ensures that the bootloader code is a genuine, unmodified Cisco piece of code and that code is capable of verifying the next piece of code that is loaded onto the system. It is enabled by default.

When secure boot authenticates the software as genuine Cisco in a Cisco device with the TAM, the operating system then queries the TAM to verify whether the hardware is authentic. It verifies by cryptographically checking the TAM for a secure unique device identifier (SUDI) that comes only from Cisco.

The SUDI is permanently programmed into the TAM and logged by Cisco during Cisco's closed, secured, and audited manufacturing processes.

Booting the System with Trusted Software

In Cisco IOS XR7, the router supports the UEFI-based secure boot with Cisco-signed boot artifact verification. The following takes place:

Step 1: At bootup, the system verifies every artifact using the keys in the TAM.

Step 2: The following packages are verified and executed:

- Bootloader (Grand Unified Bootloader (GRUB), GRUB configuration, Preboot eXecution Environment (PXE), netboot)
- Initial RAM disk (Initrd)
- Kernel (operating system)

Step 3: Kernel is launched.

Step 4: Init process is launched.

Step 5: All Cisco IOS XR RPMs are installed with signature verification.

Step 6: All required services are launched.

Secure iPXE – Secure Boot Over the Network

The iPXE server is an HTTP server discovered using DHCP that acts as an image repository server. Before downloading the image from the server, the Cisco router must authenticate the iPXE server.



Note A secure iPXE server must support HTTPS with self-signed certificates.

The Cisco router uses certificate-based authentication to authenticate the iPXE server. The router:

- Downloads the iPXE self-signed certificates
- Uses the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP)
- Acquires the root certificate chain and checks if it's self-signed

The root certificate chain is used to authenticate the iPXE server. After successful authentication, a secure HTTPS channel is established between the Cisco router and the iPXE server. Bootstrapper protocol (Bootp), ISO, binaries, and scripts can now be downloaded on this secure channel.

Verify Secure Boot Status

Verify Secure Boot Status

Use the **show platform security integrity log secure-boot status** command to verify the secure boot status of the router. If the router boots up securely, then the **show** command output displays the status as *Enabled*. If the router does not support this secure boot verification functionality, then the status is displayed as *Not Supported*.

```
Router#show platform security integrity log secure-boot status
Wed Aug 10 15:39:17.871 UTC

+-----+
| Node location: node0_RP0_CPU0 |
+-----+
Secure Boot Status: Enabled
Router#
```

If the software image was tampered, then the secure boot fails and the router does not come up. The system displays corresponding error logs at various stages of boot up process. For example,

```
Bad signature file...
/initrd.img verification using Pkcs7 signature failed.
error: Security Violation: /initrd.img failed to load.
System halting...
```

Establish and Maintain Trust at Steady State

The third component in implementing a trustworthy system is to maintain trust in the steady or runtime state.

Attackers are seeking long-term compromise of systems and using effective techniques to compromise and persist within critical infrastructure devices. Hence, it is critical to establish and maintain trust within the network infrastructure devices at all points during the system runtime.

In Cisco IOS XR7, trust is established and maintained in a steady state through:

- SELinux
 - SELinux Policy
 - SeLinux Mode
- Secure Install
 - RPM Signing and Validation
 - Third-Party RPMs
- SSD Encryption

SELinux

Security-Enhanced Linux (SELinux) is a Linux kernel security module that provides a mechanism for supporting access control security policies, including mandatory access controls (MAC).

A kernel integrating SELinux enforces MAC policies that confine user programs and system servers to the minimum amount of privileges they require to do their jobs. This reduces or eliminates the ability of these programs and daemons to cause harm when compromised (for example, through buffer overflows or misconfigurations). This confinement mechanism operates independently of the traditional Linux access control mechanisms. SELinux has no concept of a "root" super-user and does not share the well-known shortcomings of the traditional Linux security mechanisms (such as a dependence on `setuid/setgid` binaries).

On Cisco IOS XR7 software, only Targeted SELinux policies are used, so that only third-party applications are affected by the policies; all Cisco IOS XR programs can run with full root permission.

With Targeted SELinux, using targeted policies, processes that are targeted run in a confined domain. For example, the `httpd` process runs in the `httpd_t` domain. If a confined process is compromised by an attacker, depending on the SELinux policy configuration, the attacker's access to resources and the possible damage that can result is limited.



Note Processes running in unconfined domains fall back to using discretionary access control (DAC) rules.

DAC is a type of access control defined as a means of restricting access to objects based on the identity of the subjects or the groups (or both) to which they belong.

SELinux Policy

Each Linux user is mapped to an SELinux user through an SELinux policy. This allows Linux users to inherit the restrictions placed on SELinux users.

If an unconfined Linux user executes an application, which an SELinux policy defines as an application that can transition from the `unconfined_t` domain to its own confined domain, the unconfined Linux user is subject to the restrictions of that confined domain. The security benefit is that, even though a Linux user is running

in unconfined mode, the application remains confined. Therefore, the exploitation of a flaw in the application is limited by the policy.

A confined Linux user is restricted by a confined user domain against the unconfined_t domain. The SELinux policy can also define a transition from a confined user domain to its own target confined domain. In such a case, confined Linux users are subject to the restrictions of that target confined domain.

SELinux Mode

There are three SELinux modes:

- **Enforcing:** When SELinux is running in enforcing mode, it enforces the SELinux policy and denies access based on SELinux policy rules.
- **Permissive:** In permissive mode, the SELinux does not enforce policy, but logs any denials. Permissive mode is used for debugging and policy development. This is the default mode.
- **Disabled:** In disabled mode, no SELinux policy is loaded. The mode may be changed in the boot loader, SELinux config, or at runtime with **setenforce**.

Role of the SELinux Policy in Boot Process

SELinux plays an important role during system startup. Because all processes must be labeled with their proper domain, the init process performs essential actions early in the boot process that synchronize labeling and policy enforcement.

Secure Install

The Cisco IOS XR software is shipped as RPMs. Each RPM consists of one or more processes, libraries, and other files. An RPM represents a collection of software that performs a similar functionality; for example, packages of BGP, OSPF, as well as the Cisco IOS XR Infra libraries and processes.

RPMs can also be installed into the base Linux system outside the Cisco IOS XR domain; however, those RPMs must also be appropriately signed.

All RPMs shipped from Cisco are secured using digitally signed Cisco private keys.

There are three types of packages that can be installed:

- Packages shipped by Cisco (open source or proprietary)
- Customer packages that replace Cisco provided packages
- Customer packages that do not replace Cisco provided packages

RPM Signing and Validation

Table 2: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
RPM Signing and Validation	Release 25.4.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8011-12G12X4Y-A • 8011-12G12X4Y-D

RPMs are signed using Cisco keys during the build process.

The install component of the Cisco IOS XR automatically performs various actions on the RPMs, such as verification, activation, deactivation, and removal. Many of these actions invoke the underlying DNF installer. During each of these actions, the DNF installer verifies the signature of the RPM to ensure that it operates on a legitimate package.

Cisco RPMs are signed using GPG keys. The RPM format has an area dedicated to hold the signature of the header and payload and these are verified and validated via DNF package managers.

Third-Party RPMs

The XR Install enforces signature validation using the ‘gpgcheck’ option of DNF. Thus, any Third-Party RPM packages installation fails if done through the XR Install (which uses the DNF).

SSD Encryption

Table 3: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
SSD Encryption for Addiitonal PIDs	Release 25.1.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
SSD Encryption for Addiitonal PIDs	Release 24.4.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM
Solid State Drive (SSD) Encryption	Release 7.3.1	<p>This feature enables trust and security in the system's steady state by encrypting data at the disk level. The encrypted data can be accessed <i>only</i> with a specific key stored in the TAM.</p>

Customers are concerned about the security of sensitive data present on persistent storage media. User passwords are limited in their capability to protect data against attackers who can bypass the software systems and directly access the storage media.

In this case, only encryption can guarantee data confidentiality.

Cisco IOS XR Software introduces SSD encryption that allows encrypting data at the disk level. SSD encryption also ensures that the encrypted data is specific to a system and is accessible *only* with a specific key to decrypt them.

Data that can be encrypted is sensitive information such as, topology data, configuration data, and so on.

Encryption is an automatic process and can be achieved through the following:

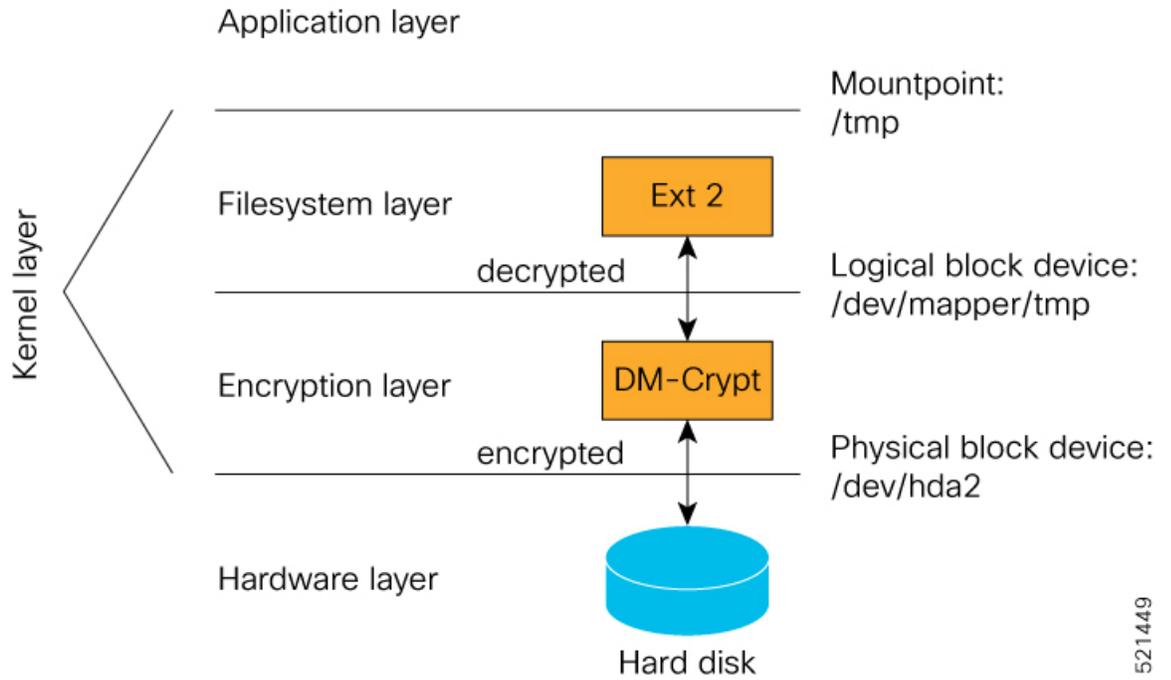
- DM-Crypt
- CPU with AES-NI support
- CryptSetup

DM-Crypt

DM-Crypt is a Linux kernel module that provides disk encryption. The module takes advantage of the Linux kernel's device-mapper (DM) infrastructure. The DM provides a way to create virtual layers of block devices.

DM-crypt is a device-mapper target and provides transparent encryption of block devices using the kernel crypto API. Data written to the block device is encrypted; whereas, data to be read is decrypted. See the following figure.

Figure 3: DM-Crypt Encryption



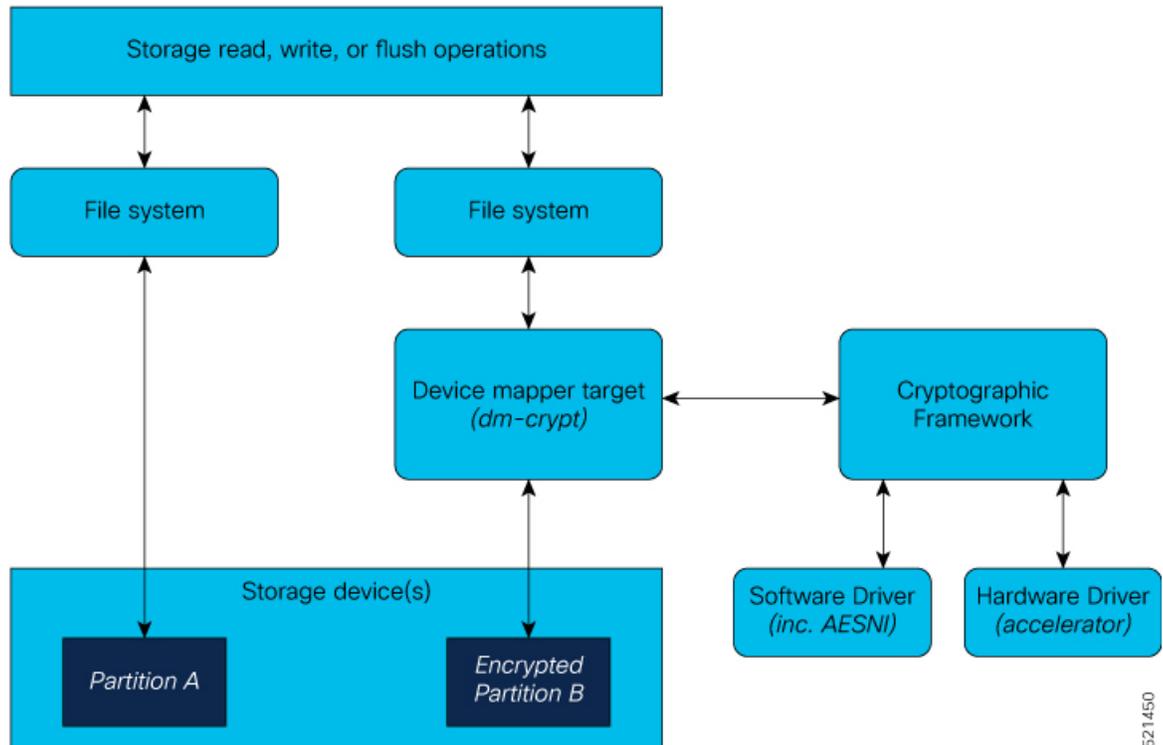
521449

AES-NI Support

Intel's Advanced Encryption Standard New Instructions (AES-NI) is a hardware-assisted engine that enables high-speed hardware encryption and decryption. This process leaves the CPU free to do other tasks.

When the input-output operations are started, the read-write requests that are directed at the encrypted block device are passed to the DM-Crypt. DM-Crypt then sends multiple cryptographic requests to the Cryptographic Framework. The crypto framework is designed to take advantage of off-chip hardware accelerators and provides software implementations when accelerators are not available. See the following image.

Figure 4: AES-NI Support



CryptSetup

DM-Crypt relies on user space tools, such as cryptsetup to set up cryptographic volumes. Cryptsetup is a command-line-interface (CLI) tool that interacts with DM-Crypt for creating, accessing, and managing encrypted devices.

Encrypted Logical Volume

An encrypted logical volume (LV) can be created during software installation

You can activate or deactivate the encrypted disk partition on demand. In addition to being activated, all sensitive files are also migrated from the unencrypted disk partition to the encrypted disk partition. The encrypted files can be migrated back during deactivation.

You can activate the data encryption by using the `disk-encryption activate location` command. A sample output is as follows:

```
Router#disk-encryption activate location 0/RP0/CPU0
Tue Apr 16 14:35:00.939 UTC
```

Preparing system for backup. This may take a few minutes especially for large configurations.

```
Status report: node0_RP0_CPU0: START TO BACKUP
Router# Status report: node0_RP0_CPU0: BACKUP HAS COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY
[Done]
```

The encrypted logical volume capacity is 150MB of disk space and is available as `/var/xr/enc` for applications to access.



Note Although applications can choose to use this space for storage, that data is not be part of the data migration if the software image is downgraded to a version that does not support encryption.

SSD Binding

When encryption is activated on a system, each card generates a random encryption key and stores it in its own secure storage—the Trust Anchor module (TAM). During successive reboots, the encryption key is read from the TAM and applied to unlock the encrypted device. Since each card stores its encryption key locally on the TAM, an SSD that is removed from one card and inserted into another cannot be unlocked by the key stored on that card, thereby making the SSD unusable.

If encryption is activated, the encrypted LV can only be unlocked by using the key stored in the TAM. So, if an encrypted SSD is removed and moved to another line card, the SSD cannot be unlocked. In other words, when you activate encryption, the SSD is bound to the card it is inserted in.

Data Zeroization

Zeroization refers to the process of deleting sensitive data from a cryptographic module.



Note In case of a Return Material Authorization (RMA), you must *factory reset* the data.

You can perform zeroization by using the `factory reset location` command from the XR prompt.



Caution Running this command while encryption is activated, deletes the master encryption key from the TAM and renders the motherboard unusable after the subsequent reload.

Runtime Defences (RTD)

Run Time Defenses (RTD) are a collection of tools used at runtime to mitigate common security vulnerabilities. RTD is classified into three groups:

Address Space Layout Randomization (ASLR)

ASLR is a technique that stops an attacker from getting access to a vulnerable program function, by preventing the attacker from finding out the memory address of the program function within the running process. To make this possible, ASLR randomly distributes the fundamental parts of the process (like the executable base, stack pointers, libraries, etc.) within the memory address space assigned to it by the operating system. Hence, attackers will never know the exact memory address of the program function and will be unable to exploit it. If they try to exploit by brute force, the process will crash.

Kernel Address Space Layout Randomization (KASLR)

Kernel Address Space Layout Randomization (KASLR) is a technique which is very similar to ASLR but it is applicable at the Linux kernel level. KASLR protects the Linux kernel by randomizing the fundamental

parts of the kernel process within the kernel memory when the system boots. This stops an attacker from getting a pointer to the kernel memory distribution table in order to exploit it.

Built-in Object Size Checker (BOSC)

BOSC is a limited buffer overflow protection mechanism provided by the compiler. BOSC helps in avoiding buffer-overflow related security vulnerabilities on common SafeC library functions such as, `strcpy_s` and `memcpy_s`.

Executable Space Protection (XSpace)

XSpace mitigates malicious code injection attacks by protecting the data and code portions of the program memory. The basic approach of such attacks is to overflow a buffer in the program stack and cause the transfer of control to injected code. Once in the injected code, the application behaves in an unexpected manner.

X-space ensures that the area of the memory where the authentic code exists is write-protected and the area of memory where the data is present is execution-protected. Illegal execution-attempts in the data-portion or write-attempts in the code-portion results in the application crashing.



Note The XSpace functionality should not disabled at any time.

RTD Monitor

The RTD Monitor monitors all RTD functionalities on the router.

Boot Integrity and Trust Visibility

The secure boot first stage is rooted in the chip and all subsequent boot stages are anchored to the first successful boot. The system is, therefore, capable of measuring the integrity of the boot chain. The hash of each software boot image is recorded before it is launched. These integrity records are protected by the TAM. The boot chain integrity measurements are logged and these measurements are extended into the TAM.

Use the **Router#show platform security attest per 15 trustpoint ciscoaik nonce 4567** command to view the boot integrity and boot-chain measurements. Given below is a sample output:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios# show platform security attest PCR 15 trustpoint CiscoAIK nonce 4567
location 0/RP0/CPU0

Sun Jun 21 03:07:18.394 UTC
Nonce: 4567

+-----+
| Node location: node0_RP0_CPU0 |
+-----+
Uptime: 495270
pcr-quote: /1RDR4AYACCBG/wltf4TEwfdUjTjun7S3rXC90eAb0G0ytrYRv3ExwACRWcAAAAAD8hUwAAAEf/////
AQAAACQAAAAALAAAAQALAwCAAAAGae1J8QIYe06nS2RUx0JYeoG8tM3bqeVdpW7CObwBt+g=
pcr-quote-signature:
EZbzSUge89jSjH8ZqTgKJrZJBopEbd818C+h1Ec780qi7Li1WfCZQPIP6KCDV6HsRCVzLoFijgm1MLoZE2rakQq+/
1TgZOWSLjMY7RbjSFr8z/zbpVI+YLnOG+wytVYWuY33uKHBn/
YWokHwo+qVf7u9aLGhnrXKvRUaFknBiZtQGiyAdis6GbPTToqn0WSNly6DPh4UHZj1vLVwJsI48mbQURAyCZrz/
XBHLM38tVJjqSrC0jw/6LF2DDoT5ks0VUFT7sqbysw4F56y+z/I1DBrrRW3GFOY46MOxDxLwS11/
n6zdoVjikKeqKOnmhpBh72bJQadeu/GVOYTrOSy4Q==
pcr-index          pcr-value
```

```

15    oYk8yqrzudIpGB4H++SaV0wMv6ugDSUIuUfeSqbJvbY=

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios# show platform security integrity hardware digest-algorithm SHA1 trustpoint
CiscoAIK nonce 4567 location 0/RP0/CPU0

Sun Jun 21 03:09:14.594 UTC
Nonce: 4567

+-----+
Node location: node0_RP0_CPU0
+-----+
TPM Name: node0_RP0_CPU0_aikido
Uptime: 495385
Known-good-digests:
Index  value
  0    3TDUS9iUDCFX3VkICcOnySOQTPA=
observed-digests:
Index  value
  0    3TDUS9iUDCFX3VkICcOnySOQTPA=
PCRs:
Index  value
  15   1Y3uKqNv1UJQUNZQxmZkiuG4blk=

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios# show platform security integrity hardware digest-algorithm SHA256
trustpoint CiscoAIK nonce 4567 location 0/RP0/CPU0

Sun Jun 21 03:09:31.110 UTC
Nonce: 4567

+-----+
Node location: node0_RP0_CPU0
+-----+
TPM Name: node0_RP0_CPU0_aikido
Uptime: 495401
Known-good-digests:
Index  value
  0    3TDUS9iUDCFX3VkICcOnySOQTPA=
observed-digests:
Index  value
  0    3TDUS9iUDCFX3VkICcOnySOQTPA=
PCRs:
Index  value
  15   1Y3uKqNv1UJQUNZQxmZkiuG4blk=

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios# show platform security integrity hardware digest-algorithm SHA256
trustpoint CiscoAIK nonce 4567 location 0/RP0/CPU0

Sun Jun 21 03:09:43.782 UTC
Nonce: 4567

+-----+
Node location: node0_RP0_CPU0
+-----+
TPM Name: node0_RP0_CPU0_aikido
Uptime: 495414
Known-good-digests:
Index  value
  0    y3n/SsvyNb8g3o7FFRGCZwfbs8EGxvMZg/PeN0NA71k=
observed-digests:
Index  value
  0    y3n/SsvyNb8g3o7FFRGCZwfbs8EGxvMZg/PeN0NA71k=
PCRs:
Index  value
  15   oYk8yqrzudIpGB4H++SaV0wMv6ugDSUIuUfeSqbJvbY=

```

```

Cisco AIK Certificate used for signing PCR
pcr-quote: /1RDR4AYACCBG/wltf4TEwfdUjtjun7S3rXC90eAb0G0ytrYRv3ExwACRwCAAAAAAD8hywAAAEf////
/AQAAACQAAAAALAAAAQALAwCAAAAgaelJ8QIYe06nS2RUx0JYe0G8tM3bqeVdpW7COBwBt+g=
pcr-quote-signature:
qyKbK7ndJbrgxeVnOodLWQzT7++NzrxJ9ERRvJzvTe4+8r6p0HGSEPHUhZHzykXw4DbniHAK0Cs3dwg/
hGKGe4M8Lz+/k682yIjaFYyip0DHMaV2ny/1T7RSqM/6u3j/JZrZv39MaeHa3MyjjonzRf9oe7EBSFAKsa/D54eTR0eFtaxFy/
XdtM0VVQe2JRdoBVxnIBLGiVmGR1VVlmHvwwgX11AN6e3/soC1Vk3I5gjLldPHUYuJ/
7PTGyAwZsbdeigx8d4ViUUUjSMzK7JISwXa8k4GiPQVLBHTqqR+RA9scmMZTbKLSG3luIWKQeyCtXMYE1VOeW8WQ1AvioMICw==
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#show platform security integrity hardware digest-algorith$
Sun Jun 21 03:09:56.794 UTC
Nonce: 4567

```

```

+-----+
Node location: node0_RP0_CPU0
+-----+
TPM Name: node0_RP0_CPU0_aikido
Uptime: 495427
Known-good-digests:
Index  value
0      3TDUS9iUDCFX3VkiCcOnySOQTPA=
observed-digests:
Index  value
0      3TDUS9iUDCFX3VkiCcOnySOQTPA=
PCRs:
Index  value
15     1Y3uKqNv1UJQUNZQxmZkiuG4blk=

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#

```

You can also use Cisco-IOS-XR-remote-attestation-act.yang to fetch the boot integrity over the NETCONF protocol.

The command displays both, the integrity log values and the assurance that these values have not been tampered. These measurements include the following parameters:

- Micro loader hash
- Boot loader hash
- Image signing and management key hashes
- Operating system image hash

```

platform-pid string Platform ID
Event log [key: event_number]: Ordered list of TCG described event log
                                that extended the PCRs in the order they
                                were logged
+-- event_number  uint32 Unique event number of this even
+-- event_type    uint32 log event type
+-- PCR_index     uint16 PCR index that this event extended
+-- digest        hex-string The hash of the event data
+-- event_size    uint32 Size of the event data
+-- event_data    uint8[] event data, size determined by event_size
PCR [index] - List of relevant PCR contents
+-- index         uint16 PCR register number
+-- value         uint8[] 32 bytes - PCR register content
PCR Quote binary TPM 2.0 PCR Quote
PCR Quote Signature binary Signature of the PCR quote using TAM-held ECC or RSA restricted
key with the optional nonce if supplied

```



Note

- Platform Configuration Register (PCR) 0-9 are used for secure boot.
 - Signature version designates the format of the signed data.
 - The signature digest is SHA256.
 - The signing key is in a Trusted Computing Group (TCG) compliant format.
-



Note

Use the **show platform security tam** command to view the TAM device details. The following example shows a truncated output of the command:

```
Router#show platform security tam all location all
Mon Apr 15 14:42:34.649 UTC
-----
Node - node0_RP0_CPU0
-----
Device Type           -      AIKIDO Extended
Device PID            -      N540X-12Z16G-SYS-A
Device Serial Number  -      FOC2333NJ0J
Device Firmware Version -    0x24.000b
Server Version        -      3
Server Package Version -    9.4.1
Client Package Version -    9.4.1

Sudi Root Cert:
-----
Certificate:
  Data:
    Version: 3 (0x2)
    Serial Number:
      01:9a:33:58:78:ce:16:c1:c1
    Signature Algorithm: sha256WithRSAEncryption
    Issuer: O=Cisco, CN=Cisco Root CA 2099
    Validity
      Not Before: Aug  9 20:58:28 2016 GMT
      Not After : Aug  9 20:58:28 2099 GMT
    Subject: O=Cisco, CN=Cisco Root CA 2099
    Subject Public Key Info:
      Public Key Algorithm: rsaEncryption
      RSA Public-Key: (2048 bit)
      Modulus:
        00:d3:b6:e3:35:7e:0d:3e:f4:67:e5:8a:4e:1a:c6:
      Exponent: 65537 (0x10001)
    X509v3 extensions:
      X509v3 Key Usage: critical
        Certificate Sign, CRL Sign
      X509v3 Basic Constraints: critical
        CA:TRUE
      X509v3 Subject Key Identifier:
        38:95:57:0F:34:23:4E:F3:A1:26:20:BA:14:91:C7:41:88:1D:A3:5B
    Signature Algorithm: sha256WithRSAEncryption
      8d:e2:99:a3:ee:31:77:4e:53:16:da:bd:f6:72:a7:58:0d:09:

Sudi Sub CA Cert:
-----
Certificate:
  Data:
    Version: 3 (0x2)
    Serial Number:
      0a:64:75:52:4c:d8:61:7c:62
    Signature Algorithm: sha256WithRSAEncryption
    Issuer: O=Cisco, CN=Cisco Root CA 2099
    Validity
      Not Before: Aug 11 20:28:08 2016 GMT
      Not After : Aug  9 20:58:27 2099 GMT
    Subject: CN=High Assurance SUDI CA, O=Cisco
    Subject Public Key Info:
      Public Key Algorithm: rsaEncryption
      RSA Public-Key: (2048 bit)
      Modulus:
        00:bd:dc:de:49:67:43:23:a9:51:64:36:11:bc:0e:
```

```

    Exponent: 65537 (0x10001)
X509v3 extensions:
  X509v3 Key Usage: critical
    Certificate Sign, CRL Sign
  X509v3 Basic Constraints: critical
    CA:TRUE, pathlen:0
  Authority Information Access:
    CA Issuers - URI:https://www.cisco.com/security/pki/certs/crca2099.cer
    OCSP - URI:http://pkicvs.cisco.com/pki/ocsp

  X509v3 Authority Key Identifier:
    keyid:38:95:57:0F:34:23:4E:F3:A1:26:20:BA:14:91:C7:41:88:1D:A3:5B

  X509v3 Certificate Policies:
    Policy: 1.3.6.1.4.1.9.21.1.30.0
    CPS: http://www.cisco.com/security/pki/policies/

  X509v3 CRL Distribution Points:

    Full Name:
      URI:http://www.cisco.com/security/pki/crl/crca2099.crl

  X509v3 Subject Key Identifier:
    EA:6B:A3:B9:C1:13:97:7E:1B:FB:3A:8D:68:60:07:39:5F:87:48:FA
Signature Algorithm: sha256WithRSAEncryption
5c:a9:81:0e:80:01:e1:19:62:a7:77:03:3d:d3:55:d7:d8:49:

Sudi Cert:
-----
Certificate:
  Data:
    Version: 3 (0x2)
    Serial Number: 29200071 (0x1bd8ec7)
    Signature Algorithm: sha256WithRSAEncryption
    Issuer: CN=High Assurance SUDI CA, O=Cisco
    Validity
      Not Before: Sep  5 03:39:36 2019 GMT
      Not After : Aug  9 20:58:26 2099 GMT
    Subject: serialNumber=PID:N540X-12Z16G-SYS-A SN:FOC2333NJ0J, O=Cisco, OU=ACT-2 Lite
    SUDI, CN=Cisco NCS 540 System with 12x10G+4x1G Cu+12x1G AC Chassis
    Subject Public Key Info:
      Public Key Algorithm: rsaEncryption
      RSA Public-Key: (2048 bit)
      Modulus:
        00:ca:2a:8a:b4:87:8b:43:68:17:d3:b2:43:44:ca:

        Exponent: 65537 (0x10001)
X509v3 extensions:
  X509v3 Key Usage: critical
    Digital Signature, Non Repudiation, Key Encipherment
  X509v3 Basic Constraints: critical
    CA:FALSE
  X509v3 Subject Alternative Name:
    0...N.
+.....@917C927B4B340B908703945A7A0A6D14D0207ADB2FB622DFA8C83538FD7E63B5.
B.+.....5.3ChipID=QvZQd9q9psveoAz6QJQeNAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA=
  Signature Algorithm: sha256WithRSAEncryption
  5b:67:da:2e:e5:d4:07:f2:ff:9c:17:c9:54:78:8b:da:16:df:

```

The boot integrity verification is automatic and the BIOS reports the values to the PCR. The boot integrity verification process consists of the following steps:

1. Report Boot 0 version and look up the expected integrity value for this platform and version.

2. Report bootloader version and look up the expected integrity value for this platform and version.
3. Report OS version and look up the expected integrity value for this platform and version.
4. Using the integrity values obtained from steps 1-3, compute the expected PCR 0 and PCR 8 values
5. Compare the expected PCR values against the actual PCR values.
6. Verify the nonced signature to ensure the liveness of the response data (this assumes unique nonced are being passed). Note that this signature verification must be performed only with the platform identity verified using SUDI.
7. (Optional) Verify the software image (IOS XR) version is with what is expected to be installed on this platform.

A failure of any of the above steps indicates either a compromised system or an incomplete integrity value database.

Secure gRPC

gRPC (gRPC Remote Procedure Calls) is an open source remote procedure call (RPC) system that provides features such as, authentication, bidirectional streaming and flow control, blocking or nonblocking bindings, and cancellation and timeouts. For more information, see <https://opensource.google.com/projects/grpc>.

TLS (Transport Layer Security) is a cryptographic protocol that provides end-to-end communications security over networks. It prevents eavesdropping, tampering, and message forgery.

In Cisco IOS XR7, by default, TLS is enabled in gRPC to provide a secure connection between the client and server.



Note Although TLS provides secure communication between servers and clients, TLS version 1.0 may pose a security threat. You can now disable TLS version 1.0 using the `grpc tlsv1-disable` command.

Integrity Measurement Architecture (IMA)

The goals of the Linux kernel integrity subsystem are to:

- detect whether files are accidentally or maliciously altered, both remotely and locally
- measure the file by calculating the hash of the file content
- appraise a file's measurement against a known good value stored as an extended attribute
- enforce local file integrity

There are three components in the Linux kernel integrity subsystem:

- IMA Measurement
- IMA Appraisal
- IMA Audit



Note These goals are complementary to the Mandatory Access Control (MAC) protections provided by SELinux.

IMA Measurement

IMA maintains a runtime measurement list and—because it is also anchored in the hardware Trusted Anchor module (TAM)—an aggregate integrity value over this list. The benefit of anchoring the aggregate integrity value in the TAM is that the measurement list cannot be compromised by any software attack without being detectable. As a result, on a trusted boot system, IMA-measurement can be used to attest to the system's runtime integrity.

For more information about IMA, download the IMA whitepaper, [An Overview of The Linux Integrity Subsystem](#).

IMA Signatures

The IMA appraisal provides local integrity, validation, and enforcement of the measurement against a known good value stored as an extended attribute—`security.ima`. The method for validating file data integrity is based on a digital signature, which in addition to providing file data integrity also provides authenticity. Each file (RPM) shipped in the image is signed by Cisco during the build and packaging process and validated at runtime using the IMA public certificate stored in the TAM.

All RPMs contain Cisco IMA signatures of the files packaged in the RPM, which are embedded in the RPM header. The IMA signature of the individual file is stored in its extended attribute during RPM installation. This protects against modification of the Cisco RPMs.

The IMA signature format used for IMA can have multiple lines and every line has comma-separated fields. Each line entry will have the filename, hash, and signature as illustrated below.

- File – Filename with the full path of the file hashed and signed
- Hash – SHA256 hash of the file
- Signature – RSA2048 key-based signature

How Trustworthiness is Implemented

The following sequence of events takes place automatically when the Cisco routers that support the IOS XR7 operating system are powered up:

1. At power UP, the micro-loader in the chip verifies the digital signature of BIOS using the keys stored in the Trusted Anchor module (TAM). The BIOS signature verification is logged and the measurement is extended into a PCR.
2. The BIOS then verifies the signature of the boot-loader using keys stored in TAM. The boot-loader signature verification is logged and the measurement is extended into the PCR.
3. If the validation is successful, the BIOS launches the bootloader. The bootloader uses the keys loaded by the BIOS to verify the sanctity of the kernel, initial RAM disk (initrd) file system, and grub-config file. Each verification operation is logged, and the PCR in TAM is extended.
4. The initrd is loaded to create the initial file system.

5. The kernel is launched and the kernel keyrings are populated with the appropriate keys from the TAm.
6. The init process is launched. Whenever an executable or a shared library is invoked, the IMA kernel hook validates the signature using the certificates in IMA keyring, which is then used to validate the signature attached to the file.
7. The Cisco IOS XR7 RPM is installed with the signed verification. The results of RPM verification are logged.
8. Cisco IOS XR7 processes are launched with IMA measurement.
9. TAm services are launched.
10. Cisco IOS XR7 application runs the initial admin user configuration and stores the credentials into TAm secure storage.

Manual provisioning of user credentials is now complete.

The Cisco routers perform the above steps, which is a holistic approach to integrate trust. Trust begins in hardware, next the system verifies the trustworthiness of the network operating system, after bootup, the system maintains trust at runtime, last, the system visualizes and reports on trust. You can verify the boot status by executing the following command:

```
Router#show platform security integrity log secure-boot
Fri Apr 12 17:13:43.867 UTC

+-----+
  Node location: node0_RP0_CPU0
+-----+
Secure Boot Status: Enabled
```

Understanding Key Concepts in Security

Attestation

Attestation is a mechanism used to attest the software's integrity. The verifier trusts that the attested data is accurate because it is signed by a TPM whose key is certified by the CA.

Attestation Identity Key

An Attestation Identity Key (AIK) is a restricted key that is used for signing attestation requests.

Bootloader

The bootloader is a piece of code that runs before any operating system begins to run. Bootloaders contain several ways to boot the OS kernel and also contain commands for debugging and modifying the kernel environment.

Certificates and Keys in TAm

All database keys are signed by the KEK. Any update to the keys requires the KEK or PK to sign in, using time-based authentic variables. Some of the keys on the database are:

- Image signing certificate: This is the X.509 certificate corresponding to the public key and is used for validating the signature of grub, initrd, kernel, and kernel modules.
- IOS-XR Key: A public key certificate signed by the KEK. This key is common to all Cisco 8000 Series routers and is used to sign GRUB, initrd, kernel and kernel modules.

- RPM key: Used for signing RPMs.
- IMA public key certificate: Used for Integrity Measurement Architecture (IMA), and used to validate the IMA signature of the files.
- BIOS or Firmware Capsule Update key: Used to sign the outer capsule for BIOS or firmware updates. It is the same as the secure boot key.
- Platform key (PK) and Key Enrollment Key (KEK): These are public keys and certificates used to manage other keys in the TAM.
- LDWM Key: In the Cisco IOS XR7, the LDWM key is stored in the hardware trust anchor module and is used for validating the BIOS.

Golden ISO (GISO)

A GISO image includes a base binary artifact (an ISO) for the Linux distribution that is used on the server fleet, packages, and configuration files that can be used as a base across all servers.

The GISO image for Cisco IOS XR7 software contains the IOS XR RPMs, third-party RPMs, ztp.ini, and secure ZTP certificates .

GRand Unified Bootloader (GRUB)

GNU GRUB (or just GRUB) is a boot loader package that loads the kernel and supports multiple operating systems on a device. It is the first software that starts at a system boot.

Hash Function

A hash function is any function that is used to map data of arbitrary size onto data of a fixed size.

Initramfs

Initramfs, a complete set of directories on a normal root filesystem, is bundled into a single cpio archive and compressed with one of the several compression algorithms. At boot time, the boot loader loads the kernel and the initramfs image into memory and starts the kernel.

initrd

initial RAM disk is an initial root file system that is mounted before the real root file system is made available. The initrd is bound to the kernel and loaded as part of the kernel boot procedure.

JTAG

JTAG is a common hardware interface that provides a system with a way to communicate directly with the chips on a board. JTAG is used for debugging, programming, and testing on embedded devices.

Nonce Value

A nonce value is an arbitrary number that can be used only once in a cryptographic communication. It is a random or pseudo-random number that is issued in an authentication protocol to ensure that the old communications are not reused in replay attacks.

Platform Configuration Register (PCR)

A PCR is a shielded register or memory region large enough to hold the contents of a hash operation. A PCR is initialized to a well-known value at power-up, and typically cannot be reset.

PCR Extend

The only way to change the value held in a PCR is to perform an “extend” operation, which is defined as:

```
PCR[x]new = hash ( PCR[x]old || hash ( measurement value ) )
```

Trust Anchor module (TAM)

The Cisco Trust Anchor module (TAM) helps verify that Cisco hardware is authentic and provides additional security services.

Trusted Platform Module (TPM)

A Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is a specialized chip on an endpoint device that stores RSA encryption keys specific to the host system for hardware authentication. This key pair is generated by the TPM based on the Endorsement Key and an owner-specified password.

Root of Trust for Storage

TPM 2.0-compliant Platform Configuration Registers (PCRs) form the Root of Trust for Storage.

TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module

A TCG-compliant TPM is a hardware security feature that

- adheres to Trusted Computing Group (TCG) specifications,
- utilizes strong cryptographic algorithms such as ECC P384 algorithm for secure identification and attestation, and
- protects device boot integrity and secure communication through hardware-backed security features.

These hardware-backed security features enable the creation of IDevID (Initial Device Identifier) and Initial Attestation Keys (IAK), supporting compliance with modern security standards such as TLS 1.3. They also provide resilient fallback mechanisms, including AIKIDO-based keys, when ECC is not provisioned in the TPM or when TPM hardware is unavailable. Attestation capabilities are enhanced through new PCR 0–8 measurements. TPM support now includes SHA-384 bank of PCRs for measured boot, further strengthening trust in the early boot stages.

IDevID is a factory-installed digital certificate that uniquely and securely identifies a device, typically using its public key and manufacturer-signed credentials. It is used to authenticate devices when they first connect to a network, ensuring only genuine, trusted hardware is allowed access. This mechanism is commonly applied in secure onboarding, supply chain security, and zero-touch provisioning scenarios.

Table 4: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module	Release 25.4.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100])*</p> <p>Device security and cryptographic identity are enhanced through new support for a TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module (TPM) with ECC P-384 key pairs. This feature enables TLS 1.3–based secure communication for critical onboarding workflows such as BootZ and sZTP. Enrolment and attestation are strengthened through TPM PCR 0–8 measurements, establishing a hardware-rooted chain of trust from early boot stage.</p> <p>CLI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • show platform security tpm • show platform security tpm PCR • show platform security tpm integrity log boot • show platform security tpm info ECC-sudi-certs • show platform security tpm attest certificate <p>*This feature is only supported on Cisco 8800-RP2-S hardware variants.</p>

Starting Cisco IOS XR Software Release these features are migrated to TPM:

- gRPC Extensible Manageability Services Daemon (EMSD)
- Attestation APP
- EnrollZ/AttestZ

Guidelines for TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module

Follow these guidelines to ensure secure and reliable use of TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module feature.

- This feature is only supported on Cisco 8000 Series RP2-S variants.

- TPM enablement occurs automatically on supported Cisco 8000 Series RP2-S hardware variants, and there are no manual steps required to activate the core TPM functionality.
- This feature remains permanently enabled and cannot be disabled on future RP2-S hardware that supports TPM.
- The system gracefully falls back to the AIKIDO module if the TCG-compliant IDevID is not present on Generic TPM, maintaining the operation of critical features such as AttestZ, and EnrollZ.
- BIOS and PCR measurements follow TCG 2.0 specifications to meet industry-standard trusted computing requirements.
- Applications including EMSD, EnrollZ, and AttestZ are configured to automatically use TPM ECC-based keys and certificates whenever the TPM is available.
- The implementation adheres to Cisco's Security Development Lifecycle (CSDL) standards, encompassing threat modeling, secure coding practices, static analysis, and vulnerability testing.
- For measurement and PCR extension within the TPM, the SHA-384 algorithm is used through the dedicated SHA-384 PCR bank.
- Review error messages during TPM usage:

Table 5: Error Messages during TPM

Error Messages	Reason
No TCG ECC IDevID certificate	The certificate is not provisioned.
No TCG ECC IDevID certificate chain	The certificate chain is missing.
No TCG ECC HW CAPABILITY	The TPM lacks ECC capability.

If the TPM is not available, verify that all features fall back and use the SUDI/AIK keys from TAM.

Benefits of TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module

TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module provide several benefits for device identity and attestation.

- When you migrate from RSA to TCG-compliant ECC P384 algorithm with TPM, you improve protection against cryptographic attacks and tampering. This process significantly strengthens device security.
- Using TCG-compliant ECC P384 algorithm for device identity helps you create robust and unique cryptographic identification. Detailed PCR measurements improve attestation, ensuring trusted onboarding and secure operations.
- You can use ECC keys from TPM to adopt TLS 1.3 for security features such as EMSD, and gRPC. TLS 1.3 provides advanced security and faster communications.
- If the TPM is unavailable, the system utilizes AIKIDO to maintain operation and ensure service continuity for security-critical functions. However, if TAM supports only RSA-based keys, the device can negotiate only TLS 1.2.
- Use new **show** commands to inspect the TPMs state, PCR values, attestation data, and certificate chains. These actions enhance security transparency for your audit and troubleshooting procedures.

Verify TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module protocols

Ensure that the Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is enabled and functioning as expected on your device.

Procedure

Step 1 Display TPM security information.

Example:

```
Router#show platform security tpm info all location 0/RP0/CPU0
-----
Node - 0/RP0/CPU0
-----
Device Type          -      TPM
Device PID           -      8800-RP2-S
Device Serial Number -      FOC2845N1BJ
Device Firmware Version - 0x01.0200
Server Version       -      3
Server Package Version - 13.1.1
Client Package Version - 13.1.1

HA Sudi Root Cert:
-----
Certificate:
  Data:
    Version: 3 (0x2)
    Serial Number: 3 (0x3)
    Signature Algorithm: ecdsa-with-SHA384
    Issuer: O=Cisco, CN=Cisco ECC Root CA
    Validity
      Not Before: Apr  4 08:15:44 2013 GMT
      Not After : Sep  7 16:24:07 2099 GMT
    Subject: O=Cisco, CN=Cisco ECC Root CA
    Subject Public Key Info:
      Public Key Algorithm: id-ecPublicKey
      Public-Key: (384 bit)
      pub:
        04:7e:c0:c3:bc:d8:1b:c6:f3:67:91:4d:d6:78:8c:
        e6:b5:75:39:04:7f:2f:fe:60:d0:ac:77:2a:d3:6d:
        02:41:45:54:67:b0:58:b7:19:bf:cc:bd:4b:36:5c:
        7b:5b:83:38:ec:a6:d7:4d:30:26:61:b3:4b:8b:ab:
        5e:0e:15:26:3b:4c:88:ab:02:70:c9:22:37:02:50:
        75:c0:d5:d4:48:34:c7:bf:58:53:fe:ae:cb:8f:73:
        20:f5:06:5b:12:87:ca
      ASN1 OID: secp384r1
      NIST CURVE: P-384
    X509v3 extensions:
      X509v3 Key Usage: critical
        Certificate Sign, CRL Sign
      X509v3 Basic Constraints: critical
        CA:TRUE
      X509v3 Subject Key Identifier:
        A4:45:B6:2F:A3:31:B1:76:15:B0:0A:18:33:CA:F6:AD:4F:3D:28:04
    Signature Algorithm: ecdsa-with-SHA384
    Signature Value:
      30:65:02:31:00:f0:9b:71:dc:7b:40:56:9f:ff:61:a9:3a:ba:
      6d:f1:19:10:44:4f:88:f9:80:ff:a5:86:6f:13:89:c8:19:75:
      39:9e:0e:b6:e8:85:bb:9f:06:0d:07:31:11:ba:80:57:2b:02:
      30:08:b9:e0:52:29:8f:89:14:84:28:c7:27:80:1d:98:73:ea:
      97:2c:6b:31:e3:84:b7:ac:48:b1:d6:54:d5:49:35:54:ca:66:
```

27:8f:7a:f6:e2:b1:1e:38:ab:8a:a5:f3:86

The command output is truncated.

Step 2 View the TPM integrity boot log.

Example:

```
Router#show platform security tpm integrity log boot location 0/rp0/CPU0
+-----+
Node location: node0_RP0_CPU0
+-----+
Uptime: 504480
Event Number: 1
Event Type: 03
PCR Index: 0
Event Digest Hash Algorithm: SHA1
Event Digest: AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA=
Event Data: U3BlYyBJRCBFdmVudDazAAAAAAAAAAgACAgAAAAAIAIAMADAAAA==
Event Number: 2
Event Type: 80000008
PCR Index: 0
Event Digest Hash Algorithm: SHA256
Event Digest: 8emdTrXnHLbHk7wXjWIMkF3/rKTUx7aJ7bFbqw5IEv4=
Event Digest Hash Algorithm: SHA384
Event Digest: 6OuqsUTGphX/NRZc82MBOefq1uLmac7i+kCjzmF5emFth2Fvd8NIAY4JruOOQMLM
Event Data: MrVWeEdXauXu7dTksv0FWh/3qy9lCrxrKWRY/2iR+xc=
Event Number: 3
Event Type: 80000008
PCR Index: 0
Event Digest Hash Algorithm: SHA256
Event Digest: mlrPXdkLmp++U11lPwBJZpnJ/qjOpVTxQljh8548Qxs=
Event Digest Hash Algorithm: SHA384
Event Digest: ioW380j8Ujk+EbQCX2Rz3OpJrjkh0ICSOCaJcm6cPdp0m05yma6tAqOk9FXCH145
Event Data: AEtoSI8ICqnAz53G1/XMD4qHH1qkuXmEAhLEUpw5ON4=
Event Number: 4
Event Type: 08
```

The command output is truncated.

Step 3 Check TPM status and take necessary actions.

Table 6: TPM verification decisions and actions

If...	Then...
TPM is shown as enabled and active	no further action is required.
TPM is not present or status is not enabled	initiate TPM troubleshooting procedures.
Digest algorithm output is not SHA384 as expected	verify configuration and consult security policies.
Integrity log shows unexpected entries	investigate potential security incidents.

Step 4 Display Platform Configuration Register (PCR) information.

Example:

```
Router#show platform security tpm pcr 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 location 0/rp0/CPU0 nonce 1234
Nonce: 1234
```

Verify TCG-compliant Trusted Platform Module protocols

```

+-----+
Node location: node0_RP0_CPU0
+-----+
Uptime: 503962
pcr-quote:
/HRPAADIBNUEXEDVnKpPpBf8pYMDNwDMSm7jUQf43iBt7ACfjWwDl3iQWnZmWQfBpmmmmmmQMA/8mAmL4f90/zUjgDn0Bx5lcy7C6x83B4RE5dnhqjDE7GPRRj
pcr-quote-signature:
MjUjMEYtef326Uvq09y3RhtjGy5fNUUlgwIgwAocNyanTcRnK6Z4FpxiJFU5wfZQLxARJXnkYtE/OsiUvN6/Eyn4jntUScaG9a+6ei31V3s3nUZqCv9/wrojxBUKN8rWfQ==
pcr-index      pcr-value
0      jkkHIFe0ce1lYQouajSuN0jharqmSlK8dIr4j9TxXDb0PNVE9Djq08vAh4tqHr12
1      wqoQkOVvOepm0+UwHGmMzWoyQ1+B1R3TAaCnM3N5spaA47EMWEI8cJDv77BvU02Ep
2      UYkjsPlV0I2gd8lqq6Uiud7O3mHFmc6mxBiJz76krk1QUp2W/k0a/a+2Xn+VvyPE
3      UYkjsPlV0I2gd8lqq6Uiud7O3mHFmc6mxBiJz76krk1QUp2W/k0a/a+2Xn+VvyPE
4      lPFwW2vHNA6NX8Lv0J8wWwAT3rAXnNZERKltc7LAoEjjNNgX7IxpDyn6WjKBkVP1
5      TLhFkU36DYm3c75lQ6xSF3C60ebOb4fFGpbaDUuO7960hhJ8dCM69rWNeGxGvGhO
6      UYkjsPlV0I2gd8lqq6Uiud7O3mHFmc6mxBiJz76krk1QUp2W/k0a/a+2Xn+VvyPE
7      OoL7f6vUtdwPenkABQg010wmynHogAEhtV/YkxiZn4Po0CZrfkQfXJf9P6C6h+Y

```

The PCR bank is based on SHA384.

Confirm PCR values reflect expected integrity measurements.

Step 5 Display the TPM Cisco IdevID certificate.**Example:**

```

Router#show platform security tpm attest certificate CiscoECCSUDI location
+-----+
Node location: node0_RP0_CPU0
+-----+
Certificate name: Cisco ECC SUDI Root
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIBYDCCAU6gAwIBAgIBAzAKBggqhkJOPQDDAzAsMQ4wDAYDVQQKEwVDaXNjbzEa
MBGGA1UEAxMRQ2l2YzY28gRUNDIFJvb3QgQ0EwIEBcNMTMwNDA0MDgxNTQ0WhgPMjA5
OTA5MDcxNjI0MDdaMwxDjAMBGNVBAoTBUNpc2NvMRoWGAyDVQQDEwFDaXNjb3Ew
Q0MgUm9vdCBDQTB2MBAGByqGSM49AgEGBSuBBAAIA2IABH7Aw7zYG8bzZ5FN1niM
5rV1OQR/L/5g0Kx3KtNtAkFFVGewWLCzV8y9SszZceluDOOym100wJmGzS4urXg4V
JjtMiKsCcMkiNwJQdcDV1Eg0x79YU/6uy49zIPUGWxKHqNCMEAwDgYDVR0PAQH/
BAQDAgEMA8GA1UdEwEB/wQFMAMBAf8wHQYDVR0OBBYEFKRfti+jMbF2FbAKGDPK
9q1PPSgEMAoGCCqGSM49BAMDA2gAMGUCMQDwm3Hce0Bwn/9hqTq6bFEZEERPiPmA
/6WGbxOJyB1lOZ4OtuiFu58GDQcxEbqAVysCMAi54FIpj4kUhCjHJ4AdmHPqlyxr
MeOEt6xIsdZUIUk1VMpmJ4969uKxHjiriqXzhg==
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
-----Truncated for brevity-----

```

Validate certificate information as required.

Step 6 Display TPM ECC-sudi certs information.**Example:**

```

Router#show platform security tpm attest certificate CiscoECCSUDI location 0/rp0/CPU0 nonce 1234
+-----+
Node location: node0_RP0_CPU0
+-----+
Nonce: 1234
Certificate name: Cisco ECC SUDI Root
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIBYDCCAU6gAwIBAgIBAzAKBggqhkJOPQDDAzAsMQ4wDAYDVQQKEwVDaXNjbzEa
MBGGA1UEAxMRQ2l2YzY28gRUNDIFJvb3QgQ0EwIEBcNMTMwNDA0MDgxNTQ0WhgPMjA5
OTA5MDcxNjI0MDdaMwxDjAMBGNVBAoTBUNpc2NvMRoWGAyDVQQDEwFDaXNjb3Ew
Q0MgUm9vdCBDQTB2MBAGByqGSM49AgEGBSuBBAAIA2IABH7Aw7zYG8bzZ5FN1niM
5rV1OQR/L/5g0Kx3KtNtAkFFVGewWLCzV8y9SszZceluDOOym100wJmGzS4urXg4V
JjtMiKsCcMkiNwJQdcDV1Eg0x79YU/6uy49zIPUGWxKHqNCMEAwDgYDVR0PAQH/
BAQDAgEMA8GA1UdEwEB/wQFMAMBAf8wHQYDVR0OBBYEFKRfti+jMbF2FbAKGDPK
9q1PPSgEMAoGCCqGSM49BAMDA2gAMGUCMQDwm3Hce0Bwn/9hqTq6bFEZEERPiPmA

```




CHAPTER 4

Configuring AAA Services

This module describes the implementation of the administrative model of *task-based authorization* used to control user access in the Cisco IOS XR software system. The major tasks required to implement task-based authorization involve configuring user groups and task groups.

User groups and task groups are configured through the Cisco IOS XR software command set used for authentication, authorization and accounting (AAA) services. Authentication commands are used to verify the identity of a user or principal. Authorization commands are used to verify that an authenticated user (or principal) is granted permission to perform a specific task. Accounting commands are used for logging of sessions and to create an audit trail by recording certain user- or system-generated actions.

AAA is part of the Cisco IOS XR software base package and is available by default.

- [Prerequisites for Configuring AAA Services, on page 39](#)
- [Restrictions for Configuring AAA Services, on page 39](#)
- [Information About Configuring AAA Services, on page 40](#)
- [How to Configure AAA Services, on page 72](#)

Prerequisites for Configuring AAA Services

The following are the prerequisites to configure AAA services:

- You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.
- Establish a root system user using the initial setup dialog. The administrator may configure a few local users without any specific AAA configuration. The external security server becomes necessary when user accounts are shared among many routers within an administrative domain. A typical configuration would include the use of an external AAA security server and database with the local database option as a backup in case the external server becomes unreachable.

Restrictions for Configuring AAA Services

This section lists the restrictions for configuring AAA services.

Compatibility

Compatibility is verified with the Cisco freeware TACACS+ server and FreeRADIUS only.

Interoperability

Router administrators can use the same AAA server software and database (for example, CiscoSecure ACS) for the router and any other Cisco equipment that does not currently run the Cisco software. To support interoperability between the router and external TACACS+ servers that do not support task IDs, see the [Task IDs for TACACS+ and RADIUS Authenticated Users, on page 57](#) section.

Information About Configuring AAA Services

This section lists all the conceptual information that a Cisco IOS XR software user must understand before configuring user groups and task groups through AAA or configuring Remote Authentication Dial-in User Service (RADIUS) or TACACS+ servers. Conceptual information also describes what AAA is and why it is important.

User, User Groups, and Task Groups

User attributes form the basis of the Cisco software administrative model. Each router user is associated with the following attributes:

- User ID (ASCII string) that identifies the user uniquely across an administrative domain
- Length limitation of 253 characters for passwords and one-way encrypted secrets
- List of user groups (at least one) of which the user is a member (thereby enabling attributes such as task IDs).

User Categories

Router users are classified into the following categories:

- Root system user
- Root Secure Domain Router (SDR) user (specific SDR administrative authority)
- SDR user (specific SDR user access)

Root System Users

The root system user is the entity authorized to “own” the entire router chassis. The root system user functions with the highest privileges over all router components and can monitor all secure domain routers in the system. At least one root system user account must be created during router setup. Multiple root system users can exist.

User Groups

User groups that are created in an external server are not related to the user group concept that is used in the context of local AAA database configuration on the router. The management of external TACACS+ server or RADIUS server user groups is independent, and the router does not recognize the user group structure.

The remote user or group profiles may contain attributes that specify the groups (defined on the router) to which a user or users belong, as well as individual task IDs. For more information, see the [Task IDs for TACACS+ and RADIUS Authenticated Users, on page 57](#) section.

Configuration of user groups in external servers comes under the design of individual server products. See the appropriate server product documentation.

Predefined User Groups

The Cisco software provides a collection of user groups whose attributes are already defined. The predefined groups are as follows:

- **cisco-support:** This group is used by the Cisco support team.
- **maintenance:** Has the ability to display, configure and execute commands for network, files and user-related entities.
- **netadmin:** Has the ability to control and monitor all system and network parameters.
- **provisioning:** Has the ability to display and configure network, files and user-related entities.
- **read-only-tg:** Has the ability to perform any show command, but no configuration ability.
- **retrieve:** Has the ability to display network, files and user-related information.
- **root-1r:** Has the ability to control and monitor the specific secure domain router.
- **sysadmin:** Has the ability to control and monitor all system parameters but cannot configure network protocols.
- **serviceadmin:** Service administration tasks, for example, Session Border Controller (SBC).

To verify the individual permissions of a user group, assign the group to a user and execute the **show user tasks** command.

User-Defined User Groups

Administrators can configure their own user groups to meet particular needs.

User Group Inheritance

A user group can derive attributes from another user group. (Similarly, a task group can derive attributes from another task group). For example, when user group A inherits attributes from user group B, the new set of task attributes of the user group A is a union of A and B. The inheritance relationship among user groups is dynamic in the sense that if group A inherits attributes from group B, a change in group B affects group A, even if the group is not reinherited explicitly.

Task Groups

Task groups are defined by lists of permitted task IDs for each type of action (such as read, write, and so on). The task IDs are basically defined in the router system. Task ID definitions may have to be supported before task groups in external software can be configured.

Task IDs can also be configured in external TACACS+ or RADIUS servers.

Predefined Task Groups

The following predefined task groups are available for administrators to use, typically for initial configuration:

- **cisco-support:** Cisco support personnel tasks
- **maintenance:** Maintenance team tasks
- **netadmin:** Network administrator tasks
- **operator:** Operator day-to-day tasks (for demonstration purposes)
- **provisioning:** Provisioning team tasks
- **retrieve:** Retrieve team tasks
- **root-lr:** Secure domain router administrator tasks
- **sysadmin:** System administrator tasks
- **serviceadmin:** Service administration tasks, for example, SBC

User-Defined Task Groups

Users can configure their own task groups to meet particular needs.

Group Inheritance

Task groups support inheritance from other task groups. (Similarly, a user group can derive attributes from another user group. See the [User Groups, on page 40](#) section.) For example, when task group A inherits task group B, the new set of attributes of task group A is the union of A and B.

Administrative Model

The router operates in secure domain router (SDR) plane.

Each SDR has its own AAA configuration including, local users, groups, and TACACS+ and RADIUS configurations. Users created in one SDR cannot access other SDRs unless those same users are configured in the other SDRs.

Administrative Access

Administrative access to the system can be lost if the following operations are not well understood and carefully planned.

- Configuring authentication that uses remote AAA servers that are not available, particularly authentication for the console.



Note The **none** option without any other method list is not supported.

- Configuring command authorization or XR EXEC mode authorization on the console should be done with extreme care, because TACACS+ servers may not be available or may deny every command, which locks the user out. This lockout can occur particularly if the authentication was done with a user not known to the TACACS+ server, or if the TACACS+ user has most or all the commands denied for one reason or another.

To avoid a lockout, we recommend these:

- Before turning on TACACS+ command authorization or XR EXEC mode authorization on the console, make sure that the user who is configuring the authorization is logged in using the appropriate user permissions in the TACACS+ profile.
- If the security policy of the site permits it, use the **none** option for command authorization or XR EXEC mode authorization so that if the TACACS+ servers are not reachable, AAA rolls over to the **none** method, which permits the user to run the command.
- Make sure to allow local fallback when configuring AAA. See, [Authorization Configuration, on page 122](#).
- If you prefer to commit the configuration on a trial basis for a specified time, you may do so by using the **commit confirmed** command, instead of direct **commit**.

AAA Database

The AAA database stores the users, groups, and task information that controls access to the system. The AAA database can be either local or remote. The database that is used for a specific situation depends on the AAA configuration.

Local Database

AAA data, such as users, user groups, and task groups, can be stored locally within a secure domain router. The data is stored in the in-memory database and persists in the configuration file. The stored passwords are encrypted.



Note The database is local to the specific secure domain router (SDR) in which it is stored, and the defined users or groups are not visible to other SDRs in the same system.

You can delete the last remaining user from the local database. If all users are deleted when the next user logs in, the setup dialog appears and prompts you for a new username and password.



Note The setup dialog appears only when the user logs into the console.

Remote Database

AAA data can be stored in an external security server, such as CiscoSecure ACS. Security data stored in the server can be used by any client (such as a network access server [NAS]) provided that the client knows the server IP address and shared secret.

Remote AAA Configuration

Products such as CiscoSecure ACS can be used to administer the shared or external AAA database. The router communicates with the remote AAA server using a standard IP-based security protocol (such as TACACS+ or RADIUS).

Client Configuration

The security server should be configured with the secret key shared with the router and the IP addresses of the clients.

User Groups

User groups that are created in an external server are not related to the user group concept that is used in the context of local AAA database configuration on the router. The management of external TACACS+ server or RADIUS server user groups is independent, and the router does not recognize the user group structure. The remote user or group profiles may contain attributes that specify the groups (defined on the router) to which a user or users belong, as well as individual task IDs. For more information, see the [Task IDs for TACACS+ and RADIUS Authenticated Users, on page 57](#) section.

Configuration of user groups in external servers comes under the design of individual server products. See the appropriate server product documentation.

Task Groups

Task groups are defined by lists of permitted task IDs for each type of action (such as read, write, and so on). The task IDs are basically defined in the router system. Task ID definitions may have to be supported before task groups in external software can be configured.

Task IDs can also be configured in external TACACS+ or RADIUS servers.

AAA Configuration

This section provides information about AAA configuration.

Method Lists

AAA data may be stored in a variety of data sources. AAA configuration uses *method lists* to define an order of preference for the source of AAA data. AAA may define more than one method list and applications (such as login) can choose one of them. For example, console ports may use one method list and the vty ports may use another. If a method list is not specified, the application tries to use a default method list. If a default method list does not exist, AAA uses the local database as the source.

Rollover Mechanism

AAA can be configured to use a prioritized list of database options. If the system is unable to use a database, it automatically rolls over to the next database on the list. If the authentication, authorization, or accounting request is rejected by any database, the rollover does not occur and the request is rejected.

The following methods are available:

- Local: Use the locally configured database (not applicable for accounting and certain types of authorization)
- TACACS+: Use a TACACS+ server (such as CiscoSecure ACS)
- RADIUS: Use a RADIUS server
- Line: Use a line password and user group (applicable only for authentication)
- None: Allow the request (not applicable for authentication)



Note If the system rejects the authorization request and the user gets locked out, you can try to rollback the previous configuration or remove the problematic AAA configuration through auxiliary port. To log in to the auxiliary port, use the local username and password; not the tacacs+ server credentials. The **config_rollback -n 0x1** command can be used to rollback the previous configuration. If you are not able to access the auxiliary port, a router reload might be required in such scenarios.

Server Grouping

Instead of maintaining a single global list of servers, the user can form server groups for different AAA protocols (such as RADIUS and TACACS+) and associate them with AAA applications (such as PPP and XR EXEC mode).



Note In scenarios where multiple servers are within a TACACS AAA server group and multiple such groups exist within a remote database, the fallback behavior is when one server within a group is unreachable, and the system will default to the next server in that same group. However, when there is a mismatch in the shared secret between the router and a TACACS server, the router will not attempt to connect to the subsequent server in the group. Instead, it will bypass that group entirely and proceed to the next available method (group or local or none) based on the configuration.

Authentication

Authentication is the most important security process by which a principal (a user or an application) obtains access to the system. The principal is identified by a username (or user ID) that is unique across an administrative domain. The applications serving the user (such as or Management Agent) procure the username and the credentials from the user. AAA performs the authentication based on the username and credentials passed to it by the applications. The role of an authenticated user is determined by the group (or groups) to which the user belongs. (A user can be a member of one or more user groups.)

Authentication of Root System User

The root-system user can log in to any node in any secure domain router in the system. A user is a root-system user if he or she belongs to the root-system group. The root-system user may be defined in the local or remote AAA database.

Authentication Flow of Control

AAA performs authentication according to the following process:

1. A user requests authentication by providing a username and password (or secret).
2. AAA verifies the user's password and rejects the user if the password does not match what is in the database.
3. AAA determines the role of the user (root SDR user, or SDR user).
 - If the user has been configured as a member of an owner secure domain router user group, then AAA authenticates the user as an owner secure domain router user.
 - If the user has not been configured as a member of an owner secure domain router user group, AAA authenticates the user as a secure domain router user.

Clients can obtain a user's permitted task IDs during authentication. This information is obtained by forming a union of all task group definitions specified in the user groups to which the user belongs. Clients using such information typically create a session for the user (such as an API session) in which the task ID set remains static. Both the XR EXEC mode and external API clients can use this feature to optimize their operations. XR EXEC mode can avoid displaying the commands that are not applicable and an EMS application can, for example, disable graphical user interface (GUI) menus that are not applicable.

If the attributes of a user, such as user group membership and, consequently, task permissions, are modified, those modified attributes are not reflected in the user's current active session; they take effect in the user's next session.

Authentication Failure

In a system which is configured either with TACACS+ or RADIUS authentication with AAA configuration similar to the configuration below during the first login attempt or attempts, following a system reload, the login to the RP auxiliary port fails.

```
aaa authentication login default group tacacs+ group radius local
line template aux
login authentication default
```

This is because following the reload, the auxiliary port rejects login attempts with a valid TACACS+ configured *username* and *password*.

In such a scenario, the user has to first login with a valid locally configured *username* and *password*, and any login thereafter with TACACS+ configured *username* and *password*. Alternatively, if the user is connected to the auxiliary port via a terminal server, first clear the line used on the terminal server itself, and thereafter the user will be able to login to the auxiliary port with the TACACS+ configured *username* and *password*.

Password Types

In configuring a user and that user's group membership, you can specify two types of passwords: encrypted or clear text.

The router supports both two-way and one-way (secret) encrypted user passwords. Secret passwords are ideal for user login accounts because the original unencrypted password string cannot be deduced on the basis of the encrypted secret. Some applications (PPP, for example) require only two-way passwords because they must decrypt the stored password for their own function, such as sending the password in a packet. For a login user, both types of passwords may be configured, but a warning message is displayed if one type of password is configured while the other is already present.

If both secret and password are configured for a user, the secret takes precedence for all operations that do not require a password that can be decrypted, such as login. For applications such as PPP, the two-way encrypted password is used even if a secret is present.

Type 8 and Type 9 Encryption Methods

This feature provides the options for Type 8 and Type 9 encryption methods in AAA security services. The Type 8 and Type 9 encryption methods enable more secure and robust support for saving passwords with respect to each username. Thus, in scenarios where a lot of confidential data need to be maintained, these encryption methods ensure that the admin and other user passwords are strongly protected.

The implementation of Type 8 encryption method uses SHA256 hashing algorithm, and the Type 9 encryption method uses scrypt hashing algorithm.

For more information about configuring users with Type 8 and Type 9 encryption methods, see [Configure Users, on page 77](#) section.

Type 10 Password Encryption for User Management

The Cisco IOS XR 64 bit software supports Type 10 (**SHA512**) encryption algorithm for passwords used in user management. With this feature, **SHA512** is used by default for the passwords in user name configuration.

This is applicable even for the first user creation. The **SHA512** encryption algorithm provides improved security to the user passwords compared to the older algorithms such as **MD5** and **SHA256**.

Restrictions for Type 10 Password Encryption Usage

The usage of Type 10 password encryption is subjected to this restriction:

- In a first user configuration scenario or when a user is reconfigured, only the Type 5 and Type 10 encryption are synced from XR VM to System Admin VM and Host VM; Type 8 and Type 9 are not synced.

Deprecation of Type 7 password and Type 5 secret

Password configuration options before Release 24.4.1

Until Release 24.4.1, there were two options for configuring a password:

- Password: Uses Type 7 encryption to store the password.
- Secret: Supports Type 5, 8, 9, or 10 hashing algorithms to store the password securely.

Deprecation Notice

Starting from the Release 24.4.1, the use of Type 7 password and Type 5 secret are deprecated due to security concerns. The deprecation process commences from the Release 24.4.1. We expect the full deprecation in a future release. We recommend using the default option, which is Type 10 secret.



Note With the deprecation of Type 7 password encryption in Cisco IOS XR Release 24.4.1, any configuration that used Type 7 passwords will be automatically converted and saved as Type 10 secrets during the upgrade to version 24.4.1.

If you have usernames that include both a password and a secret, then:

- For the first 3000 users, the router will retain the original secret and discard the password.
 - For users beyond the first 3000, the router will convert the password as Type 10 secrets by overwriting the original secret.
-

password

The **password** options available in the router from the Release 24.4.1:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios(config-un)#password ?
LINE The type 7 password followed by '7 ' OR SHA512-based password (deprecated, use 'secret')
```

Changes:

- All the options that were present until the Release 24.4.1 are removed except LINE (to accept cleartext).
- **During upgrade:** Any configuration using the Type 7 password configuration is automatically converted to Type 10 secret.

Post-upgrade: You can still use the Type 7 password configurations option after new commits, but the password will be stored as Type 10 secret.

- New **syslog** has been added to indicate the deprecation process:

```
%SECURITY-PSLIB-4-DEPRECATED_PASSWORD_TYPE : The password configuration is deprecated.

Converting it to a Type 10 secret for user <user name>.
```

- **show running configuration** command output before upgrade:

```
username example
password 7 106D000A0618
!
```

- **show running configuration** command output post-upgrade:

```
username example
Cisco Confidential
secret 10
$6$P53pb/FFxNIT4b/.$yVakako4fp9PZiIYYh1xS0.WGb/yPrSyC8j4gLS6xli57iClOryPXyN9y8yojRD2nhAWb9pjr/WAIhbXqg8st.
!
```

masked-password

The **masked-password** options available in CLI from the Release 24.4.1:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios(config-un)#masked-password ?
0 Specifies a cleartext password will follow
clear Config deprecated. Will be removed in 7.7.1. Specify '0' instead.
<cr> The cleartext user password
```

Changes:

- The options 7 and encrypted that were present until the Release 24.4.1 are removed.
- **During upgrade:** Any configuration using the Type 7 password configuration is automatically converted to Type 10 secret.
- **Post-upgrade:** Masked-password is an alternate method of configuring the password. You can still use the masked-password keyword with a clear string after new commits, but the password will be stored as Type 10 secret.
- New **syslog** has been added to indicate the deprecation process:

```
%SECURITY-PSLIB-4-DEPRECATED_PASSWORD_TYPE : The password configuration is deprecated.

Converting it to a Type 10 secret for user <user name>.
```

- **show running configuration** command output before upgrade:

```
username example
password 7 106D000A0618
!
```

- **show running configuration** command output post-upgrade:

```
username example
Cisco Confidential
secret 10
$6$P53pb/FFxNIT4b/.$yVakako4fp9PZiIYYh1xS0.WGb/yPrSyC8j4gLS6xli57iClOryPXyN9y8yojRD2nhAWb9pjr/WAIhbXqg8st.
!
```

password-policy

The **password-policy** options available in CLI from the Release 24.4.1:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios(config-un)#password-policy ?
WORD Specify the password policy name

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios(config-un)#password-policy abcd password ?
0 Specifies an UNENCRYPTED password will follow
7 Specifies that an encrypted password will follow
LINE The UNENCRYPTED (cleartext) user password
clear Config deprecated. Will be removed in 7.7.1. Specify '0' instead.
encrypted Config deprecated. Will be removed in 7.7.1. Specify '7' instead.
```

Changes:

- All the options that were present until 24.4.1 are removed except LINE (to accept cleartext).
- **During upgrade:** Any configuration using the Type 7 password configuration is automatically converted to Type 10 secret.

Post-upgrade: You can still use the password-policy configurations option after new commits, but the it will be stored as Type 10 secret.

- New **syslog** has been added to indicate the deprecation process:

```
%SECURITY-PSLIB-4-DEPRECATED_PASSWORD_TYPE : The password configuration is deprecated.
      Converting it to a Type 10 secret for user <username>.
```

- **show running configuration** command output before upgrade:

```
username example
password-policy abcd password 7 106D000A0618
!
```

- **show running configuration** command output post-upgrade:

```
username example
secret 10
$6$P53pb/FFxNIT4b/. $yVakako4fp9PZiIYYh1xS0.W6b/yPrSyC8j4gLs6xli57iClOryPXyN9y8yojRD2nhAWb9pjr/WAThbXqq8st.
!
!
```

aaa password-policy

The **aaa password-policy** options available in CLI from the Release 24.4.1:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios(config)#aaa password-policy abcd
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios(config-pp)#?
min-char-change Number of characters change required between old and new passwords
(deprecated, will be removed in 25.3.1)
restrict-password-advanced Advanced restrictions on new password (deprecated, will be removed
in 25.3.1)
restrict-password-reverse Restricts the password to be same as reversed old password
(deprecated, will be removed in 25.3.1)
```

Changes:

- The options min-char-change, restrict-password-advanced, and restrict-password-reverse that were present until the Release 24.4.1 are deprecated.
- **During upgrade:** These deprecated configurations do not go through any change during upgrade.
- **Post-upgrade:** These deprecated keywords do not take effect when configured post-upgrade.
- New **syslog** have been added to indicate the deprecation process:

```
%SECURITY-LOCALD-4-DEPRECATED_PASSWORD_POLICY_OPTION : The password policy option
'min-char-change' is deprecated.
Password/Secret will not be checked against this option now.
```

```
%SECURITY-LOCALD-4-DEPRECATED_PASSWORD_POLICY_OPTION : The password policy option
'restrict-password-reverse' is deprecated.
Password/Secret will not be checked against this option now.
```

```
%SECURITY-LOCALD-4-DEPRECATED_PASSWORD_POLICY_OPTION : The password policy option
'restrict-password-advanced' is deprecated.
Password/Secret will not be checked against this option now.
```

- **show running configuration** command output before upgrade:

```
aaa password-policy abcd
lower-case 3
min-char-change 1
restrict-password-reverse
restrict-password-advanced
!
```

- **show running configuration** command output post-upgrade:

```
aaa password-policy abcd
lower-case 3
min-char-change 1
restrict-password-reverse
restrict-password-advanced
!
```

secret

The **secret** options available in CLI from the Release 24.4.1:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios(config-un)#secret ?
0 Specifies a cleartext password will follow
10 Specifies that SHA512-based password will follow
8 Specifies that SHA256-based password will follow
9 Specifies that Scrypt-based password will follow
LINE The cleartext user password

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios(config-un)#secret 0 enc-type ?
<8-10> Specifies which algorithm to use. Only 8,9,10 supported [Note: Option '5' is not
available to use from 24.4]
```

Changes:

- The options 5 and encrypted are removed.
- **During upgrade:** Configurations using Type 5 secret will remain unchanged.

Post-upgrade: Though the keyword 5 has been deprecated, you can still apply the existing configurations using Type 5 secret.

- New **syslog** has been added to indicate the deprecation process:

```
%SECURITY-LOCALD-2-DEPRECATED_SECRET_TYPE : Type 5 secret is deprecated.
Please use the 'secret' keyword with option type 10 for user.
```

- **show running configuration** command output before upgrade:

```
username example
secret 5 $1$kACo$2RtpcwyiRuRB/DhWzabfU1
!
!
```

show running configuration command output post-upgrade:

```
username example
secret 5 $1$kACo$2RtpcwyiRuRB/DhWzabfU1
!
!
```

masked-secret

The **masked-secret** options available in CLI from the Release 24.4.1:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios(config-un)#masked-secret ?
0 Specifies a cleartext password will follow
Cisco Confidential
10 Specifies that SHA512-based password will follow
8 Specifies that SHA256-based password will follow
9 Specifies that Scrypt-based password will follow
clear Config deprecated. Will be removed in 7.7.1. Specify '0' instead.
<cr> The cleartext user password
```

Changes:

- The options 5 and encrypted are removed.
- **During upgrade:** Configurations using masked-secret with Type 5 will remain unchanged.
- **Post-upgrade:** Though the keyword 5 has been deprecated, you can still apply the existing configurations using Type 5 masked secret.

- New **syslog** has been added to indicate the deprecation process:

```
%SECURITY-LOCALD-2-DEPRECATED_SECRET_TYPE : Type 5 secret is deprecated.
Please use the 'secret' keyword with option type 10 for user.
```

- **show running configuration** command output before upgrade:

```
username example
secret 5 $1$kACo$2RtpcwyiRuRB/DhWzabfU1
!
!
```

show running configuration command output post-upgrade:

```
username example
secret 5 $1$kACo$2RtpcwyiRuRB/DhWzabfU1
!
!
```

Special use cases

Use case 1: Configurations using both Type 7 password and secret with 8, 9, or 10 hashing, for the same user

- **During upgrade:**
 - For the first 3000 username configurations, the password configuration will be rejected, and the secret configuration will remain unchanged.
 - For the rest of the username configurations, the original secret configuration will be rejected, and the password will be converted to Type 10 secret.
- **Post-upgrade:**

- For a new username configured, or the username that is already present before the upgrade, the password configuration will be rejected.
- New **syslog** has been added to indicate the deprecation process:


```
%SECURITY-PSLIB-4-SECRET_CONFIG_PRESENT : The password configuration is deprecated.

Once secret is configured, cannot use password config for user <user name> at index
<x> now.
```

 where 'x' is a number representing the index.

Use case 2: Configurations using both Type 7 password and Type 5 secret, for the same user

- **During upgrade:**
 - For any username configuration, the original Type 5 secret configuration will be rejected, and the password will be converted to Type 10 secret.
- **Post-upgrade:**
 - For a new username configured, or the username that is already present before the upgrade, the password configuration will be converted to Type 10 secret.
 - New **syslog** has been added to indicate the deprecation process:


```
%SECURITY-PSLIB-4-DEPRECATED_PASSWORD_TYPE : The password configuration is
deprecated.
Converting it to a Type 10 secret for user <username>.
```

AAA Password Security for FIPS Compliance

Cisco IOS XR Software introduces advanced AAA password strengthening policy and security mechanism to store, retrieve and provide rules or policy to specify user passwords. This password policy is applicable only for local users, and not for remote users whose profile information are stored in a third party AAA server. This policy is not applicable to secrets of the user. If both secret and password are configured for a user, then secret takes precedence, and password security policy does not have any effect on authentication or change of password for such users. This AAA password security policy works as such for Cisco IOS XR platforms. Whereas, this feature is supported only on XR VM, for Cisco IOS XR 64 bit platforms.

High Availability for AAA Password Security Policy

The AAA password policy configurations and username configurations remain intact across RP failovers or process restarts in the system. The operational data such as, lifetime of the password and lockout time of the user are not stored on system database or disk. Hence, those are not restored across RP failovers or process restarts. Users start afresh on the active RP or on the new process. Hence, users who were locked out before RP failover or process restart are able to login immediately after the failover or restart.

To configure AAA password policy, see [Configure AAA Password Policy, on page 83](#).

AAA Password Security Policies

AAA password security for FIPS compliance consists of these policies:

Password Composition Policy

Passwords can be composed by any combination of upper and lower case alphabets, numbers and special characters that include: "!", "@", "#", "\$", "%", "^", "&", "*", "(", and ")". Security administrator can also set the types and number of required characters that comprise the password, thereby providing more flexibility for password composition rules. The minimum number of character change required between passwords is 4, by default. There is no restriction on the upper limit of the number of uppercase, lowercase, numeric and special characters.

Password Length Policy

The administrator can set the minimum and maximum length of the password. The minimum configurable length in password policy is 2, and the maximum length is 253.

Password Lifetime Policy

The administrator can configure a maximum lifetime for the password, the value of which can be specified in years, months, days, hours, minutes and seconds. The configured password never expires if this parameter is not configured. The configuration remains intact even after a system reload. But, the password creation time is updated to the new time whenever the system reboots. For example, if a password is configured with a life time of one month, and if the system reboots on 29th day, then the password is valid for one more month after the system reboot. Once the configured lifetime expires, further action is taken based on the password expiry policy (see the section on Password Expiry Policy).

Password Expiry Policy

If the password credential of a user who is trying to login is already expired, then the following actions occur:

- User is prompted to set the new password after successfully entering the expired password.
- The new password is validated against the password security policy.
- If the new password matches the password security policy, then the AAA data base is updated and authentication is done with the new password.
- If the new password is not compliant with the password security policy, then the attempt is considered as an authentication failure and the user is prompted again to enter a new password. The max limit for such attempts is in the control of login clients and AAA does not have any restrictions for that.

As part of password expiry policy, if the life time is not yet configured for a user who has already logged in, and if the security administrator configures the life time for the same user, then the life time is set in the database. The system checks for password expiry on the subsequent authentication of the same user.

Password expiry is checked only during the authentication phase. If the password expires after the user is authenticated and logged in to the system, then no action is taken. The user is prompted to change the password only during the next authentication of the same user.

Debug logs and syslog are printed for the user password expiry only when the user attempts to login. This is a sample syslog in the case of password expiry:

```
Router:Jun 21 09:13:34.241 : locald_DSC[308]: %SECURITY-LOCALD-5-USER_PASSWD_EXPIRED : Password for user 'user12' has expired.
```

Password Change Policy

Users cannot change passwords at will. A password change is triggered in these scenarios:

- When the security administrator needs to change the password
- When the user is trying to get authenticated using a profile and the password for the profile is expired
- When the security administrator modifies the password policy which is associated to the user, and does not immediately change the password according to the policy

You can use the **show configuration failed** command to display the error messages when the password entered does not comply with the password policy configurations.

When the security administrator changes the password security policy, and if the existing profile does not meet the password security policy rules, no action is taken if the user has already logged in to the system. In this scenario, the user is prompted to change the password when he tries to get authenticated using the profile which does not meet the password security rules.

When the user is changing the password, the lifetime of the new password remains same as that of the lifetime that was set by the security administrator for the old profile.

When password expires for non-interactive clients (such as dot1x), an appropriate error message is sent to the clients. Clients must contact the security administrator to renew the password in such scenarios.

Service Provision after Authentication

The basic AAA local authentication feature ensures that no service is performed before a user is authenticated.

User Re-authentication Policy

A user is re-authenticated when he changes the password. When a user changes his password on expiry, he is authenticated with the new password. In this case, the actual authentication happens based on the previous credential, and the new password is updated in the database.

User Authentication Lockout Policy

AAA provides a configuration option, **authen-max-attempts**, to restrict users who try to authenticate using invalid login credentials. This option sets the maximum number of permissible authentication failure attempts for a user. The user gets locked out when he exceeds this maximum limit, until the lockout timer (**lockout-time**) is expired. If the user attempts to login in spite of being locked out, the lockout expiry time keep advancing forward from the time login was last attempted.

This is a sample syslog when user is locked out:

```
Router:Jun 21 09:21:28.226 : locald_DSC[308]: %SECURITY-LOCALD-5-USER_PASSWD_LOCKED :
User 'user12' is temporarily locked out for exceeding maximum unsuccessful logins.
```

This is a sample syslog when user is unlocked for authentication:

```
Router:Jun 21 09:14:24.633 : locald_DSC[308]: %SECURITY-LOCALD-5-USER_PASSWD_UNLOCKED :
User 'user12' is unlocked for authentications.
```

Password Policy Creation, Modification and Deletion

Security administrators having write permission for AAA tasks are allowed to create password policy. Modification is allowed at any point of time, even when the policy is associated to a user. Deletion of password policy is not allowed until the policy is un-configured from the user.

After the modification of password policy associated with a user, security administrator can decide if he wants to change passwords of associated users complying to the password policy. Based on this, there are two scenarios:

- If the administrator configures the password, then the user is not prompted to change the password on next login.
- If the administrator does not configure the password, then the user is prompted to change the password on next login.

In either of the above cases, at every password expiry interval, the user is prompted to change the password on next login.

Debug messages are printed when password policies are created, modified and deleted.

Minimum Password Length for First User Creation

To authenticate the user for the first time, Cisco router prompts you to create a username and password, in any of the following situations:

- When the Cisco Router is booted for the very first time.
- When the router is reloaded with no username configuration.
- When the already existing username configurations are deleted.

By default, the minimum length for passwords in a Cisco router is limited to two characters. Due to noise on the console, there is a possibility of the router being blocked out. Therefore, the minimum length for password has been increased to six characters for a first user created on the box, in each of the situations described above. This reduces the probability of the router being blocked out. It avoids the security risks that are caused due to very small password length. For all other users created after the first one, the default minimum length for password is still two characters.

For more information about how to configure a first user, see [Configure First User on Cisco Routers, on page 76](#).

Password Policy for User Secret

The Cisco IOS XR Software extends the existing password policy support for the user authentication to all types of user secret. The types of secret include Type 5 (**MD5**), 8 (**SHA256**), 9 (**sCrypt**) and 10 (**SHA512**). Prior to this release, the support for password policy was only for the Type 7 passwords. The new policy is common to both password and secret of the user. Using irreversible hashed-secrets has the benefit that the other modules in the device cannot retrieve the clear-text form of these secrets. Thus, the enhancement provides more secure secrets for the user names. This policy for user secrets is applicable for local and remote users.

The classic Cisco IOS XR platforms support the password policy for secrets on the XR and the Admin plane. Whereas, the 64-bit Cisco IOS XR platforms support this feature only on XR VM; not on System Admin VM.

To configure password policy for user secret, see [Configure Password Policy for User Secret and Password, on page 85](#).

Task-based Authorization

AAA employs “task permissions” for any control, configure, or monitor operation through CLI or API. The Cisco IOS software concept of privilege levels has been replaced in software by a task-based authorization system.

Task IDs

The operational tasks that enable users to control, configure, and monitor Cisco IOS XR software are represented by task IDs. A task ID defines the permission to run an operation for a command. Users are associated with sets of task IDs that define the breadth of their authorized access to the router.

Task IDs are assigned to users through the following means:

Each user is associated with one or more user groups. Every user group is associated with one or more *task groups*; in turn, every task group is defined by a set of task IDs. Consequently, a user’s association with a particular user group links that user to a particular set of task IDs. A user that is associated with a task ID can execute any operation associated with that task ID.

General Usage Guidelines for Task IDs

Most router control, configuration, or monitoring operation (CLI or XML API) is associated with a particular set of task IDs. Typically, a given CLI command or API invocation is associated with at least one or more task IDs. Neither the **config** nor the **commit** commands require any specific task id permissions. The configuration and commit operations do not require specific task ID permissions. Aliases also don’t require any task ID permissions. You cannot perform a configuration replace unless root-lr permissions are assigned. If you want to deny getting into configuration mode you can use the TACACS+ command authorization to deny the config command. These associations are hard-coded within the router and may not be modified. Task IDs grant permission to perform certain tasks; task IDs do not deny permission to perform tasks. Task ID operations can be one, all, or a combination of classes that are listed in this table.

Table 7: Task ID Classes

Operation	Description
Read	Specifies a designation that permits only a read operation.
Write	Specifies a designation that permits a change operation and implicitly allows a read operation.
Execute	Specifies a designation that permits an access operation; for example ping and Telnet.
Debug	Specifies a designation that permits a debug operation.

The system verifies that each CLI command and API invocation conforms with the task ID permission list for the user. If you are experiencing problems using a CLI command, contact your system administrator.

Multiple task ID operations separated by a slash (for example read/write) mean that both operations are applied to the specified task ID.

Multiple task ID operations separated by a comma (for example read/write, execute) mean that both operations are applied to the respective task IDs. For example, the **copy ipv4 access-list** command can have the read and write operations applied to the *acl* task ID, and the execute operation applied to the *filesystem* task ID.

If the task ID and operations columns have no value specified, the command is used without any previous association to a task ID and operation. In addition, users do not have to be associated to task IDs to use ROM monitor commands.

Users may need to be associated to additional task IDs to use a command if the command is used in a specific configuration submenu. For example, to execute the **show redundancy** command, a user needs to be associated to the system (read) task ID and operations as shown in the following example:

```
Router# show redundancy
```

Task IDs for TACACS+ and RADIUS Authenticated Users

Cisco software AAA provides the following means of assigning task permissions for users authenticated with the TACACS+ and RADIUS methods:

- Specify the text version of the task map directly in the configuration file of the external TACACS+ and RADIUS servers.
- Specify the privilege level in the configuration file of the external TACACS+ and RADIUS servers.
- Create a local user with the same username as the user authenticating with the TACACS+ and RADIUS methods.
- Specify, by configuration, a default task group whose permissions are applied to any user authenticating with the TACACS+ and RADIUS methods.

Task Maps

For users who are authenticated using an external TACACS+ server and RADIUS server, Cisco IOS XR software AAA supports a method to define task IDs remotely.

Format of the Task String

The task string in the configuration file of the TACACS+ server consists of tokens delimited by a comma (,). Each token contains either a task ID name and its permissions or the user group to include for this particular user, as shown in the following example:

```
task = " permissions : taskid name , # usergroup name , ..."
```



Note Cisco IOS XR software allows you to specify task IDs as an attribute in the external RADIUS or TACACS+ server. If the server is also shared by non-Cisco IOS XR software systems, these attributes are marked as optional as indicated by the server documentation. For example, CiscoSecure ACS and the freeware TACACS+ server from Cisco require an asterisk (*) instead of an equal sign (=) before the attribute value for optional attributes. If you want to configure attributes as optional, refer to the TACACS+ server documentation.

For example, to give a user named user1 BGP read, write, and execute permissions and include user1 in a user group named operator, the username entry in the external server's TACACS+ configuration file would look similar to the following:

```
user = user1{  
member = some-tac-server-group  
opap = cleartext "lab"
```

```

service = exec {
  task = "rwx:bgp,#operator"
}

```

The r,w,x, and d correspond to read, write, execute and debug, respectively, and the pound sign (#) indicates that a user group follows.



Note The optional keyword must be added in front of “task” to enable interoperability with systems based on Cisco IOS software.

If CiscoSecure ACS is used, perform the following procedure to specify the task ID and user groups:

Procedure

- Step 1** Enter your username and password.
- Step 2** Click the **Group Setup** button to display the **Group Setup** window.
- Step 3** From the Group drop-down list, select the group that you want to update.
- Step 4** Click the **Edit Settings** button.
- Step 5** Use the scroll arrow to locate the Shell (exec) check box.
- Step 6** Check the **Shell (exec)** check box to enable the custom attributes configuration.
- Step 7** Check the **Custom attributes** check box.
- Step 8** Enter the following task string without any blank spaces or quotation marks in the field:

Example:

```
task=rwx:bgp,#netadmin
```

- Step 9** Click the **Submit + Restart** button to restart the server.

The following RADIUS Vendor-Specific Attribute (VSA) example shows that the user is part of the sysadmin predefined task group, can configure BGP, and can view the configuration for OSPF:

Example:

```

user Auth-Type := Local, User-Password == lab
  Service-Type = NAS-Prompt-User,
  Reply-Message = "Hello, %u",
  Login-Service = Telnet,
  Cisco-AVPair = "shell:tasks=#sysadmin,rwx:bgp,r:ospf"

```

After user1 successfully connects and logs in to the external TACACS+ server with username user1 and appropriate password, the **show user tasks** command can be used in XR EXEC mode to display all the tasks user1 can perform. For example:

Example:

```

Username:user1
Password:
Router# show user tasks

Task:      basic-services  :READ      WRITE      EXECUTEDEBUG

```

```

Task:          bgp  :READ   WRITE   EXECUTE
Task:          cdp  :READ
Task:          diag :READ
Task:          ext-access :READ           EXECUTE
Task:          logging :READ

```

Alternatively, if a user named `user2`, who does not have a task string, logs in to the external server, the following information is displayed:

Example:

```

Username:user2
Password:
Router# show user tasks
No task ids available

```

Privilege Level Mapping

For compatibility with TACACS+ daemons that do not support the concept of task IDs, AAA supports a mapping between privilege levels defined for the user in the external TACACS+ server configuration file and local user groups. Following TACACS+ authentication, the task map of the user group that has been mapped from the privilege level returned from the external TACACS+ server is assigned to the user. For example, if a privilege level of 5 is returned from the external TACACS server, AAA attempts to get the task map of the local user group `priv5`. This mapping process is similar for other privilege levels from 1 to 13. For privilege level 14 maps to the user group `owner-sdr`.

For example, with the Cisco freeware tac plus server, the configuration file has to specify `priv_lvl` in its configuration file, as shown in the following example:

```

user = sampleuser1{
  member = bar
  service = exec-ext {
    priv_lvl = 5
  }
}

```

The number 5 in this example can be replaced with any privilege level that has to be assigned to the user `sampleuser`.

XML Schema for AAA Services

The extensible markup language (XML) interface uses requests and responses in XML document format to configure and monitor AAA. The AAA components publish the XML schema corresponding to the content and structure of the data used for configuration and monitoring. The XML tools and applications use the schema to communicate to the XML agent for performing the configuration.

The following schema are published by AAA:

- Authentication, Authorization and Accounting configuration
- User, user group, and task group configuration
- TACACS+ server and server group configuration
- RADIUS server and server group configuration

Netconf and Restconf for AAA Services

Just as in XML schemas, in Netconf and Restconf, username and password is controlled by either local or triple A (AAA) services.



Note Restconf will be supported in a future release.

About RADIUS

RADIUS is a distributed client/server system that secures networks against unauthorized access. In the Cisco implementation, RADIUS clients run on Cisco routers and send authentication and accounting requests to a central RADIUS server that contains all user authentication and network service access information.

RADIUS is a fully open protocol, distributed in source code format, that can be modified to work with any security system currently available on the market.

Cisco supports RADIUS under its AAA security paradigm. RADIUS can be used with other AAA security protocols, such as TACACS+, Kerberos, and local username lookup.



Note RADIUS is supported on all Cisco platforms, but some RADIUS-supported features run only on specified platforms.

RADIUS has been implemented in a variety of network environments that require high levels of security while maintaining network access for remote users.

Use RADIUS in the following network environments that require access security:

- Networks with multiple-vendor access servers, each supporting RADIUS. For example, access servers from several vendors use a single RADIUS server-based security database. In an IP-based network with multiple vendors' access servers, dial-in users are authenticated through a RADIUS server that has been customized to work with the Kerberos security system.
- Turnkey network security environments in which applications support the RADIUS protocol, such as in an access environment that uses a "smart card" access control system. In one case, RADIUS has been used with Enigma security cards to validate users and grant access to network resources.
- Networks already using RADIUS. You can add a Cisco router with RADIUS to the network. This might be the first step when you make a transition to a Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+) server.
- Networks in which a user must access only a single service. Using RADIUS, you can control user access to a single host, utility such as Telnet, or protocol such as Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP). For example, when a user logs in, RADIUS identifies this user as having authorization to run PPP using IP address 10.2.3.4 and the defined access list is started.
- Networks that require resource accounting. You can use RADIUS accounting independent of RADIUS authentication or authorization. The RADIUS accounting functions allow data to be sent at the start and end of services, indicating the amount of resources (such as time, packets, bytes, and so on) used during the session. An Internet service provider (ISP) might use a freeware-based version of RADIUS access control and accounting software to meet special security and billing needs.

- Networks that support preauthentication. Using the RADIUS server in your network, you can configure AAA preauthentication and set up the preauthentication profiles. Preauthentication enables service providers to better manage ports using their existing RADIUS solutions and to efficiently manage the use of shared resources to offer differing service-level agreements.

Network Security Situations in Which RADIUS is Unsuitable

RADIUS is not suitable in the following network security situations:

- Multiprotocol access environments. RADIUS does not support the following protocols:
 - AppleTalk Remote Access (ARA)
 - NetBIOS Frame Control Protocol (NBFCP)
 - NetWare Asynchronous Services Interface (NASI)
 - X.25 PAD connections
- Router-to-router situations. RADIUS does not provide two-way authentication. RADIUS can be used to authenticate from one router to a router other than a Cisco router if that router requires RADIUS authentication.
- Networks using a variety of services. RADIUS generally binds a user to one service model.

RADIUS Operation

When a user attempts to log in and authenticate to an access server using RADIUS, the following steps occur:

1. The user is prompted for and enters a username and password.
2. The username and encrypted password are sent over the network to the RADIUS server.
3. The user receives one of the following responses from the RADIUS server:
 - a. ACCEPT—The user is authenticated.
 - a. REJECT—The user is not authenticated and is prompted to reenter the username and password, or access is denied.
 - a. CHALLENGE—A challenge is issued by the RADIUS server. The challenge collects additional data from the user.
 - a. CHANGE PASSWORD—A request is issued by the RADIUS server, asking the user to select a new password.

The ACCEPT or REJECT response is bundled with additional data used for XR EXEC mode or network authorization. You must first complete RADIUS authentication before using RADIUS authorization. The additional data included with the ACCEPT or REJECT packets consists of the following:

- Services that the user can access, including Telnet, rlogin, or local-area transport (LAT) connections, and PPP, Serial Line Internet Protocol (SLIP), or XR EXEC mode services.
- Connection parameters, including the host or client IP address, access list, and user timeouts.

RADIUS with DTLS Protection

Table 8: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
RADIUS with DTLS Protection	Release 25.1.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I
RADIUS with DTLS Protection	Release 24.4.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
RADIUS with DTLS Protection	Release 24.2.11	<p>You can now secure communication for RADIUS packets by using Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) as the transport layer for the RADIUS protocol. The RADIUS protocol continues to operate over UDP but now benefits from the added security provided by DTLS. Utilizing DTLS enables the manual distribution of long-term proof of peer identity through TLS-PSK cipher suites and the option to use X509 certificates in a PKI infrastructure.</p> <p>In the absence of DTLS, RADIUS packets may be subject to potential security vulnerabilities, including data exposure, replay attacks, weak authentication, and encryption vulnerabilities, especially when transmitted across untrusted networks.</p> <p>The feature introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The keyword dtls-server is introduced in the radius-server host command. <p>YANG Data Models:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> New Xpath for <code>Cisco-IOS-XR-um-aaa-cfg.yang</code> New Xpath for <code>Cisco-IOS-XR-aaa-lib-cfg.yang</code> <p>(see GitHub, YANG Data Models Navigator)</p>

Traditionally, RADIUS has been used for Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA). However, to meet modern security demands it is important to enhance its encryption and authentication. By addressing these areas, we can enhance RADIUS's resilience against threats and maintain a secure network environment.

Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) is now utilized as the transport protocol for RADIUS to enhance security. This modification allows RADIUS to function over UDP while benefiting from DTLS's added security features.

Benefits of RADIUS with DTLS Protection

- Secure distribution of long-term proof of peer identity through TLS-PSK cipher suites.

Refers to manually sharing a pre-shared key (PSK) between peers to establish a secure Transport Layer Security (TLS) connection. This PSK serves as a long-term credential for authenticating peers with each other and ensuring that communication is between the intended parties. This method is beneficial in environments where certificates are impractical or impossible. It provides a way to authenticate and secure the data transfer without relying on the traditional Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) model.

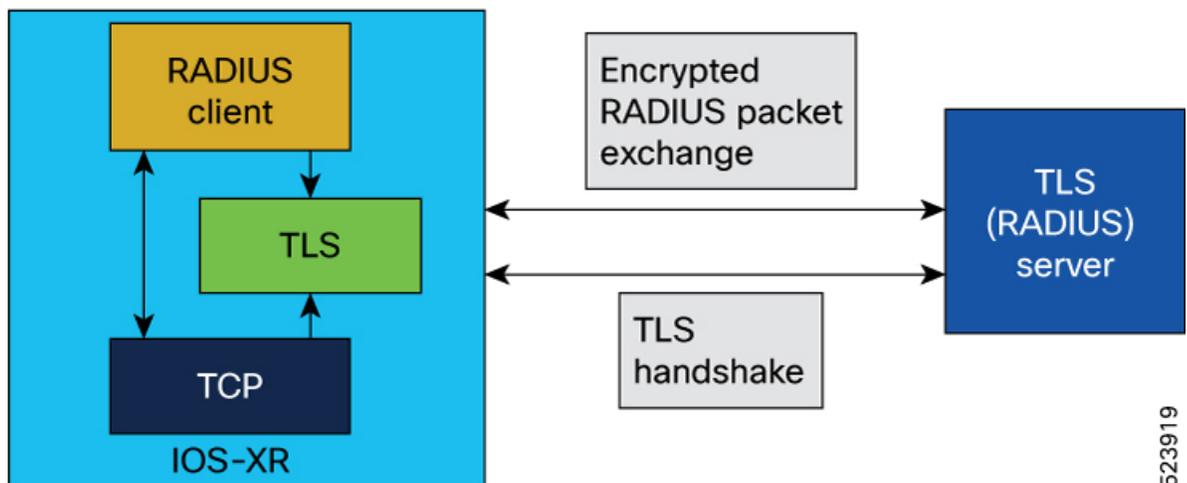
- The option to use X509 certificates in a Public Key Infrastructure (PKI).

Unlike the traditional PKI model, using X509 certificates in a PKI ensures a more robust and standardized approach to certificate management. X509 certificates are part of a system that uses public key cryptography and digital certificates to establish a secure and trustworthy communication network between clients and servers. They are used to verify entities' identity and secure data in transit. As they adhere to a widely recognized standard that ensures a high level of security and is accepted globally, this standardization facilitates trust between different entities and systems, making it easier to establish secure connections even in diverse and distributed environments.

Topology for RADIUS with DTLS Protection

Let's understand how you can establish RADIUS communication with DTLS.

Figure 5:



523919

Establish DTLS Session: The RADIUS client initiates the process to establish a secure DTLS session with the RADIUS server, which acts as the DTLS server. This session is built upon a UDP socket that the RADIUS client creates.

Store DTLS Context: Upon successful DTLS connection, the DTLS context is preserved within the DTLS connection context. This, in turn, is stored within the RADIUS context for the specified server, ensuring a persistent secure environment for subsequent communications.

RADIUS Packet Handling: The format of the RADIUS packet remains consistent with that used in RADIUS over UDP. The application constructs a RADIUS packet using standard methods. Instead of sending it via a UDP socket, the packet is handed over to the DTLS layer for secure encapsulation. DTLS effectively becomes the transport layer for RADIUS, hence the designation "RADIUS/DTLS."

Secure Data Transmission: The RADIUS packets are securely transmitted over the DTLS layer with data encryption/decryption.

This approach ensures that the RADIUS communications are secure, especially in roaming environments where the packets may pass through various administrative domains and untrusted networks. DTLS provides a robust security layer, addressing the vulnerabilities associated with traditional RADIUS over UDP.

Optimized RADIUS Session Control:

- To manage RADIUS sessions effectively, the RADIUS client employs Path MTU discovery before initiating traffic.
- The RADIUS client avoids using the same source socket for both RADIUS/UDP and RADIUS/DTLS traffic to different servers.
- Once a DTLS session is established, DTLS heartbeats monitor connectivity with the server.
- Additionally, an application-layer watchdog algorithm checks server responsiveness. The client proactively closes idle sessions; sessions indicated as inactive by the DTLS heartbeat, or those with only watchdog traffic for three timeouts.
- Sessions are also terminated if RADIUS packets fail validation or contain invalid authenticators.

Guidelines for RADIUS with DTLS Protection

- RADIUS/DTLS is supported only for IPv4.
- The default destination port number for RADIUS/DTLS is UDP/2083. There are no separate dedicated ports for authentication, accounting, and dynamic authorization changes. The source port can be arbitrary.
- RADIUS client uses DTLS as a transport only when administratively configured. If a RADIUS client is configured to use DTLS and the server is unresponsive, then the client does not fall back to RADIUS/UDP.
- We recommend creating separate AAA server groups for DTLS-capable and non-DTLS servers, because of the following server and server-group failover handling.

Server and Server-group failover handling:

When a server group includes both DTLS-capable and non-DTLS servers, the RADIUS client selects one DTLS server to establish a connection and sends the RADIUS packet. If the DTLS server doesn't respond after all retries, the client moves on to the next server in the group. If the next server supports DTLS, the RADIUS packet processing continues. On the other hand, if this server does not support DTLS, the group stops processing the packet. The client then starts over with another server group and repeats the same sequence. Therefore, creating separate AAA server groups for DTLS-capable and non-DTLS servers is recommended.

- RADIUS over DTLS does not support BNG use cases.
- RADIUS over DTLS supports the following ciphers:
 - ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384
 - ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
 - ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-SHA384
 - ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-SHA256
 - ECDHE-RSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384

- ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
- ECDHE-RSA-AES256-SHA384
- ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256
- AES256-SHA256
- AES128-SHA256

Configure RADIUS with DTLS Protection

To configure RADIUS with DTLS protection, use the command **radius-server host** with keyword **dtls-server**.

Configuration Example

```
Router# configure
Router(config)#radius-server host 209.165.201.1 auth-port 2083 acct-port 2083
Router(config-radius-host)#dtls-server trustpoint test
Router(config-radius-host)#commit
```

Running Configuration

```
Router# show running-config
radius-server host 209.165.201.1 auth-port 2083 acct-port 2083
 dtls-server trustpoint test
!
```

Verification

Verify that DTLS is enabled using the **show radius** command.

```
Router#show radius
Tue May 28 09:00:45.207 UTC
Global dead time: 0 minute(s)
Number of Servers: 1

Server: 209.165.201.1/2083/2083 is UP
  Address family: IPv4
  Total Deadtime: 0s Last Deadtime: 0s
  Timeout: 5 sec, Retransmit limit: 3
  Quarantined: No
  Authentication:
    0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
    0 accepts, 0 rejects, 0 challenges
    0 timeouts, 0 bad responses, 0 bad authenticators
    0 unknown types, 0 dropped, 0 ms latest rtt
  Throttled: 0 transactions, 0 timeout, 0 failures
  Estimated Throttled Access Transactions: 0
  Maximum Throttled Access Transactions: 0

  Automated TEST Stats:
    0 requests, 0 timeouts, 0 response, 0 pending
dtls:enabled
Accounting:
  0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
  0 responses, 0 timeouts, 0 bad responses
  0 bad authenticators, 0 unknown types, 0 dropped
  0 ms latest rtt
  Throttled: 0 transactions, 0 timeout, 0 failures
  Estimated Throttled Accounting Transactions: 0
```

Maximum Throttled Accounting Transactions: 0

Automated TEST Stats:

0 requests, 0 timeouts, 0 response, 0 pending

RADIUS with TLS protection

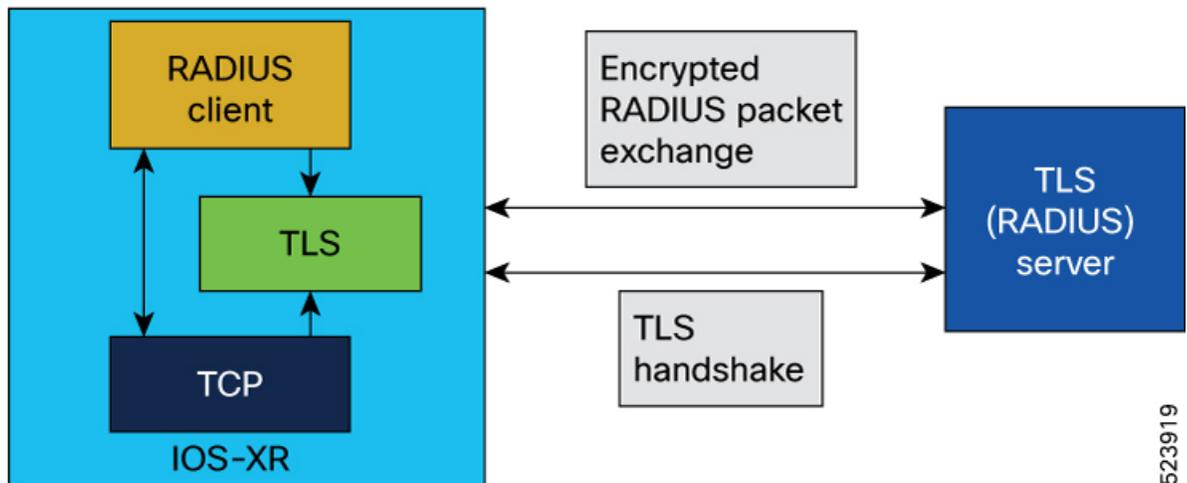
Table 9: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
RADIUS with TLS protection	Release 24.4.1	<p>Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) packets are now less vulnerable to security risks, including data exposure, replay attacks, weak authentication, and encryption weaknesses. This is because we have enabled support for RADIUS with TLS protection.</p> <p>You can configure the RADIUS protocol on the router to redirect RADIUS packets to a remote server over TLS for Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) services.</p> <p>The feature introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The keyword radsec-server is introduced in the radius-server host command. <p>YANG Data Models:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> New Xpath for <code>Cisco-IOS-XR-um-aaa-cfg.yang</code> New Xpath for <code>Cisco-IOS-XR-aaa-lib-cfg.yang</code> <p>(see GitHub, YANG Data Models Navigator)</p>

Topology for RADIUS with TLS protection

Traditionally, RADIUS has been used for Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA). However, to meet modern security demands it is important to enhance its encryption and authentication. To increase the resilience against threats and maintain a secure network environment, TLS is now utilized as the transport protocol for RADIUS.

This feature supports TLS version 1.3.



523919

Let's understand how you can establish RADIUS communication with TLS.

Establish TLS session: The RADIUS client initiates the process to establish a secure TLS session with the RADIUS server, which acts as the TLS server. This session is built upon a TCP socket that the RADIUS client creates.

Store TLS context: Upon successful TLS connection, the TLS context is preserved within the TLS connection context. This, in turn, is stored within the RADIUS context for the specified server, ensuring a persistent secure environment for subsequent communications.

RADIUS packet handling: The format of the RADIUS packet remains consistent with that used in RADIUS over TCP. The application constructs a RADIUS packet using standard methods. Instead of sending it via a TCP socket, the packet is handed over to the TLS layer for secure encapsulation. TLS effectively becomes the transport layer for RADIUS, hence the designation "RADIUS/TLS."

Secure data transmission: The RADIUS packets are securely transmitted over the TLS layer with data encryption/decryption.

This approach ensures that the RADIUS communications are secure, especially in roaming environments where the packets may pass through various administrative domains and untrusted networks. TLS provides a robust security layer, addressing the vulnerabilities associated with traditional RADIUS over UDP.

Optimized RADIUS session control:

- To manage RADIUS sessions effectively, the RADIUS client employs Path MTU discovery before initiating traffic.
- The RADIUS client avoids using the same source socket for both RADIUS/UDP and RADIUS/TLS traffic to different servers.
- Once a TLS session is established, TLS heartbeats monitor connectivity with the server.
- Additionally, an application-layer watchdog algorithm checks server responsiveness. The client proactively closes idle sessions; sessions indicated as inactive by the TLS heartbeat, or those with only watchdog traffic for three timeouts.
- RADIUS sessions are terminated when RADIUS packets fail validation or contain invalid authenticators. When a session fails validation, the session is validated again using the next specified failover mechanism.

Restrictions for RADIUS with TLS Protection

The list provides the restrictions that apply to RADIUS with TLS protection:

- Broadband Network Gateway (BNG) applications are not supported.
- The default destination port for RADIUS over TLS is TCP 2083 for authentication and accounting. There is no support for custom ports.
- The maximum number of concurrent TLS sessions supported is 50.
- RADIUS over TLS supports IPv4 addresses only.
- A combination of TLS, UDP, and DTLS server types under one server group over RADIUS is not recommended.

Supported ciphers

TLS ciphers are encryption algorithms that secure RADIUS traffic. Here are some supported TLS ciphers:

- TLS_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
- TLS_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256
- TLS_AES_128_GCM_SHA256
- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256
- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256
- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256
- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256
- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA384
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA384
- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA256
- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256
- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256
- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA
- TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA
- TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA

- TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA
- TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
- TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256
- TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA256
- TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256
- TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA
- TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA
- TLS_EMPTY_RENEGOTIATION_INFO_SCSV

The cipher suite negotiated between the client and the server when both support TLS 1.3 is:

- TLS_AES_256_GCM_SHA384

Configure RADIUS with TLS protection

To configure RADIUS with TLS protection, use the command **radius-server host** with keyword **radsec-server**.

Before you begin

Before configuring RADIUS with TLS protection, complete these steps on the Cisco router. See **Implementing Certification Authority Interoperability** for more information.

1. Configure a trustpoint.
2. Import the CA certificate.
3. Enroll the trustpoint and generate a client certificate on CA.
4. Import the client certificate.

Procedure

Step 1 Enter the hostname or IP address of the RADIUS server.

```
Router(Config)#radius-server host 209.165.201.1 auth-port 2083 acct-port 2083 radsec-server
```

Step 2 Enter the name of the trusted point so that the router can verify certificates issued to peers.

```
Router(config-radius-host)trustpoint test
```

Your router need not enroll with the CA that issued the certificates to the peers.

Step 3 Commit the changes.

```
Router(config-radius-host)#commit
```

Step 4 Verify that TLS is enabled by using the **show radius** command.

```
Router#show radius
Thu Jun 20 11:43:40.863 UTC
```

```

Global dead time: 0 minute(s)
Number of Servers: 3

Server: 209.165.201.1/2083/2083 is UP
Address family: IPv4
Total Deadtime: 0s Last Deadtime: 0s
Timeout: 5 sec, Retransmit limit: 3
Quarantined: No
Authentication:
  0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
  0 accepts, 0 rejects, 0 challenges
  0 timeouts, 0 bad responses, 0 bad authenticators
  0 unknown types, 0 dropped, 0 ms latest rtt
Throttled: 0 transactions, 0 timeout, 0 failures
Estimated Throttled Access Transactions: 0
Maximum Throttled Access Transactions: 0

Automated TEST Stats:
  0 requests, 0 timeouts, 0 response, 0 pending
Server-type: TLS
Accounting:
  0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
  0 responses, 0 timeouts, 0 bad responses
  0 bad authenticators, 0 unknown types, 0 dropped
  0 ms latest rtt
Throttled: 0 transactions, 0 timeout, 0 failures
Estimated Throttled Accounting Transactions: 0
Maximum Throttled Accounting Transactions: 0

Automated TEST Stats:
  0 requests, 0 timeouts, 0 response, 0 pending

```

Step 5 Verify the configuration settings by using the **show running-configuration** command.

```

Router#show running-configuration radius-server
Fri Jun 21 02:59:40.238 UTC
radius-server host 209.165.201.1 auth-port 2083 acct-port 2083
radsec-server trustpoint test
!

```

Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) Marking Support for TACACS Packets

Differentiated Services is a Quality of Service (QoS) architecture that manages the data traffic in a network by using the principle of traffic classification. In this model, the traffic is divided into classes and the data packets are forwarded to the corresponding classes. Based on the priority of the network traffic, the different classes are managed.

To classify traffic, Differentiated Services uses Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP). It is a 6-bit field in the Type of Service (ToS) byte in the IP header. Based on the DSCP value, the user is able to classify the data traffic and forward packets to the next destination.

You can set the value of DSCP. For a single connection, set the DSCP value on the socket while connecting to the server. In this way, all the outgoing packets will have the same DSCP value in their IP headers. For multiple connections, the DSCP value is set on the available open sockets. Use the **tacacs-server ipv4** command to set the DSCP value.

How to Configure AAA Services

To configure AAA services, perform the tasks described in the following sections.

Configure Task group

Task-based authorization employs the concept of a *task ID* as its basic element. A task ID defines the permission to execute an operation for a given user. Each user is associated with a set of permitted router operation tasks identified by task IDs. Users are granted authority by being assigned to user groups that are in turn associated with task groups. Each task group is associated with one or more task IDs. The first configuration task in setting up an authorization scheme to configure the task groups, followed by user groups, followed by individual users.

Specific task IDs can be removed from a task group by specifying the **no** prefix for the **task** command.

The task group itself can be removed. Deleting a task group that is still referred to elsewhere results in an error.

Before you begin

Before creating task groups and associating them with task IDs, you should have some familiarity with the router list of task IDs and the purpose of each task ID. Use the **show aaa task supported** command to display a complete list of task IDs.



Note Only users with write permissions for the AAA task ID can configure task groups.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **taskgroup** *taskgroup-name*

Example:

```
Router(config)# taskgroup beta
```

Creates a name for a particular task group and enters task group configuration submode.

- Specific task groups can be removed from the system by specifying the **no** form of the **taskgroup** command.

Step 3 **description** *string*

Example:

```
Router(config-tg)# description this is a sample task group description
```

(Optional) Creates a description of the task group named in Step 2.

Step 4 `task {read | write | execute | debug} taskid-name`

Example:

```
Router(config-tg)# task read bgp
```

Specifies a task ID to be associated with the task group named in Step 2.

- Assigns **read** permission for any CLI or API invocations associated with that task ID and performed by a member of the task group.
- Specific task IDs can be removed from a task group by specifying the **no** prefix for the **task** command.

Step 5 Repeat for each task ID to be associated with the task group named in Step 2.

—

Step 6 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit—Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end—Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes**— Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No**—Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel**—Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

What to do next

After completing configuration of a full set of task groups, configure a full set of user groups as described in the Configuring User Groups section.

Task Group Configuration

Task groups are configured with a set of task IDs per action type.

Specific task IDs can be removed from a task group by specifying the **no** prefix for the **task** command.

The task group itself can be removed. Deleting a task group that is still referred to elsewhere results in an error.

Before you begin

Before creating task groups and associating them with task IDs, you should have some familiarity with the router list of task IDs and the purpose of each task ID. Use the **show aaa task supported** command to display a complete list of task IDs.



Note Only users with write permissions for the AAA task ID can configure task groups.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **taskgroup** *taskgroup-name*

Example:

```
Router(config)# taskgroup beta
```

Creates a name for a particular task group and enters task group configuration submode.

- Specific task groups can be removed from the system by specifying the **no** form of the **taskgroup** command.

Step 3 **description** *string*

Example:

```
Router(config-tg)# description this is a sample task group description
```

(Optional) Creates a description of the task group named in Step 2.

Step 4 **task** {**read** | **write** | **execute** | **debug**} *taskid-name*

Example:

```
Router(config-tg)# task read bgp
```

Specifies a task ID to be associated with the task group named in Step 2.

- Assigns **read** permission for any CLI or API invocations associated with that task ID and performed by a member of the task group.
- Specific task IDs can be removed from a task group by specifying the **no** prefix for the **task** command.

Step 5 Repeat Step 4 for each task ID to be associated with the task group named in Step 2.

Step 6 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
 - **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
 - **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.
-

What to do next

After completing configuration of a full set of task groups, configure a full set of user groups as described in the Configuring User Groups section.

Configure User Groups

User groups are configured with the command parameters for a set of users, such as task groups. Entering the **usergroup** command accesses the user group configuration submode. Users can remove specific user groups by using the **no** form of the **usergroup** command. Deleting a usergroup that is still referenced in the system results in a warning.

Before you begin



Note Only users associated with the WRITE:AAA task ID can configure user groups. User groups cannot inherit properties from predefined groups, such as owner-sdr.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **usergroup** *usergroup-name*

Example:

```
Router(config)# usergroup beta
```

Creates a name for a particular user group and enters user group configuration submode.

- Specific user groups can be removed from the system by specifying the **no** form of the **usergroup** command.

Step 3 **description** *string*

Example:

```
Router(config-ug)#  
description this is a sample user group description
```

(Optional) Creates a description of the user group named in Step 2.

Step 4 **inherit usergroup** *usergroup-name*

Example:

```
Router(config-ug)#  
inherit usergroup sales
```

- Explicitly defines permissions for the user group.

Step 5 `taskgroup taskgroup-name`**Example:**

```
Router(config-ug)# taskgroup beta
```

Associates the user group named in Step 2 with the task group named in this step.

- The user group takes on the configuration attributes (task ID list and permissions) already defined for the entered task group.

Step 6 Repeat Step for each task group to be associated with the user group named in Step 2.

—

Step 7 Use the `commit` or `end` command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Configure First User on Cisco Routers

When a Cisco Router is booted for the very first time, and a user logs in for the first time, a root-system username and password must be created. Configure the root-system username and password, as described in the following procedure:

Step 1. Establish a connection to the Console port.

This initiates communication with the router. When you have successfully connected to the router through the Console port, the router displays the prompt:

```
Enter root-system username
```

Step 2. Type the username for the root-system login and press **Enter**.

Sets the root-system username, which is used to log in to the router.

Step 3. Type the password for the root-system login and press **Enter**.

Creates an encrypted password for the root-system username. This password must be at least six characters in length. The router displays the prompt:

```
Enter secret
```

Step 4. Retype the password for the root-system login and press **Enter**.

Allows the router to verify that you have entered the same password both times. The router displays the prompt:

```
Enter secret again
```



Note If the passwords do not match, the router prompts you to repeat the process.

Step 5. Log in to the router.

Establishes your access rights for the router management session.



Note In case of Router reload, when there is no stored username and password, you must create a new username and password.

For more information on minimum password length, see [Minimum Password Length for First User Creation](#), on page 55.

Example

The following example shows the root-system username and password configuration for a new router, and it shows the initial login:

```
/* Administrative User Dialog */
Enter root-system username: cisco
Enter secret:
Enter secret again:

RP/0/0/CPU0:Jan 10 12:50:53.105 : exec[65652]: %MGBL-CONFIG-6-DB_COMMIT : 'Administration
configuration committed by system'.
Use 'show configuration commit changes 2000000009' to view the changes. Use the 'admin'
mode 'configure' command to modify this configuration.

/* User Access Verification */
Username: cisco
Password:
RP/0/0/CPU0:ios#
```

The secret line in the configuration command script shows that the password is encrypted. When you type the password during configuration and login, the password is hidden.

Configure Users

Perform this task to configure a user.

Each user is identified by a username that is unique across the administrative domain. Each user should be made a member of at least one user group. Deleting a user group may orphan the users associated with that group. The AAA server authenticates orphaned users but most commands are not authorized.

From Cisco IOS XR Software Release 24.3.1 and later, the router synchronizes up to 100 valid Linux-compatible users to the Linux infrastructure (/etc/passwd file), and up to 20 users to the standby route processor (RP) in a dual-RP router setup.



Note You must not use the following words as usernames:

- backup

- bin
- bind
- daemon
- dhcp
- games
- gnat
- irc
- ip
- list
- mail
- man
- messagebus
- news
- nobody
- proxy
- rpc
- root
- sys
- sync
- systemd-timesync
- systemd-network
- systemd-bus-proxy
- sshd
- uucp
- www-data

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 `username user-name`**Example:**

```
Router(config)# username user1
```

Creates a name for a new user (or identifies a current user) and enters username configuration submode.

- The `user-name` argument can be only one word. Spaces and quotation marks are not allowed.

Step 3 Do one of the following:

- `password {0 | 7} password`
- `secret {0 | 5|8 | 9| 10} secret`

Example:

```
Router(config-un)# password 0 pwd1
```

or

```
Router(config-un)# secret 0 sec1
```

Specifies a password for the user named in step 2.

- Use the `secret` command to create a secure login password for the user names specified in step 2.
- Entering `0` following the `password` command specifies that an unencrypted (clear-text) password follows. Entering `7` following the `password` command specifies that an encrypted password follows.
- Entering `0` following the `secret` command specifies that a secure unencrypted (clear-text) password follows. Entering `5` following the `secret` command specifies that a secure encrypted password follows.
- Type `0` is the default for the `password` and `secret` commands.

Step 4 `group group-name`**Example:**

```
Router(config-un)# group sysadmin
```

Assigns the user named in step 2 to a user group that has already been defined through the `usergroup` command.

- The user takes on all attributes of the user group, as defined by that user group's association to various task groups.
- Each user must be assigned to at least one user group. A user may belong to multiple user groups.

Step 5 Repeat step 4 for each user group to be associated with the user specified in step 2.

—

Step 6 Use the `commit` or `end` command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Password Masking For Type 7 Password Authentication

Table 10: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Password Masking	Release 25.1.1	Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*) *This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I
Password Masking	Release 24.4.1	Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*) *This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM
Password Masking	Release 7.3.1	With this feature, when you key in a password or secret, it is not displayed on the screen. This enhances security. The feature is enabled by default. The following options are added to the username command: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • masked-password • masked-secret

When you key in a password, to ensure that it is not displayed on the screen, use the **masked-password** option. Details:

Use the **username** command as shown below, and enter the password.

The following command contains the username us3, and 0 to specify a cleartext password.

```
Router(config)# username us3 masked-password 0
```

```
Enter password:
Re-enter password:
```

```
Router(config)#commit
```

View the encrypted password:

```
Router# show run aaa
..
```

```
username us3
password 7 105A1D0D
```

Enable Type 7 password authentication and enter the encrypted password 105A1D0D. You can also use a password encrypted earlier.

```
Router(config)# username us3 masked-password 7
```

```
Enter password:
Re-enter password:
```

```
Router(config)#commit
```

If there is a password mismatch between the two entries, an error message is displayed.

Configure Type 8 and Type 9 Passwords

When configuring a password, user has the following two options:

- User can provide an already encrypted value, which is stored directly in the system without any further encryption.
- User can provide a cleartext password that is internally encrypted and stored in the system.

The Type 5, Type 8, Type 9 and Type 10 encryption methods provide the above mentioned options for users to configure their passwords.

For more information about configuring users with Type 8 and Type 9 encryption methods, see [Configure Users, on page 77](#) section.

Configuration Example

Directly configuring a Type 8 encrypted password:

```
Router(config)# username demo8
Router(config-un)#secret 8 $8$dsYGNam3K1SIJO$7nv/35M/qr6t.dVc7UY9zrJDWRVqncHub1PE9U1MQFs
```

Configuring a clear-text password that is encrypted using Type 8 encryption method:

```
Router(config)# username demo8
Router(config-un)#secret 0 enc-type 8 PASSWORD
```

Directly configuring a Type 9 encrypted password:

```
Router(config)# username demo9
Router(config-un)# secret 9 $9$nhEmQVczB7dqsO$X.HsgL6x1i10RxxkOSSvyQYwucySct7qFm4v7pqCxxkKM
```

Configuring a clear-text password that is encrypted using Type 9 encryption method:

```
Router(config)# username demo9
Router(config-un)#secret 0 enc-type 9 PASSWORD
```

Password Masking For Type 5, Type 8, Type 9 And Type 10 Password Authentication

When you key in a password, to ensure that it is not displayed on the screen, use the **masked-secret** option. Steps:

Use the **username** command as shown below, and enter the password.

The following command contains the username us6, 0 to specify a cleartext password, and the encryption type (5, 8, 9, or 10).

```
Router(config)# username us6 masked-secret 0 enc-type 8
```

```
Enter secret:
Re-enter secret:
```

```
Router(config)# commit
```

View the encrypted secret:

```
Router# show running-config aaa
```

```
..
username us6
  secret 8 $8$m1cSk/Ae5Qu/5k$RjdI3SQ8B4iP7rdxxQvVlJVeRHSubZzcgaLYxjg36s
```

Enter the username, 8 to specify Type 8 secret authentication, and enter the Type 8 secret. You can also use a secret encrypted earlier.

```
Router(config)# username us6 masked-secret 8
```

```
Enter secret:
Re-enter secret:
```

```
Router(config)# commmit
```

If there is a password mismatch between the two entries, an error message is displayed.

Related Topics

- [Type 8 and Type 9 Encryption Methods, on page 46](#)
- [Type 10 Password Encryption for User Management, on page 46](#)

Associated Commands

- secret
- username

Configure Type 10 Password Encryption

You can use these options to configure Type 10 (**sha512**) password encryption for the user:

Configuration Example

The Type 10 encryption is applied by default when you create a user with a clear-text password.

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#username user10 secret testpassword
Router(config-un)#commit
```

Also, a new parameter '10' is available for the **secret** option under the **username** command to explicitly configure Type 10 encryption.

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#username root secret 10 $6$9UvJidvsTEqgkAPU$3CL1Ei/F.E4v/Hi.UaqPrvJWf1
Router(config-un)#commit
```

In scenarios where you have to enter the clear-text password, you can specify the encryption algorithm to be used by using the **enc-type** keyword and the clear-text password as follows:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#username user10 secret 0 enc-type 10 testpassword
Router(config-un)#commit
```

```
Router#show run aaa
!
username user10
secret 10 $6$9UvJidvsTEqgkAPU$3CL1Ei/F.E4v/Hi.UaqPrvJWf1
!
```

The above configuration returns the encrypted password using Type10 algorithm (use the **show run username** command to verify that) which can then be configured for the user as follows:

```
Router(config)#username user10 secret 10 $6$9UvJidvsTEqgkAPU$3CL1Ei/F.E4v/Hi.UaqPrvJWf1
Router(config-un)#commit
```

Running Configuration

```
Router#show run username user10
!
username user10
secret 10 $6$9UvJidvsTEqgkAPU$3CL1Ei/F.E4v/Hi.UaqPrvJWf1
!
```

Related Topics

- [Type 10 Password Encryption for User Management, on page 46](#)

Associated Commands

- username
- secret

Configure AAA Password Policy

To configure the AAA password policy, use the **aaa password-policy** command in the global configuration mode.

Configuration Example

This example shows how to configure a AAA password security policy, *test-policy*. This *test-policy* is applied to a user by using the **username** command along with **password-policy** option.

```
Router(config)#aaa password-policy test-policy
Router(config-aaa)#min-length 8
Router(config-aaa)#max-length 15
Router(config-aaa)#lifetime months 3
Router(config-aaa)#min-char-change 5
Router(config-aaa)#authen-max-attempts 3
Router(config-aaa)#lockout-time days 1
Router(config-aaa)#commit

Router(config)#username user1 password-policy test-policy password 0 pwd1
```

Running Configuration

```
aaa password-policy test-policy
  min-length 8
  max-length 15
  lifetime months 3
  min-char-change 5
  authen-max-attempts 3
  lockout-time days 1
!
```

Verification

Use this command to get details of the AAA password policy configured in the router:

```
Router#show aaa password-policy

Password Policy Name : test-policy
  Number of Users : 1
  Minimum Length : 8
  Maximum Length : 15
  Special Character Len : 0
  Uppercase Character Len : 0
  Lowercase Character Len : 1
  Numeric Character Len : 0
  Policy Life Time :
    seconds : 0
    minutes : 0
    hours : 0
    days : 0
    months : 3
    years : 0
  Lockout Time :
    seconds : 0
    minutes : 0
    hours : 0
    days : 1
    months : 0
    years : 0
  Character Change Len : 5
  Maximum Failure Attempts : 3
```

Password Masking For AAA Password Policies

When you key in a password, to ensure that it is not displayed on the screen, use the **masked-password** option. Steps:

Create a AAA password security policy and enter the cleartext password.

In this example, a policy called *security* is created, and 0 is specified for a cleartext password.

```
Router(config)# aaa password-policy security
Router(config)# username us6 password-policy security masked-password 0
```

```
Enter password:
Re-enter password:
```

```
Router(config)#commit
```

View the encrypted password:

```
Router# show run aaa
..
aaa password-policy security
..
username us6
  password-policy security password 7 0835585A
```

Enter the username, 7 to specify Type 7 password authentication, and enter the password 0835585A. You can also use a password encrypted earlier.

```
Router(config)# username us6 password-policy test-policy masked-password 7
```

```
Enter password:
Re-enter password:
```

```
Router(config)#commit
```

If there is a password mismatch between the two entries, an error message is displayed.

Related Topic

- [AAA Password Security for FIPS Compliance, on page 52](#)

Associated Commands

- **aaa password-policy**
- **show aaa password-policy**
- **username**

Configure Password Policy for User Secret and Password

A new option, **policy** is added to the existing **username** command to apply the password policy to the user. This policy is common to the password and the secret. After applying the policy to the user, the system validates any change to the secret or password against that particular policy.

On Cisco IOS XR 64 bit platforms, the first user is synced from XR VM to System Admin VM. If the user is configured for a secret policy, then the password compliance is checked during the configuration. The

password is then synced to System Admin VM. When system administrators need to explicitly configure the user, then the username configurations on System Admin VM are not checked for the password compliance. This is because, the password policy configuration is not applicable on System Admin VM.



Note The configuration model for the AAA component on System Admin VM is the YANG file. A change in the YANG model can cause configuration inconsistencies during an upgrade or downgrade scenario.

Guidelines to Configure Password Policy for User Secret

You must follow these guidelines while configuring policy for user password or secret:

- If there is no policy already configured while configuring the user secret, then the system does not have any policy validation to do for that secret. So, you must ensure that the policy is configured first and then applied to the username configuration, before configuring the secret. Especially when you copy and paste the username configurations.
- If you change the user secret at the time of log in, the system applies the same hashing type as it was applied in the username configuration. For example, if the secret was applied as Type 5 in the username configuration, then the system applies Type 5 itself if the secret is modified at the time of log in.
- Password and secret are different entities. Hence, if **restrict-old-count** is configured in the policy while changing the password, the system checks for compliance only with the history of old passwords; not with the history of old secrets.
- Similarly, the system does not check for old password history while changing the secret and vice versa. So, if the same secret (in clear text) was used before as password for the user, then the system allows that secret configuration. And, vice versa, for the password configuration.
- The **restrict-old-count** applies to both secret and password. So, the configured secret or password overwrites the old secret or password in the FIFO order.
- When you try to assign a different policy to a username which already has a password or secret associated to a policy, then the system rejects that configuration. The error message indicates to remove the existing password or secret in order to apply the new policy to the user.
- The system does not allow any configuration that requires the secret to be validated against the previous composition of the cleartext secret. This is because, you cannot retrieve the clear text format of the secret that was once hashed, for comparison. Hence, the following configurations do not have any effect on the secret configuration of the user:
 - **max-char-repetition**
 - **min-char-change**
 - **restrict-password-reverse**
 - **restrict-password-advanced**
- As the new **policy** configuration for the user is common to password and secret, the existing **password-policy** configuration becomes redundant. So, these configurations must be mutually exclusive. When any one of these configurations is already present, and if you try to configure the other policy, then the system rejects it. The error message says that **password-policy** and **policy** are not allowed together.

Configuration Example

This example shows how to configure a password policy for the user, that applies to both the password and the secret of the user.

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#username user1
Router(config-un)#policy test-policy1
Router(config-un)#secret 10
$6$dmwU0Ajicf98W0.$y/vzynWF1/OcGxwBwHs79VAy5ZZLh0Hd7TicR4mOo8IIVriYCGAKW0A.w1JvTPO7IbZry.DxHrE3SN2BBzBJe0
Router(config-un)#commit
```

Running Configuration

```
username user1
policy test-policy1
secret 10
$6$dmwU0Ajicf98W0.$y/vzynWF1/OcGxwBwHs79VAy5ZZLh0Hd7TicR4mOo8IIVriYCGAKW0A.w1JvTPO7IbZry.DxHrE3SN2BBzBJe0
!
```

The below examples show different possible combinations to check for password or secret compliance against the policy:

```
username user2
policy test-policy1
password 7 09604F0B
!
username user3
policy test-policy1
secret 10
$6$U3GZl1lVINwJ4Dl1.$8X6av2kQ.AWvMKGEz5TLvZ07OXj6DgeOqLoQKI7XJxKayViFJNateZ0no6gO6DbbXn4bBo/Dlqitro3j1sS40
password 7 080D4D4C
!
username user4
secret 10
$6$mA465X/m/UQ5...$rSKRw9B/SBYC/N.f7A9NCntPkrHXL6F4V26/NTjWXnrSna03FxW3bcyFDAyveOexJz7/oak0XB6tjLF5CO981
password-policy test-policy1 password 7 0723204E
!
username user5
password-policy test-policy1 password 7 09604F0B
!
```

The compliance check for password or secret in the above examples works as described below:

- When you change the secret for user1, the system checks the secret compliance against the policy, test-policy1.
- When you change the password for user2, the system checks the password compliance against the policy, test-policy1.
- When you change the password or secret for user3, the system checks the password or secret compliance against the policy, test-policy1.
- When you change the secret for user4, the system does not check for compliance against any policy. Whereas, when you change the password for user4, the system checks the password compliance against the policy, test-policy1.

- When you change the password for user5, the system checks the password compliance against the policy, test-policy1.

The below example shows the order of configurations when performed in a single commit (say, by copy and paste). In such scenarios, if there is any username entry with a secret and policy configured, the system checks for secret compliance against that policy. In this example, the system does not check for any password compliance during the commit. So, the following configurations can be put in any order in a single commit.

```
(1)aaa password-policy poll
lifetime minutes 1
upper-case 1
restrict-old-count 2
!

username lab2
group root-lr
(2) policy poll
(3) secret 10
$6$gphqA0RfBX0n6A0.$wRwWG110TIpHPdVQ66fUiIM5P46ggoQMgGfuaZd0LD2DLFYD1DPaRyXQLi8Izjb49tC7H7tkTLrcl.GELFpiK.

password 7 1533292F200F2D
!
```

Related Topics

- [Password Policy for User Secret, on page 55](#)

Associated Commands

- `aaa password-policy`
- `policy`
- `username`

Display Username for Failed Authentication for Telnet Protocols

Table 11: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Display Username for Failed Authentication for Telnet Protocols	Release 25.1.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Display Username for Failed Authentication for Telnet Protocols	Release 24.4.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM
Display Username for Failed Authentication for Telnet Protocols	Release 7.10.1	<p>With this feature, we have enhanced the security of the routers and introduced better tracking functionality to the router.</p> <p>The failed authentication sys log now displays the details of users who tried to log in but failed due to authentication failure.</p> <p>With this feature provisioned, the router can now display the user ID of both SSH and Telnet protocols.</p> <p>In earlier releases, this feature was available only for SSH protocols.</p> <p>This feature introduces the following change:</p> <p>CLI: aaa display-login-failed-users.</p> <p>YANG DATA Model: New XPaths for <code>Cisco-IOS-XR-um-aaa-task-user-cfg</code> (see Github, YANG Data Models Navigator)</p>

Effective Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.10.1, you can track the username of the users who tried to login to the router and their authentication failed in the failed authentication system logs. Prior to this release, this feature was available for SSH clients only. Now, this functionality is available for both SSH and Telnet clients. By default, the feature is disabled. When this feature is disabled, failed authentication sys logs displays the username as **unknown** for both SSH and Telnet. Once the feature is enabled, the failed authentication sys

logs display the username of the users who tried to login to the router, and the login attempt was unsuccessful due to failed authentication.

Use the **aaa display-login-failed-users** command in XR Config mode to enable this feature.

Enable Display of Username for Failed Authentication

Configuration Example

```
Router#conf
Router(config)#aaa display-login-failed-users
Router(config)#commit
```

Running configuration

```
Router# show run aaa display-login-failed-users
!
aaa display-login-failed-users
!
```

Verification

This section shows example from sys logs where the user name is displayed for failed authentication after the configuration of this feature.

System logs for Telnet client:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Jul 18 14:46:31.590 UTC: exec[66608]:
%SECURITY-LOGIN-4-AUTHEN_FAILED : Failed authentication attempt by
user lab from 'console' on 'con0_RP0_CPU0'
```

System logs for SSH client:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Jul 18 14:47:51.590 UTC: ssh_syslog_proxy[1216]:
%SECURITY-SSHD_SYSLOG_PRX-6-INFO_GENERAL : sshd[13519]: Failed authentication/pam
for lab from 192.168.122.1 port 44822 ssh2
```

Password Policy to Restrict Consecutive Characters

Table 12: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Password Policy to Restrict Consecutive Characters	Release 25.1.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Password Policy to Restrict Consecutive Characters	Release 24.4.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM
Password Policy to Restrict Consecutive Characters	Release 7.7.1	<p>We have enhanced the router security by enforcing a strong password policy for all users configured on the router. You can now specify a new password policy for the user that restricts the usage of a specific number of consecutive characters for the login passwords. These characters include English alphabets, the sequence of QWERTY keyboard layout, and numbers, such as, 'abcd', 'qwer', '1234', and so on. Apart from <i>passwords</i>, the feature is also applicable for <i>secrets</i>—the one-way encrypted secure login passwords that are not easy to decrypt to retrieve the original unencrypted password text.</p> <p>The password policy is applicable only for the users configured on the local AAA server on the router; not those configured on the remote AAA server.</p> <p>The feature introduces the restrict-consecutive-characters command.</p>

Most often you create passwords and secrets which are easy to remember, such as the ones that use consecutive characters from English alphabets, or numbers. Such passwords and secrets are easy to compromise, thereby making the router vulnerable to security attacks. From Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.7.1 and later, you

can enhance the security of your user passwords and secrets by defining a password policy that restricts the usage of consecutive characters from English alphabets, QWERTY layout keyboard English alphabets, and numbers (such as, 'abcd', 'qwer', 'zyxw', '1234', and so on). You can also restrict a cyclic wrapping of the alphabet and the number (such as, 'yzab', 'opqw', '9012', and so on). The feature also gives you the flexibility to specify the number of consecutive alphabets or numbers to be restricted.

Certain key aspects of this feature are:

- The feature is disabled, by default.
- The security administrator must have *write* permission for AAA tasks to create the password policies.
- All password policies are applicable only to locally-configured users; not to users who are configured on remote AAA servers.

This table depicts the examples of valid and invalid passwords and secrets when the password policy to restrict consecutive characters (say, 4 in this example) is in place.

Use Case	Examples of Invalid Password or Secret	Examples of Valid Password or Secret
4 consecutive English alphabets	AbcD, ABCD, TestPQRS, DcbA, TestZYxW123, DCBA, ihgf	AbcPqR, Xyzdef, Yzab, zabC
4 consecutive English alphabets and decimal numbers from QWERTY keyboard layout	Qwer, QWER, Mnbv, aQwerm, Test1234, TestT7890, 5678, fghj	Opas, xzLk, sapo, saqw3210, Test9012
Restrict 4 consecutive English alphabets along with cyclic wrapping	Yzab, TestYZAB, zabc	1234, Qwer, QWER, Mnbv, aQwerm, Test1234, TestT0987
Restrict 4 consecutive English alphabets and numbers from QWERTY keyboard layout along with cyclic wrapping	9012, 8901, Test3210, TestT0987, Opqw, klas, dsal, Cxzm, nmzx	AbcD, ABCD, Yzab, TestYZAB, zabc

How to Restrict Consecutive Characters for User Passwords and Secrets

To enable the feature to restrict consecutive characters for user passwords and secrets, use the **restrict-consecutive-characters** command in *aaa password policy* configuration mode. To disable the feature, use the **no** form of the command.

You can use the optional keyword, **cyclic-wrap**, to restrict the cyclic wrapping of characters and numbers.

After creating the password policies, you must explicitly apply those policies to the user profiles so that the password policies take effect in the password and secret configuration.

Configuration Example

Enabling the feature using CLI:

```
Router (config)#aaa password-policy test-policy
Router (config-pp)#restrict-consecutive-characters english-alphabet 4
Router (config-pp)#restrict-consecutive-characters qwerty-keyboard 5
```

The keyword, **cyclic-wrap**, to restrict cyclic wrapping is an optional parameter. If configured, then the feature also restricts the cyclic wrapping of characters and numbers.

```
Router(config-pp)#restrict-consecutive-characters english-alphabet 4 cyclic-wrap
Router(config-pp)#restrict-consecutive-characters qwerty-keyboard 5 cyclic-wrap
```

Applying the password policy to the user profile:

```
Router(config)#username user1
Router(config-un)#policy test-policy
Router(config-un)#commit
```

Running Configuration

This is a sample running configuration that shows that you have configured a AAA password policy that restricts six consecutive characters from the QWERTY keyboard, and cyclic wrapping of four consecutive English alphabets.

```
Router(config-pp)#show running-config aaa password-policy
Tue May 17 10:53:16.532 UTC

!
aaa password-policy test-policy
  restrict-consecutive-characters qwerty-keyboard 6
  restrict-consecutive-characters english-alphabet 4 cyclic-wrap
!
```

Verification

You can use the **show aaa password-policy** command to know if the feature to restrict consecutive characters for user passwords and secrets is applied on the password policy.

```
Router#show aaa password-policy test-policy
Tue May 17 10:54:24.064 UTC
Password Policy Name : test-policy
  Number of Users : 0
  Minimum Length : 2
  Maximum Length : 253
  Special Character Len : 0
  Uppercase Character Len : 0
  Lowercase Character Len : 0
  Numeric Character Len : 0
  Policy Life Time :
    seconds : 0
    minutes : 0
    hours : 0
    days : 0
    months : 0
    years : 0
  Warning Interval :
    seconds : 0
    minutes : 0
    hours : 0
    days : 0
    months : 0
    years : 0
  Lockout Time :
    seconds : 0
    minutes : 0
```

```

hours : 0
days : 0
months : 0
years : 0
Restrict Old Time :
days : 0
months : 0
years : 0
Character Change Len : 2
Maximum Failure Attempts : 0
Reference Count : 0
Error Count : 0
Lockout Count Attempts : 0
Maximum char repetition : 0
Restrict Old count : 0
Restrict Username : 0
Restrict Username Reverse : 0
Restrict Password Reverse : 0
Restrict Password Advanced : 0
Restrict Consecutive Character :
English Alphabet characters: 4
English Alphabet Cyclic Wrap: True
Qwerty Keyboard characters: 6
Qwerty Keyboard Cyclic Wrap: False
Router#

```

Password or Secret Configuration Failure Scenarios:

You notice these logs or error messages on the router console when password or secret configuration fails because of the policy violation to restrict consecutive characters or numbers:

```

Router(config)#username user1
Router(config-un)#policy test-policy
Router(config-un)#password DEFg
Router(config-un)#commit
Tue Dec  7 10:17:56.843 UTC

% Failed to commit and rollback one or more configuration items. Please issue 'show
configuration failed [inheritance]' from this session to view the errors
Router(config-un)#show configuration failed
username user1
password 7 03205E0D01
!!% 'LOCALD' detected the 'fatal' condition 'Password contains consecutive characters from
qwerty keyboard or English alphabet'
!
End

Router(config)#username user1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios(config-un)#masked-secret
Fri Dec  3 12:33:44.354 UTC

Enter secret:
Re-enter secret:

secret is not compliant with policy to restrict consecutive letters or numbers
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios(config-un)#

Router(config)#username user1
Router(config-un)#policy test-policy
Router(config-un)#secret qwerty
^

```

```
% Invalid input detected at '^' marker.
Router(config-un)#
```

YANG Data Model to Restrict Consecutive Characters for User Passwords and Secrets

You can use the **Cisco-IOS-XR-aaa-locald-cfg** native YANG data model to restrict consecutive characters for user passwords and secrets. **Cisco-IOS-XR-um-aaa-locald-cfg** is the corresponding unified model (UM). You can access the data models from the [Github](#) repository.

The following is a sample format to enable the feature using the native YANG data model.

```
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <edit-config>
    <target>
    <candidate/>
  </target>
  <config xmlns:xc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <aaa xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-aaa-lib-cfg">
    <password-policies xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-aaa-locald-cfg">
    <password-policy>
      <name>test-policy</name>
      <restrict-consecutive-characters>
        <qwerty-keyboard>
          <characters>4</characters>
        </qwerty-keyboard>
        <cyclic-wrap></cyclic-wrap>
        <english-alphabet>
          <characters>4</characters>
          <cyclic-wrap></cyclic-wrap>
        </english-alphabet>
      </restrict-consecutive-characters>
    </password-policy>
    </password-policies>
  </aaa>
</config>
</edit-config>
</rpc>
##
```

To learn more about the data models and to put them to use, see the *Programmability Configuration Guide for Cisco 8000 Series Routers*.

Configure Router to RADIUS Server Communication

This task configures router to RADIUS server communication. The RADIUS host is normally a multiuser system running RADIUS server software from Cisco (CiscoSecure ACS), Livingston, Merit, Microsoft, or another software provider. Configuring router to RADIUS server communication can have several components:

- Hostname or IP address
- Authentication destination port
- Accounting destination port
- Retransmission value
- Timeout period
- Key string

RADIUS security servers are identified on the basis of their hostname or IP address, hostname and specific User Datagram Protocol (UDP) port numbers, or IP address and specific UDP port numbers. The combination of the IP address and UDP port numbers creates a unique identifier, allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific AAA service. In other words, this unique identifier enables RADIUS requests to be sent to multiple UDP ports on a server at the same IP address. If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service—for example, accounting—the second host entry configured acts as an automatic switchover backup to the first one. Using this example, if the first host entry fails to provide accounting services, the network access server tries the second host entry configured on the same device for accounting services. (The RADIUS host entries are tried in the order they are configured.)

A RADIUS server and a Cisco router use a shared secret text string to encrypt passwords and exchange responses. To configure RADIUS to use the AAA security commands, you must specify the host running the RADIUS server daemon and a secret text (key) string that it shares with the router.

The timeout, retransmission, and encryption key values are configurable globally for all RADIUS servers, on a per-server basis, or in some combination of global and per-server settings. To apply these settings globally to all RADIUS servers communicating with the router, use the three unique global commands: **radius-server timeout**, **radius-server retransmit**, and **radius-server key**. To apply these values on a specific RADIUS server, use the **radius-server host** command.

You can configure a maximum of 30 global RADIUS servers.



Note You can configure both global and per-server timeout, retransmission, and key value commands simultaneously on the same Cisco network access server. If both global and per-server functions are configured on a router, the per-server timer, retransmission, and key value commands override global timer, retransmission, and key value commands.

Procedure

Step 1 configure

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **radius-server host** {hostname | ip-address} [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number] [timeout seconds] [retransmit retries] [key string]

Example:

```
Router(config)# radius-server host host1
```

Specifies the hostname or IP address of the remote RADIUS server host.

- Use the **auth-port** *port-number* option to configure a specific UDP port on this RADIUS server to be used solely for authentication.
- Use the **acct-port** *port-number* option to configure a specific UDP port on this RADIUS server to be used solely for accounting.

- To configure the network access server to recognize more than one host entry associated with a single IP address, simply repeat this command as many times as necessary, making sure that each UDP port number is different. Set the timeout, retransmit, and encryption key values to use with the specific RADIUS host.
- If no timeout is set, the global value is used; otherwise, enter a value in the range 1 to 1000. If no retransmit value is set, the global value is used; otherwise enter a value in the range 1 to 100. If no key string is specified, the global value is used.

Note

The key is a text string that must match the encryption key used on the RADIUS server. Always configure the key as the last item in the **radius-server host** command syntax because the leading spaces are ignored, but spaces within and at the end of the key are used. If you use spaces in your key, do not enclose the key in quotation marks unless the quotation marks themselves are part of the key.

Step 3 **radius-server retransmit** *retries***Example:**

```
Router(config)# radius-server retransmit 5
```

Specifies the number of times the software searches the list of RADIUS server hosts before giving up.

- In the example, the number of retransmission attempts is set to 5.

Step 4 **radius-server timeout** *seconds***Example:**

```
Router(config)# radius-server timeout 10
```

Sets the number of seconds a router waits for a server host to reply before timing out.

- In the example, the interval timer is set to 10 seconds.

Step 5 **radius-server key** {*0 clear-text-key* | *7 encrypted-key* | *clear-text-key*}**Example:**

```
Router(config)# radius-server key 0 samplekey
```

Sets the authentication and encryption key for all RADIUS communications between the router and the RADIUS daemon.

Step 6 **radius source-interface** *type instance* [**vrf** *vrf-id*]**Example:**

```
Router(config)# radius source-interface 0/3/0/1
```

(Optional) Forces RADIUS to use the IP address of a specified interface or subinterface for all outgoing RADIUS packets.

- The specified interface or subinterface must have an IP address associated with it. If the specified interface or subinterface does not have an IP address or is in the down state, then RADIUS reverts to the default. To avoid this, add an IP address to the interface or subinterface or bring the interface to the up state.

The **vrf** keyword enables the specification on a per-VRF basis.

Step 7 Repeat step 2 through step 6 for each external server to be configured.

—

Step 8 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Step 9 show radius

Example:

```
Router# show radius
```

(Optional) Displays information about the RADIUS servers that are configured in the system.

Radius Summary Example

```
radius source-interface Mgm0/rp0/cpu0/0 vrf default
radius-server timeout 10
radius-server retransmit 2
!
! OOB RADIUS
radius-server host 123.100.100.186 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
key cisco123
timeout 10
retransmit 2
!
radius-server host 123.100.100.187 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
key cisco123
timeout 10
retransmit 2
!
aaa group server radius radgrp
server 123.100.100.186 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
server 123.100.100.187 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
!
aaa authorization exec radauthen group radgrp local
aaa authentication login radlogin group radgrp local
!
line template vty
authorization exec radauthen
login authentication radlogin
timestamp disable
exec-timeout 0 0
!
vty-pool default 0 99 line-template vty
```

Configure RADIUS Dead-Server Detection

The RADIUS Dead-Server Detection feature lets you configure and determine the criteria that is used to mark a RADIUS server as dead. If no criteria is explicitly configured, the criteria is computed dynamically on the basis of the number of outstanding transactions. The RADIUS dead-server detection configuration results in

the prompt detection of RADIUS servers that have stopped responding. The prompt detection of nonresponding RADIUS servers and the avoidance of swamped and dead-to-live-to-dead-again servers result in less downtime and quicker packet processing.

You can configure the minimum amount of time, in seconds, that must elapse from the time that the router last received a valid packet from the RADIUS server to the time the server is marked as dead. If a packet has not been received since the router booted, and there is a timeout, the time criterion is treated as though it was met.

In addition, you can configure the number of consecutive timeouts that must occur on the router before the RADIUS server is marked as dead. If the server performs both authentication and accounting, both types of packets are included in the number. Improperly constructed packets are counted as though they are timeouts. Only retransmissions are counted, not the initial transmission. For example, each timeout causes one retransmission to be sent.



Note Both the time criterion and the tries criterion must be met for the server to be marked as dead.

The **radius-server deadtime** command specifies the time, in minutes, for which a server is marked as dead, remains dead, and, after this period, is marked alive even when no responses were received from it. When the dead criteria are configured, the servers are not monitored unless the **radius-server deadtime** command is configured

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **radius-server deadtime** *minutes*

Example:

```
Router(config)# radius-server deadtime 5
```

Improves RADIUS response times when some servers might be unavailable and causes the unavailable servers to be skipped immediately.

Step 3 **radius-server dead-criteria time** *seconds*

Example:

```
Router(config)# radius-server dead-criteria time 5
```

Establishes the time for the dead-criteria conditions for a RADIUS server to be marked as dead.

Step 4 **radius-server dead-criteria tries** *tries*

Example:

```
Router(config)# radius-server dead-criteria tries 4
```

Establishes the number of tries for the dead-criteria conditions for a RADIUS server to be marked as dead.

Step 5 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Step 6 **show radius dead-criteria host** *ip-addr* [**auth-port** *auth-port*] [**acct-port** *acct-port*]

Example:

```
Router# show radius dead-criteria host 172.19.192.80
```

(Optional) Displays dead-server-detection information that has been requested for a RADIUS server at the specified IP address.

Configure Per VRF AAA

The Per VRF AAA functionality enables AAA services to be based on VPN routing and forwarding (VRF) instances. The Provider Edge (PE) or Virtual Home Gateway (VHG) communicates directly with the customer's RADIUS server, which is associated with the customer's VPN, without having to go through a RADIUS proxy. Thus, ISPs can scale their VPN offerings more efficiently, because they no longer have to use RADIUS proxies and they can provide their customers with the flexibility they demand.

New Vendor-Specific Attributes (VSAs)

The Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) draft standard specifies a method for communicating vendor-specific information between the network access server and the RADIUS server by using the vendor-specific attribute (attribute 26). Attribute 26 encapsulates vendor-specific attributes, thereby, allowing vendors to support their own extended attributes otherwise not suitable for general use.

The Cisco IOS XR software RADIUS implementation supports one vendor-specific option using the format recommended in the specification. Cisco's vendor-ID is 9, and the supported option has vendor-type 1, which is named “cisco-avpair ” The value is a string of the following format:

```
protocol : attribute sep value *
```

“Protocol” is a value of the Cisco “protocol ” attribute for a particular type of authorization. “Attribute” and “value” are an appropriate attribute-value (AV) pair defined in the Cisco RADIUS specification, and “sep” is “=” for mandatory attributes and “*” for optional attributes.

This table describes the VSAs that are now supported for Per VRF AAA.

Table 13: Supported VSAs for Per VRF AAA

VSA Name	Value Type	Description
<p>Note The RADIUS VSAs—rad-serv, rad-serv-source-if, and rad-serv-vrf—must have the prefix “aaa.” before the VSA name.</p>		
rad-serv	string	<p>Indicates the IP address in IPv4 or IPv6 format, key, timeout, and retransmit number of a server and the group of the server.</p> <p>The VSA syntax follows:</p> <pre>rad-serv=a.b.c.d [key SomeKey] [auth-port X] [acct-port Y] [retransmit V] [timeout W].</pre> <p>Other than the IP address, all parameters are optional and are issued in any order. If the optional parameters are not specified, their default values are used.</p> <p>The key cannot contain any spaces; for “retransmit V,” “V” can range from 1 to 100; for “timeout W,” the “W” can range from 1 to 1000.</p>
rad-serv-vrf	string	<p>Specifies the name of the VRF that is used to transmit RADIUS packets. The VRF name matches the name that was specified through the vrf command.</p>

This task configures RADIUS server groups per VRF. For information about configuring TACACS+ server groups per VRF, refer [Configure TACACS+ Server Groups, on page 110](#).

Procedure

Step 1 configure

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 aaa group server radius group-name

Example:

```
Router(config)# aaa group server radius radgroup1
Router(config-sg-radius)#
```

Groups different server hosts into distinct lists and enters the server group configuration mode.

Step 3 server-private {hostname | ip-address in IPv4 or IPv6 format} [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number] [timeout seconds] [retransmit retries] [key string]

Example:

IP address in IPv4 format

```
Router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 10.1.1.1 timeout 5
Router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 10.2.2.2 retransmit 3
```

Example:

IP address in IPv6 format

```
Router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::1/64 timeout 5
Router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 10.2.2.2 retransmit 3
```

Configures the IP address of the private RADIUS server for the group.

If private server parameters are not specified, global configurations are used. If global configurations are not specified, default values are used.

Both **auth-port** and **acct-port** keywords enter RADIUS server-group private configuration mode.

You can configure a maximum of 30 private servers per RADIUS server group.

Step 4 **vrf** *vrf-name*

Example:

```
Router(config-sg-radius)# vrf v2.44.com
```

Configures the VRF reference of an AAA RADIUS server group.

Note

Private server IP addresses can overlap with those configured globally and the VRF definitions can help to distinguish them.

Step 5 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Configure TACACS+ Server

This task configures a TACACS+ server.

Table 14: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	
TACACS+ Server	Release 25.4.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8011-12G12X4Y-A • 8011-12G12X4Y-D

The port, if not specified, defaults to the standard port number, 49. The **timeout** and **key** parameters can be specified globally for all TACACS+ servers. The **timeout** parameter specifies how long the AAA server waits to receive a response from the TACACS+ server. The **key** parameter specifies an authentication and encryption key shared between the AAA server and the TACACS+ server.

The **single-connection** parameter specifies to multiplex all TACACS+ requests to the TACACS+ server over a single TCP connection. The **single-connection-idle-timeout** parameter specifies the timeout value for this single connection.

You can configure a maximum of 30 global TACACS+ servers.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **tacacs-server host *host-name* port *port-number***

Example:

```
Router(config)# tacacs-server host 209.165.200.226 port 51
Router(config-tacacs-host)#
```

Specifies a TACACS+ host server and optionally specifies a server port number.

- This option overrides the default, port 49. Valid port numbers range from 1 to 65535.

Step 3 **tacacs-server host *host-name* timeout *seconds***

Example:

```
Router(config-tacacs-host)# tacacs-server host 209.165.200.226 timeout 30
```

Specifies a TACACS+ host server and optionally specifies a timeout value that sets the length of time the AAA server waits to receive a response from the TACACS+ server.

- This option overrides the global timeout value set with the **tacacs-server timeout** command for only this server. The timeout value is expressed as an integer in terms of timeout interval seconds. The range is from 1 to 1000.

Step 4 **tacacs-server host** *host-name* **key** [0 | 7] *auth-key*

Example:

```
Router(config)# tacacs-server host 209.165.200.226 key 0 a_secret
```

Specifies a TACACS+ host server and optionally specifies an authentication and encryption key shared between the AAA server and the TACACS+ server.

- The TACACS+ packets are encrypted using this key. This key must match the key used by TACACS+ daemon. Specifying this key overrides the global key set by the **tacacs-server key** command for only this server.
- (Optional) Entering **0** indicates that an unencrypted (clear-text) key follows.
- (Optional) Entering **7** indicates that an encrypted key follows.
- The *auth-key* argument specifies the encrypted or unencrypted key to be shared between the AAA server and the TACACS+ server.

Step 5 **tacacs-server host** *host-name* **single-connection**

Example:

```
Router(config)# tacacs-server host 209.165.200.226 single-connection
```

Prompts the router to multiplex all TACACS+ requests to this server over a single TCP connection. By default, a separate connection is used for each session.

Step 6 **tacacs-server host** *host-name* **single-connection-idle-timeout** *timeout-in-seconds*

Example:

```
RP/0/0RP0RSP0/CPU0:router:hostname(config)# tacacs-server host 209.165.200.226
single-connection-idle-timeout 60
```

Sets the timeout value, in seconds, for the single TCP connection (that is created by configuring the **single-connection** command) to the TACACS+ server.

The range is:

- 500 to 7200 (prior to Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.3.2)
- 5 to 7200 (from Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.3.2, and later)

Step 7 **tacacs source-interface** *type instance*

Example:

```
Router(config)# tacacs source-interface GigabitEthernet 0/4/0/0 vrf abc
```

(Optional) Specifies the source IP address of a selected interface for all outgoing TACACS+ packets.

- The specified interface or subinterface must have an IP address associated with it. If the specified interface or subinterface does not have an IP address or is in the down state, then TACACS+ reverts to the default interface. To avoid this, add an IP address to the interface or subinterface or bring the interface to the up state.
- The **vrf** option specifies the Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of an AAA TACACS+ server group.

Step 8 Repeat step 2 through step 6 for each external server to be configured.

—

Step 9 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit—Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end—Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel**—Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Step 10 **show tacacs**

Example:

```
Router# show tacacs
```

(Optional) Displays information about the TACACS+ servers that are configured in the system.

Tacacs Summary Example:

```
! OOB TAC
tacacs-server host 123.100.100.186 port 49
key lm51
!
tacacs-server host 123.100.100.187 port 49
key lm51
!
aaa group server tacacs+ tacgrp
server 123.100.100.186
server 123.100.100.187
!
aaa group server tacacs+ eem
server 123.100.100.186
server 123.100.100.187
!
aaa authorization exec tacauthen group tacgrp local
aaa authentication login taclogin group tacgrp local
!
line console
authorization exec tacauthen
login authentication taclogin
timeout login response 30
timestamp
exec-timeout 0 0
session-timeout 15
!
vty-pool default 0 99 line-template console
```

Configure Authorization for a TACACS+ Server

This task helps you configure authorization commands are used to verify that an authenticated user (or principal) is granted permission to perform a specific task.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure****Example:**

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **aaa authorization command group tacacs|none****Example:**

```
Router(config)# aaa authorization command group tacacs
```

Configure the AAA system to perform remote authorization using TACACS+ protocol.

Example:

```
Router(config)# aaa authorization command group none
```

Configure the AAA system to not perform any authorization.

Example:

```
Router(config)# aaa authorization command group tacacs none
```

Configure the AAA system to first perform TACACS+ authorization and if it fails, no authorization should be performed.

Step 3 **confdConfig aaa authorization enabled****Example:**

```
Router(config)# confdConfig aaa authorization enabled
```

Configure ConfD to perform remote authorization.

Step 4 **confdConfig aaa authorization callback enabled****Example:**

```
Router(config)# confdConfig aaa authorization callback enabled
```

Configure ConfD to invoke application callbacks for authorization.

Step 5 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.

- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Configure Authentication for a TACACS+ Server

This task describes how to configure authentication commands to verify the identity of a user or principal TACACS+server.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **confdConfig aaa externalAuthentication enabled**

Example:

```
Router(config)# confdConfig aaa externalAuthentication enabled
```

Configure ConfD to perform external authentication.

Step 3 **confdConfig aaa authOrder localAuthentication|externalAuthentication**

Example:

```
Router(config)# confdConfig aaa authOrder externalAuthentication localAuthentication
```

Configure the AAA subsystem to perform external authentication first and then local authentication.

Step 4 **confdConfig aaa externalAuthentication executable"chvrf 0 /opt/cisco/calvados/bin/calvados_login_aaa_proxy"**

Example:

```
Router(config)# confdConfig aaa externalAuthentication executable chvrf 0  
/opt/cisco/calvados/bin/calvados_login_aaa_proxy
```

Configure the AAA system to perform external authentication using login executable configured on local host.

Step 5 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
 - **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
 - **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.
-

Configure Accounting for a TACACS+ Server

This task describes how to configure accounting commands that are used for logging of sessions and to create an audit trail by recording certain user- or system-generated actions.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure****Example:**

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **aaa accounting command tacacs****Example:**

```
Router(config)# aaa accounting command tacacs
```

Configure remote accounting commands.

Step 3 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
 - **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
 - **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.
-

Configure RADIUS Server Groups

This task configures RADIUS server groups.

The user can enter one or more **server** commands. The **server** command specifies the hostname or IP address of an external RADIUS server along with port numbers. When configured, this server group can be referenced from the AAA method lists (used while configuring authentication, authorization, or accounting).

You can configure a maximum of:

- 30 servers per RADIUS server group
- 30 private servers per RADIUS server group

Before you begin

For configuration to succeed, the external server should be accessible at the time of configuration.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **aaa group server radius *group-name***

Example:

```
Router(config)# aaa group server radius radgroup1
```

Groups different server hosts into distinct lists and enters the server group configuration mode.

Step 3 **server {*hostname* | *ip-address*} [**auth-port** *port-number*] [**acct-port** *port-number*]**

Example:

```
Router(config-sg-radius)# server 192.168.20.0
```

Specifies the hostname or IP address of an external RADIUS server.

- After the server group is configured, it can be referenced from the AAA method lists (used while configuring authentication, authorization, or accounting).

Step 4 Repeat step 4 for every external server to be added to the server group named in step 3.

—

Step 5 **deadtime *minutes***

Example:

```
Router(config-sg-radius)# deadtime 1
```

Configures the deadtime value at the RADIUS server group level.

- The *minutes* argument specifies the length of time, in minutes, for which a RADIUS server is skipped over by transaction requests, up to a maximum of 1440 (24 hours). The range is from 1 to 1440.

The example specifies a one-minute deadtime for RADIUS server group radgroup1 when it has failed to respond to authentication requests for the **deadtime** command

Note

You can configure the group-level deadtime after the group is created.

Step 6 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Step 7 `show radius server-groups [group-name [detail]]`

Example:

```
Router# show radius server-groups
```

(Optional) Displays information about each RADIUS server group that is configured in the system.

What to do next

After configuring RADIUS server groups, define method lists by configuring authentication, authorization, and accounting.

Configure TACACS+ Server Groups

This task configures TACACS+ server groups.

You can enter one or more **server** commands. The **server** command specifies the hostname or IP address of an external TACACS+ server. Once configured, this server group can be referenced from the AAA method lists (used while configuring authentication, authorization, or accounting).

You can configure a maximum of :

- 10 TACACS+ servers per server group
- 10 private TACACS+ servers

Before you begin

For successful configuration, the external server should be accessible at the time of configuration. When configuring the same IP address for global and vrf configuration, server-private parameters are required.

Procedure

Step 1 `configure`

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 `aaa group server tacacs+ group-name`

Example:

```
Router(config)# aaa group server tacacs+ tacgroup1
```

Groups different server hosts into distinct lists and enters the server group configuration mode.

Step 3 `server {hostname | ip-address}`

Example:

```
Router(config-sg-tacacs)# server 192.168.100.0
```

Specifies the hostname or IP address of an external TACACS+ server.

- When configured, this group can be referenced from the AAA method lists (used while configuring authentication, authorization, or accounting).

Step 4 (Optional) **vrf** *vrf-id*

Example:

```
Router(config-sg-tacacs+)# vrf vrf-id
```

The **vrf** option specifies the Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of an AAA TACACS+ server group.

Step 5 Repeat step 3 for every external server to be added to the server group named in step 2.

—

Step 6 (Optional) **vrf** *vrf-id*

The **vrf** option specifies the Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of an AAA TACACS+ server group.

Step 7 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Step 8 **show tacacs server-groups**

Example:

```
Router# show tacacs server-groups
```

(Optional) Displays information about each TACACS+ server group that is configured in the system.

Configure Per VRF TACACS+ Server Groups

The Cisco IOS XR software supports per VRF AAA to be configured on TACACS+ server groups. You must use the **server-private** and **vrf** commands as listed below to configure this feature.

The global server definitions can be referred from multiple server groups, but all references use the same server instance and connect to the same server. In case of VRF, you do not need the global configuration because the server status, server statistics and the key could be different for different VRFs. Therefore, you must use the **server-private** configuration if you want to configure per VRF TACACS+ server groups. If you have the same server used in different groups with different VRFs, ensure that it is reachable through all those VRFs.

If you are migrating the servers to a VRF, then it is safe to remove the global server configuration with respect to that server.

Prerequisites

You must ensure these before configuring per VRF on TACACS+ server groups:

- Be familiar with configuring TACACS+, AAA, per VRF AAA, and group servers.
- Ensure that you have access to the TACACS+ server.
- Configure the VRF instance before configuring the specific VRF for a TACACS+ server and ensure that the VRF is reachable.

Configuration Example

```
Router#configure

/* Groups different server hosts into distinct lists and enters the server group configuration
mode.
You can enter one or more server commands. The server command specifies the hostname or IP
address of an external TACACS+ server.
Once configured, this server group can be referenced from the AAA method lists (used while
configuring authentication, authorization, or accounting). */

Router(config)# aaa group server tacacs+ tacgroup1

/* Configures the IP address and the secret key of the private TACACS+ server that is
reachable through specific VRF.
You can have multiple such server configurations which are reachable through the same VRF.*/

Router(config-sg-tacacs+)# server-private 10.1.1.1 port 49 key a_secret

/* The vrf option specifies the VRF reference of a AAA TACACS+ server group */
Router(config-sg-tacacs+)# vrf test-vrf
Router(config-sg-tacacs+)# commit
```

Running Configuration

```
aaa group server tacacs+ tacgroup1
vrf test-vrf
server-private 10.1.1.1 port 49
key 7 0822455D0A16
!
server-private 10.1.1.2 port 49
key 7 05080F1C2243
!
server-private 2001:db8:1::1 port 49
key 7 045802150C2E
!
server-private 2001:db8:1::2 port 49
key 7 13061E010803
!
!
```

Verify Per VRF TACACS+ Server Groups

```
Router#show tacacs
Fri Sep 27 11:14:34.991 UTC

Server: 10.1.1.1/49 vrf=test-vrf [private]
opens=0 closes=0 aborts=0 errors=0
```

```

        packets in=0 packets out=0
        status=up single-connect=false family=IPv4

Server: 10.1.1.2/49 vrf=test-vrf [private]
        opens=0 closes=0 aborts=0 errors=0
        packets in=0 packets out=0
        status=up single-connect=false family=IPv4

Server: 2001:db8:1::1/49 vrf=test-vrf [private]
        opens=0 closes=0 aborts=0 errors=0
        packets in=0 packets out=0
        status=up single-connect=false family=IPv6

Server: 2001:db8:1::2/49 vrf=test-vrf [private]
        opens=0 closes=0 aborts=0 errors=0
        packets in=0 packets out=0
        status=up single-connect=false family=IPv6

```

Associated Commands

- `server-private`
- `vrf`

View TACACS+ information in Router

Table 15: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
View TACACS+ information in Router	Release 7.5.4	<p>With this feature, you can view TCP connection statistics like failures, timeout, and disconnect in connections, number of AAA packets received from an external server or sent to an external server, and so on during TACACS+ transactions. This information helps you monitor TACACS+ health in the routers. It is also helpful in identifying and debugging TACACS+ transaction failures if any.</p> <p>This feature introduces the following commands:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • show tacacs counters • show tacacs details • show tacacs source-interface • clear tacacs counters

You can see the record of the number of requests, timeouts, failures, errors, and success for each TACACS+ server for all the AAA services using the following:

```
Router:ios# show tacacs counters

TACACS+ Server: 10.105.236.101/4010 [global]

Authentication:
  10 requests, 4 accepts, 3 failure, 2 error, 1 timeout

Exec Authorization:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 denied, 0 error, 0 timeout

Command Authorization:
  6 requests, 6 accepts, 0 denied, 0 error, 0 timeout

Exec Accounting:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 fail, 0 error, 0 timeout

Command Accounting:
  6 requests, 6 accepts, 0 fail, 0 error, 0 timeout

TACACS+ Server: 10.105.236.101/2201 [private] vrf = default

Authentication:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 failure, 0 error, 0 timeout

Exec Authorization:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 denied, 0 error, 0 timeout

Command Authorization:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 denied, 0 error, 0 timeout

Exec Accounting:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 fail, 0 error, 0 timeout

Command Accounting:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 fail, 0 error, 0 timeout
```

You can view the complete TACACS+ statistics including server group, source-interface, individual server statistics, inpacket, outpacket, connection open and connection close counters, and TCP connection related counters using the following:

```
Router:ios# show tacacs details

TACACS+ Server                               : 10.105.236.101/4010
[Global]
  Family                                     : IPv4
  Timeout(in secs)                           : 3
  Connection Opens                            : 8
  Connection Closes                           : 8
  Requests sent                               : 6
  Response received                           : 6
  Packets Abort                               : 2
  Server State                                : Down
  Server On-Hold                              : True
  Tacacs-Single-Connect                       : False
  Tacacs-Single-Connect-Idle-Timeout(in secs) : 0
  Last Connection Attempted                   : 08:32:43 UTC Tue Aug
02 2022

TACACS+ Server                               : 10.105.236.101/8010
[Private] vrf=default
```

```

Family : IPv4
Timeout(in secs) : 3
Connection Opens : 8
Connection Closes : 7
Requests sent : 7
Response received : 7
Packets Abort : 0
Server State : Up
Server On-Hold : False
Tacacs-Single-Connect : False
Tacacs-Single-Connect-Idle-Timeout(in secs) : 0
Last Connection Attempted : 08:32:52 UTC Tue Aug
02 2022

```

TACACS+ Server-groups:

```

Global list of servers
  Server 10.105.236.101/4010 family=IPv4
Server group 'tacl' has 1 servers
  Servers in this group are under 'default' vrf
  Server 10.105.236.101/8010 [private] family=IPv4

```

TACACS+ Source-Interface:

Interface	VRF Id	IPv4-Address
GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0	0x60000001	0.0.0.0
MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0	0x60000000	192.168.122.222

Interface	VRF Id	IPv6-Address
GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0	0x60000001	::
MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0	0x60000000	::

You can view the TACACS+ source interface details using the following:

Router:ios# **show tacacs source-interfaces**

Interface	VRF Id
IPv4-Address	
MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0	0x60000000
192.168.122.222	

Interface	VRF Id
IPv6-Address	
MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0	0x60000000
::	

You can clear all AAA services counters in **show tacacs counters** command for all TACACS+ servers using the **clear tacacs counters** command:

Router:ios# **show tacacs counters**

```

TACACS+ Server: 10.105.236.101/4010 [global]

Authentication:
  10 requests, 4 accepts, 3 failure, 2 error, 1 timeout

Exec Authorization:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 denied, 0 error, 0 timeout

Command Authorization:
  6 requests, 6 accepts, 0 denied, 0 error, 0 timeout

```

```
Exec Accounting:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 fail, 0 error, 0 timeout

Command Accounting:
  6 requests, 6 accepts, 0 fail, 0 error, 0 timeout

TACACS+ Server:  10.105.236.101/2201 [private] vrf = default

Authentication:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 failure, 0 error, 0 timeout

Exec Authorization:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 denied, 0 error, 0 timeout

Command Authorization:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 denied, 0 error, 0 timeout

Exec Accounting:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 fail, 0 error, 0 timeout

Command Accounting:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 fail, 0 error, 0 timeout

Router:ios# clear tacacs counters
Router:ios# show tacacs counters

TACACS+ Server:  10.105.236.101/4010 [global]

Authentication:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 failure, 0 error, 0 timeout

Exec Authorization:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 denied, 0 error, 0 timeout

Command Authorization:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 denied, 0 error, 0 timeout

Exec Accounting:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 fail, 0 error, 0 timeout

Command Accounting:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 fail, 0 error, 0 timeout

TACACS+ Server:  10.105.236.101/2201 [private] vrf = default

Authentication:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 failure, 0 error, 0 timeout

Exec Authorization:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 denied, 0 error, 0 timeout

Command Authorization:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 denied, 0 error, 0 timeout

Exec Accounting:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 fail, 0 error, 0 timeout

Command Accounting:
  0 requests, 0 accepts, 0 fail, 0 error, 0 timeout
```

TACACS+ with TLS protection

The TACACS+ with TLS protection is a security enhancement to the TACACS+ protocol that

- uses Transport Layer Security (TLS) to encrypt authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) communication between network devices and TACACS+ servers,
- provides confidentiality and integrity for sensitive data transmitted over potentially insecure networks, and
- supports mutual authentication to safeguard against unauthorized access.

Table 16: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
TACACS+ with TLS protection	Release 25.3.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100, K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100]); Centralized Systems (8600 [ASIC: Q200]); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100])</p> <p>You can significantly enhance security and reduce the risk of attacks on weak encryption by using TACACS+ over TLS. This method ensures the secure transmission of all Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) data between the client and server. It provides robust protection for sensitive environments by supporting mutual authentication through a TLS X.509 certificate-based infrastructure. This feature is compatible with both TLS versions 1.3 and 1.2.</p>

Benefits of TACACS+ with TLS protection

- Enhances security by encrypting TACACS+ communications.
- Protects AAA data with robust encryption.
- Supports mutual authentication between client and server.
- Complies with TLS 1.3 and 1.2 standards.

TACACS+ with TLS protection improves the security of AAA services by using TLS for encrypted communication. It addresses vulnerabilities associated with weak encryption and is designed for sensitive environments that require strong protection for AAA data.

How TACACS+ with TLS protection work

Summary

TACACS+ with TLS protection secures AAA communications between a network device and a TACACS+ server by carrying TACACS+ packets within an encrypted TLS session that is established when a user initiates SSH access.

The key components involved in the process are:

- End user: Initiates an SSH session to access the network device.

- Router as TACACS+ TLS client: The router receives the AAA service request and initiates a TLS session to the TACACS+ server.
- TACACS+ server: The server uses valid TLS configuration, terminates the TLS session, and processes AAA requests and responses.
- TLS session: Encrypts the TACACS+ traffic between the client and server.
- TACACS+ packets: Carry authentication, authorization, and accounting information over the TLS tunnel.

Workflow

These are the stages of how TACACS+ with TLS protection works:

1. Session initiation: The end user initiates an SSH session to the network device.
2. AAA request: The router receives the user's AAA service request for TACACS+ with TLS protection.
3. TLS establishment: If the TACACS+ server is configured with valid TLS settings, the TACACS+ TLS client and server establish a TLS session.
4. Secure exchange: The client and server exchange TACACS+ packets over the TLS-encrypted session.

Result

The process establishes an encrypted channel for TACACS+ traffic, securing AAA communications during SSH access.

Guidelines for TACACS+ with TLS protection

Follow these guidelines when configuring TACACS+ with TLS protection:

- Configure the destination port for TACACS+ with TLS protection. There are no dedicated ports for authentication, accounting, or authorization changes.
- Use TLS X.509 certificate-based mutual authentication between client and server.
- Ensure you use either TLS 1.3 (as mandated by RFC 8446) or TLS 1.2, which is also supported.
- Use either multi-connect or single connect without TLS resumption as needed.
- Ensure your implementation supports the cipher suites mandated by TLS 1.3 and TLS 1.2.
- Use IPv4 or IPv6 for TACACS+ transactions as appropriate.
- Use the source interface and non-default Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF) as required.
- Configure the connection timer and single-connect idle timeout as appropriate—these settings work the same as for TACACS+ over TCP.

Restrictions for TACACS+ with TLS protection

These restrictions apply when configuring TACACS+ with TLS protection:

- The TACACS+ encryption method supported in Cisco IOS-XR software releases before 25.3.1 is no longer supported.
- The router does not support using both non-TLS and TLS servers in the same server group.

- The router does not support TLS session resumption or TLS sessions with PSK cipher suites.

Configure TACACS+ with TLS protection

Configure TACACS+ to use Transport Layer Security (TLS) for secure communication, enhancing the confidentiality and integrity of authentication, authorization, and accounting traffic.

This task describes how to enable TLS for TACACS+ server communication. You can enable TLS directly for a TACACS+ host or within an AAA server group. With TLS enabled, data exchanged between the network device and the TACACS+ server is encrypted.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **tls** to enable TACACS+ with TLS protection.

a) Tacacs-server host configuration:

Example:

```
Router(config)# tacacs-server host 10.105.236.101 port 4950
Router(config-tacacs-host)# tls
Router(config-tacacs-host-tls)# server-name-indicator aaa.cisco.com
Router(config-tacacs-host-tls)# trustpoint test
Router(config-tacacs-host-tls)# commit
```

b) Server-group configuration:

Example:

```
Router(config)# configure
Router(config)# aaa group server tacacs+ tac1
Router(config-sg-tacacs)# server-private 10.105.236.101 port 2345
Router(config-sg-tacacs-private)# tls
Router(config-sg-tacacs-private-tls)# server-name-indicator aaa.cisco.com
Router(config-sg-tacacs-private-tls)# trustpoint abc
Router(config-sg-tacacs-private-tls)# commit
```

Step 2 Run the **show tacacs** command to display the TACACS information.

Example:

```
Router# show tacacs
Info: Verify that TACACS+ with TLS protection is configured.

Server: 10.105.236.101/2084
.....
FIPS mode : TRUE/FALSE.
TLS:
  Version: TLS 1.3/1.2 // only for active connection
  Cipher: TLS_AES_128_GCM_SHA256 // only for active connection
Statistics:
  Successfull connections: 0
  Failed connections      : 0
  SSL errors :
  Connect error:
  Read error:
  Write error:
  Handshake Failure:
  Protocol Mismatch :
  Certificate Validation Error:
```

```

Cipher Suite Mismatch:
Session Timeout:
Revoked Certificate:
Unsupported TLS Version:
Untrusted CA:

```

TACACS+ communication with the specified server is now secured using TLS, encrypting authentication, authorization, and accounting traffic.

Configure AAA Method Lists

AAA data may be stored in a variety of data sources. AAA configuration uses *method lists* to define an order of preference for the source of AAA data. AAA may define more than one method list and applications (such as login) can choose one of them. For example, console ports may use one method list and the vty ports may use another. If a method list is not specified, the application tries to use a default method list.

This section contains the following procedures:

Configuring Authentication Method Lists

This task configures method lists for authentication.

Authentication Configuration

Authentication is the process by which a user (or a principal) is verified. Authentication configuration uses *method lists* to define an order of preference for the source of AAA data, which may be stored in a variety of data sources. You can configure authentication to define more than one method list and applications (such as login) can choose one of them. For example, console ports may use one method list and the vty ports may use another. If a method list is not specified, the application tries to use a default method list.



Note Applications should explicitly refer to defined method lists for the method lists to be effective.

The authentication can be applied to tty lines through use of the **login authentication** line configuration submode command.

Create Series of Authentication Methods

Authentication is the process by which a user (or a principal) is verified. Authentication configuration uses *method lists* to define an order of preference for the source of AAA data, which may be stored in a variety of data sources. You can configure authentication to define more than one method list and applications (such as login) can choose one of them. For example, console ports may use one method list and the vty ports may use another. If a method list is not specified, the application tries to use a default method list.



Note Applications should explicitly refer to defined method lists for the method lists to be effective.

The authentication can be applied to tty lines through use of the **login authentication** line configuration submode command. If the method is RADIUS or TACACS+ servers, rather than server group, the RADIUS or TACACS+ server is chosen from the global pool of configured RADIUS and TACACS+ servers, in the

order of configuration. Servers from this global pool are the servers that can be selectively added to a server group.

The subsequent methods of authentication are used only if the initial method returns an error, not if the request is rejected.

Before you begin



Note The default method list is applied for all the interfaces for authentication, except when a non-default named method list is explicitly configured, in which case the named method list is applied.

The **group radius**, **group tacacs+**, and **group group-name** forms of the **aaa authentication** command refer to a set of previously defined RADIUS or TACACS+ servers. Use the **radius server-host** or **tacacs-server host** command to configure the host servers. Use the **aaa group server radius** or **aaa group server tacacs+** command to create a named group of servers.

Procedure

Step 1 configure

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 aaa authentication {login} {default | list-name} method-list

Example:

```
Router(config)# aaa authentication login default group tacacs+
```

Creates a series of authentication methods, or a method list.

- Using the **login** keyword sets authentication for login. Using the **ppp** keyword sets authentication for Point-to-Point Protocol.
- Entering the **default** keyword causes the listed authentication methods that follow this keyword to be the default list of methods for authentication.
- Entering a *list-name* character string identifies the authentication method list.
- Entering a *method-list* argument following the method list type. Method list types are entered in the preferred sequence. The listed method types are any one of the following options:
 - **group tacacs+**—Use a server group or TACACS+ servers for authentication
 - **group radius**—Use a server group or RADIUS servers for authentication
 - **group named-group**—Use a named subset of TACACS+ or RADIUS servers for authentication
 - **local**—Use a local username or password database for authentication
 - **line**—Use line password or user group for authentication

- The example specifies the **default** method list to be used for authentication.

Step 3 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Step 4 Repeat Step 1 through Step 3 for every authentication method list to be configured.

Configuring Authorization Method Lists

This task configures method lists for authorization.



Note You can configure the **radius** keyword for the **aaa authorization** command.

Authorization Configuration

Method lists for authorization define the ways authorization will be performed and the sequence in which these methods will be performed. A method list is a named list describing the authorization methods to be used (such as TACACS+), in sequence. Method lists enable you to designate one or more security protocols to be used for authorization, thus ensuring a backup system if the initial method fails. The software uses the first method listed to authorize users for specific network services; if that method fails to respond, the software selects the next method listed in the method list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed authorization method, or until all methods defined have been exhausted.



Note The software attempts authorization with the next listed method only when there is no response or an error response (not a failure) from the previous method. If authorization fails at any point in this cycle—meaning that the security server or local username database responds by denying the user services—the authorization process stops and no other authorization methods are attempted.

Method lists are specific to the type of authorization being requested. Four types of AAA authorization are supported:

- **Commands authorization**—Applies to the XR EXEC mode mode commands a user issues. Command authorization attempts authorization for all XR EXEC mode mode commands.



Note “Command” authorization is distinct from “task-based” authorization, which is based on the task profile established during authentication.

- **XR EXEC mode authorization**—Applies authorization for starting XR EXEC mode session.
- **Network authorization**—Applies authorization for network services, such as IKE.
- **Eventmanager authorization**—Applies an authorization method for authorizing an event manager (fault manager). RADIUS servers are not allowed to be configured for the event manager (fault manager) authorization. You are allowed to use TACACS+ or locald.

When you create a named method list, you are defining a particular list of authorization methods for the indicated authorization type. When defined, method lists must be applied to specific lines or interfaces before any of the defined methods are performed. Do not use the names of methods, such as TACACS+, when creating a new method list.

“Command” authorization, as a result of adding a command authorization method list to a line template, is separate from, and is in addition to, “task-based” authorization, which is performed automatically on the router. The default behavior for command authorization is none. Even if a default method list is configured, that method list has to be added to a line template for it to be used.

The **aaa authorization** command causes a request packet containing a series of attribute value (AV) pairs to be sent to the TACACS+ daemon as part of the authorization process. The daemon can do one of the following:

- Accept the request as is.
- Refuse authorization.



Note To avoid lockouts in user authorization, make sure to allow local fallback (by configuring the **local** option for **aaa authorization** command) when configuring AAA. For example, **aaa authorization commands default tacacs+ local**.

Create Series of Authorization Methods

Method lists for authorization define the ways authorization will be performed and the sequence in which these methods will be performed. A method list is a named list describing the authorization methods to be used (such as TACACS+), in sequence. Method lists enable you to designate one or more security protocols to be used for authorization, thus ensuring a backup system if the initial method fails. The software uses the first method listed to authorize users for specific network services; if that method fails to respond, the software selects the next method listed in the method list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed authorization method, or until all methods defined have been exhausted.



Note The software attempts authorization with the next listed method only when there is no response or an error response (not a failure) from the previous method. If authorization fails at any point in this cycle—meaning that the security server or local username database responds by denying the user services—the authorization process stops and no other authorization methods are attempted.

When you create a named method list, you are defining a particular list of authorization methods for the indicated authorization type. When defined, method lists must be applied to specific lines or interfaces before any of the defined methods are performed. Do not use the names of methods, such as TACACS+, when creating a new method list.

“Command” authorization, as a result of adding a command authorization method list to a line template, is separate from, and is in addition to, “task-based” authorization, which is performed automatically on the router. The default behavior for command authorization is none. Even if a default method list is configured, that method list has to be added to a line template for it to be used.

The **aaa authorization commands** command causes a request packet containing a series of attribute value (AV) pairs to be sent to the TACACS+ daemon as part of the authorization process. The daemon can do one of the following:

- Accept the request as is.
- Refuse authorization.

Use the **aaa authorization** command to set parameters for authorization and to create named method lists defining specific authorization methods that can be used for each line or interface.



Note If you have configured AAA authorization to be subjected to TACACS+ authorization, then you must ensure that the server group is configured (use the **aaa group server tacacs+** command for this) for that TACACS+ server. Else, authorization fails.

For example,

```
aaa authorization exec default group test_tacacs+ local
aaa authorization commands default group test_tacacs+
aaa group server tacacs+ test_tacacs+ <===
```

Procedure

Step 1 configure

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **aaa authorization** {**commands** | **eventmanager** | **exec** | **network**} {**default** | *list-name*} {**none** | **local** | **group** {**tacacs+** | **radius** | *group-name*}}

Example:

```
Router(config)# aaa authorization commands listname1 group tacacs+
```

Creates a series of authorization methods, or a method list.

- The **commands** keyword configures authorization for all XR EXEC mode shell commands. Command authorization applies to the EXEC mode commands issued by a user. Command authorization attempts authorization for all XR EXEC mode commands.
- The **eventmanager** keyword applies an authorization method for authorizing an event manager (fault manager).
- The **exec** keyword configures authorization for an interactive (XR EXEC mode) session.

- The **network** keyword configures authorization for network services like PPP or IKE.
- The **default** keyword causes the listed authorization methods that follow this keyword to be the default list of methods for authorization.
- A *list-name* character string identifies the authorization method list. The method list itself follows the method list name. Method list types are entered in the preferred sequence. The listed method list types can be any one of the following:
 - **none**—The network access server (NAS) does not request authorization information. Authorization always succeeds. No subsequent authorization methods will be attempted. However, the task ID authorization is always required and cannot be disabled.
 - **local**—Uses local database for authorization.
 - **group tacacs+**—Uses the list of all configured TACACS+ servers for authorization. The NAS exchanges authorization information with the TACACS+ security daemon. TACACS+ authorization defines specific rights for users by associating AV pairs, which are stored in a database on the TACACS+ security server, with the appropriate user.
 - **group radius**—Uses the list of all configured RADIUS servers for authorization.
 - **group group-name**—Uses a named server group, a subset of TACACS+ or RADIUS servers for authorization as defined by the **aaa group server tacacs+** or **aaa group server radius** command.

Step 3 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Configuring Accounting Method Lists

This task configures method lists for accounting.



Note You can configure the **radius** keyword for the **aaa accounting** command.

Accounting Configuration

Currently, Cisco IOS XR software supports both the TACACS+ and RADIUS methods for accounting. The router reports user activity to the TACACS+ or RADIUS security server in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record contains accounting AV pairs and is stored on the security server.

Method lists for accounting define the way accounting is performed, enabling you to designate a particular security protocol to be used on specific lines or interfaces for particular types of accounting services. When naming a method list, do not use the names of methods, such as TACACS+.

For minimal accounting, include the **stop-only** keyword to send a “stop accounting” notice at the end of the requested user process. For more accounting, you can include the **start-stop** keyword, so that the external AAA server sends a “start accounting” notice at the beginning of the requested process and a “stop accounting” notice at the end of the process. In addition, you can use the **aaa accounting update** command to periodically send update records with accumulated information. Accounting records are stored only on the TACACS+ or RADIUS server.

When AAA accounting is activated, the router reports these attributes as accounting records, which are then stored in an accounting log on the security server.

Create Series of Accounting Methods

Use the **aaa accounting** command to create default or named method lists defining specific accounting methods that can be used for each line or interface.

Currently, the software supports both the TACACS+ and RADIUS methods for accounting. The router reports user activity to the TACACS+ or RADIUS security server in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record contains accounting AV pairs and is stored on the security server.

Method lists for accounting define the way accounting is performed, enabling you to designate a particular security protocol to be used on specific lines or interfaces for particular types of accounting services. When naming a method list, do not use the names of methods, such as TACACS+.

For minimal accounting, include the **stop-only** keyword to send a “stop accounting” notice at the end of the requested user process. For more accounting, you can include the **start-stop** keyword, so that the external AAA server sends a “start accounting” notice at the beginning of the requested process and a “stop accounting” notice at the end of the process. In addition, you can use the **aaa accounting update** command to periodically send update records with accumulated information. Accounting records are stored only on the TACACS+ or RADIUS server.

When AAA accounting is activated, the router reports these attributes as accounting records, which are then stored in an accounting log on the security server.

Procedure

Step 1 configure

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 Do one of the following:

- **aaa accounting** {**commands** | **exec** | **network**} {**default** | *list-name*} {**start-stop** | **stop-only**}
- {**none** | *method*}

Example:

```
Router(config)# aaa accounting commands default stop-only group tacacs+
```

Note

Command accounting is not supported on RADIUS, but supported on TACACS.

Creates a series of accounting methods, or a method list.

- The **commands** keyword enables accounting for XR EXEC mode shell commands.
- The **exec** keyword enables accounting for an interactive (XR EXEC mode) session.
- The **network** keyword enables accounting for all network-related service requests, such as Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP).
- The **default** keyword causes the listed accounting methods that follow this keyword to be the default list of methods for accounting.
- A *list-name* character string identifies the accounting method list.
- The **start-stop** keyword sends a “start accounting” notice at the beginning of a process and a “stop accounting” notice at the end of a process. The requested user process begins regardless of whether the “start accounting” notice was received by the accounting server.
- The **stop-only** keyword sends a “stop accounting” notice at the end of the requested user process.
- The **none** keyword states that no accounting is performed.
- The method list itself follows the **start-stop** keyword. Method list types are entered in the preferred sequence. The method argument lists the following types:
 - **group tacacs+**—Use the list of all configured TACACS+ servers for accounting.
 - **group radius**—Use the list of all configured RADIUS servers for accounting.
 - **group group-name**—Use a named server group, a subset of TACACS+ or RADIUS servers for accounting as defined by the **aaa group server tacacs+** or **aaa group server radius** command.
- The example defines a **default** command accounting method list, in which accounting services are provided by a TACACS+ security server, with a stop-only restriction.

Step 3 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Generate Interim Accounting Records

This task enables periodic interim accounting records to be sent to the accounting server. When the **aaa accounting update** command is activated, software issues interim accounting records for all users on the system.



Note Interim accounting records are generated only for network sessions, such as Internet Key Exchange (IKE) accounting, which is controlled by the **aaa accounting** command with the **network** keyword. System, command, or EXEC accounting sessions cannot have interim records generated.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **aaa accounting update {newinfo | periodic minutes}**

Example:

```
Router(config)# aaa accounting update periodic 30
```

Enables periodic interim accounting records to be sent to the accounting server.

- If the **newinfo** keyword is used, interim accounting records are sent to the accounting server every time there is new accounting information to report. An example of this report would be when IPCP completes IP address negotiation with the remote peer. The interim accounting record includes the negotiated IP address used by the remote peer.
- When used with the **periodic** keyword, interim accounting records are sent periodically as defined by the argument number. The interim accounting record contains all the accounting information recorded for that user up to the time the interim accounting record is sent.

Caution

The **periodic** keyword causes heavy congestion when many users are logged in to the network.

Step 3 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
 - **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
 - **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.
-

Applying Method Lists for Applications

After you configure method lists for authorization and accounting services, you can apply those method lists for applications that use those services (console, vty, and so on). Applying method lists is accomplished by enabling AAA authorization and accounting.

This section contains the following procedures:

Enabling AAA Authorization

This task enables AAA authorization for a specific line or group of lines.

Method List Application

After you use the **aaa authorization** command to define a named authorization method list (or use the default method list) for a particular type of authorization, you must apply the defined lists to the appropriate lines in order for authorization to take place. Use the **authorization** command to apply the specified method lists (or, if none is specified, the default method list) to the selected line or group of lines.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **line {aux | console | default | template *template-name*}**

Example:

```
Router(config)# line console
```

Enters line template configuration mode.

Step 3 **authorization {commands | exec} {default | *list-name*}**

Example:

```
Router(config-line)# authorization commands listname5
```

Enables AAA authorization for a specific line or group of lines.

- The **commands** keyword enables authorization on the selected lines for all commands.
- The **exec** keyword enables authorization for an interactive (XR EXEC mode) session.
- Enter the **default** keyword to apply the name of the default method list, as defined with the **aaa authorization** command.
- Enter the name of a list of authorization methods to use. If no list name is specified, the system uses the default. The list is created with the **aaa authorization** command.
- The example enables command authorization using the method list named listname5.

Step 4 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

What to do next

After applying authorization method lists by enabling AAA authorization, apply accounting method lists by enabling AAA accounting. (See the [Enable Accounting Services, on page 130](#) section.)

Enable Accounting Services

This task enables accounting services for a specific line of group of lines.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **line { console | default | template template-name }**

Example:

```
Router(config)# line console
```

Enters line template configuration mode.

Step 3 **accounting { commands | exec } { default | list-name }**

Example:

```
Router(config-line)# accounting commands listname7
```

Enables AAA accounting for a specific line or group of lines.

- The **commands** keyword enables accounting on the selected lines for all XR EXEC mode shell commands.
- The **exec** keyword enables accounting for an interactive (XR EXEC mode) session.
- Enter the **default** keyword to apply the name of the default method list, as defined with the **aaa accounting** command.
- Enter the name of a list of accounting methods to use. If no list name is specified, the system uses the default. The list is created with the **aaa accounting** command.

- The example enables command accounting using the method list named listname7.

Step 4 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

What to do next

After applying accounting method lists by enabling AAA accounting services, configure login parameters.

Configure Login Parameters

This task sets the interval that the server waits for reply to a login.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **line template** *template-name*

Example:

```
Router(config)# line template alpha
```

Specifies a line to configure and enters line template configuration mode.

Step 3 **timeout login response** *seconds*

Example:

```
Router(config-line)# timeout login response 20
```

Sets the interval that the server waits for reply to a login.

- The *seconds* argument specifies the timeout interval (in seconds) from 0 to 300. The default is 30 seconds.
- The example shows how to change the interval timer to 20 seconds.

Step 4 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Command Accounting

Command accounting with a method as local, enables the logging of commands executed by all users as syslog messages. This feature can be enabled or disabled only by users who have AAA write permissions. Once enabled, all the commands that are executed by all users can be viewed from the output of the **show logging** command.

Command accounting is not supported for commands that are executed using Netconf, XML or GRPC. Command accounting is not used as a failover accounting method but as an additional method of accounting. So this feature will be active even when other accounting methods are configured and functional.

Configuring Command Accounting

Command Accounting can either be configured alone or along with other accounting methods as shown below:

1. Configuring command accounting alone

```
Router(config)# aaa accounting commands default start-stop local none
Router(config)# commit
```

2. Configuring command accounting along with other accounting methods

```
Router(config)# aaa accounting commands default start-stop group tacacs+ local none
Router(config)# commit
```

Command Authorization Using Local User Account

Table 17: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Command Authorization Using Local User Account	Release 25.1.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Command Authorization Using Local User Account	Release 24.4.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM
Command Authorization Using Local User Account	Release 7.5.1	<p>This feature allows locally authenticated users—authenticated by the AAA server internal to the router—to run all XR VM commands even if a remote TACACS+ AAA server is not reachable for authorization. It prevents a complete router lockdown. The feature also prevents remotely authenticated users—authenticated using a remote AAA server (say, TACACS+ server)—from running any non-permitted commands on the router, and thus prevents misuse of user privileges.</p> <p>This feature modifies the aaa authorization commands default command to include the local option for XR VM command authorization.</p>

Currently, when a user tries to execute a command on XR VM, the router checks to see whether the user has required permissions to execute it. The router does this authorization process in two steps. First, the system compares the task-IDs of the user with the required task-IDs for the command. If the user has all required task-IDs, and if AAA authorization is configured, then the system sends an authorization request to the local or remote AAA server, based on that configuration. Based on the response from the AAA server, the system allows or rejects the command execution. If authorization is not configured or if it configured with option *none*, then the system bypasses authorization check and allows user to execute the command.

Similarly, the existing remote authorization process using TACACS+ server has two options—remote authorization using *tacacs+* and *none*. The authorization process using *TACACS+* option uses an external

TACACS+ server for authorization. The authorization using *none* option allows the user to execute the command without any authorization check. TACACS+ authorization has the advantage of fine-tuning authorization rules and providing more control on system access that cannot be otherwise done locally. However, if the remote server is not reachable, a user who leverages TACACS+ authorization might get into an unpredictable state of router, as mentioned in these scenarios:

- Remote authorization using TACACS+ with failover option as *none* (that is, with the **aaa authorization commands default group tacacs+ none** configuration)

If TACACS+ server is not reachable, then the system bypasses the authorization check and allows user to execute the command. A user who does not have permission to execute certain commands due to additional authorization rules on the TACACS+ server, then gets permission to execute those commands in this scenario. This action introduces a privilege escalation.

- Remote authorization using TACACS+ without any failover option (that is, with the **aaa authorization commands default group tacacs+** configuration)

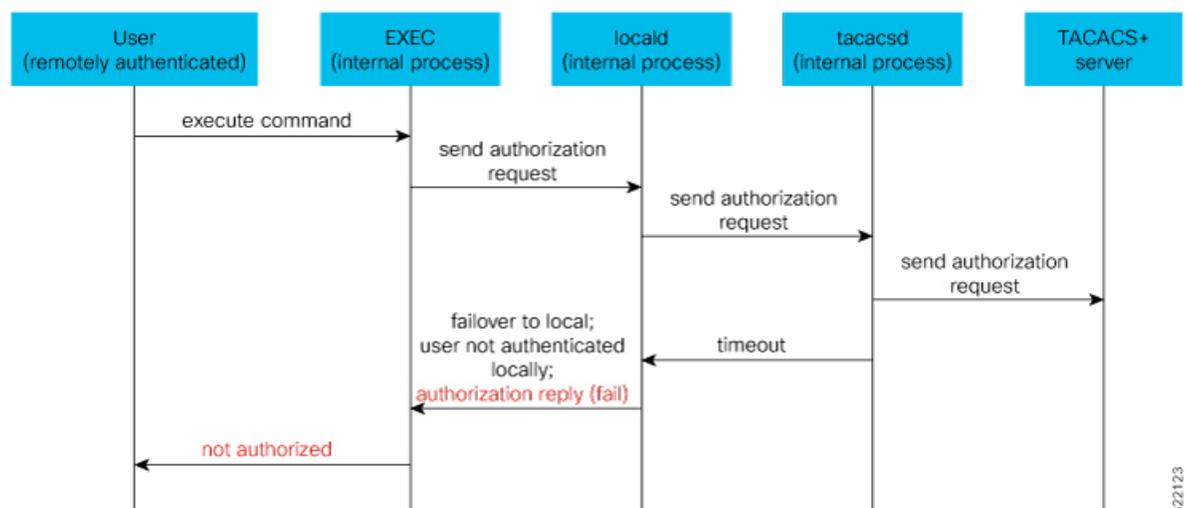
If TACACS+ server is not reachable, then the system does not authorize the command at all. Because the user then cannot execute any command, the router gets locked out.

With the introduction of command authorization using local user account feature in Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.5.1, locally authenticated users can execute commands even if a TACACS+ server is not reachable. This behavior is similar to the behavior with the failover option *none*, with the only difference that only locally authenticated users can execute commands in this case. This functionality thereby prevents a complete lockdown of the router as mentioned in one of the previously existing scenarios mentioned earlier. At the same time, the feature also prevents users who are authenticated remotely (that is, TACACS+ authenticated users) from executing any non-permitted command on the router. This behavior in turn helps to prevent any sort of misuse of user privileges on the router.

Call Flow of Command Authorization

Consider a scenario where the user is remotely authenticated. In the event of timeout from the TACACS+ server, the command authorization fails. The user cannot execute any command until the TACACS+ server is reachable again, thereby preventing misuse of user privileges on the router.

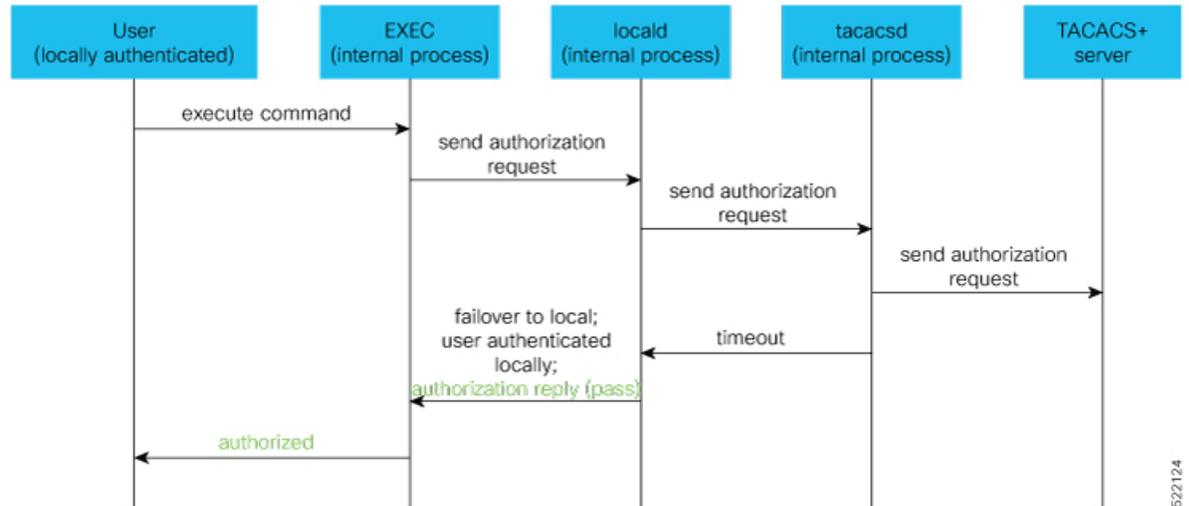
Figure 6: Call Flow of Command Authorization for Remotely Authenticated Users



522123

Consider a scenario where the user is locally authenticated. The command authorization still succeeds even if the authorization request to the TACACS+ server times out. There is no additional check done by the local AAA component in the router. As a result, the user can execute the command irrespective of the fact that the TACACS+ server is not reachable. This functionality prevents a complete lockdown of the router.

Figure 7: Call Flow of Command Authorization for Locally Authenticated Users



522124

Configure Command Authorization Using Local User Account

Guidelines

Although there is no restriction in configuring local command authorization, you must be cautious to prevent any potential lockout due to misconfiguration. For instance, if *local* is the only method of authorization specified for the commands, a remotely authenticated user configuring command authorization using local user account feature cannot execute further commands.

Configuration Example

To configure command authorization using local user account, use the **local** option in the **aaa authorization** command in any of these formats:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#aaa authorization commands default group tacacs+ local
```

Or

```
Router(config)#aaa authorization commands default local
```

Running Configuration

```
Router#show run aaa
!
aaa authorization commands default group tacacs+ local
!
```

```
Router#show run aaa
```

```
!
aaa authorization commands default local
!
```

Verification

```
Router#show user authentication method
local
```

Feature Behavior and Use Case Scenarios

Feature Behavior With Various Local Command Authorization Options

This table lists the feature behavior scenarios with various local command authorization options.

Table 18: Feature Behavior with Various Local Command Authorization Options

AAA Configuration	Expected Behavior
aaa authorization commands default group tacacs+ local	If TACACS+ server is not reachable, system allows locally authenticated users to execute the command. If TACACS+ server is reachable and if it returns an authorization failure, then the system does not perform any failover to local authentication with this configuration.
aaa authorization commands default local	This configuration allows only locally authenticated users to execute commands. System completely blocks remote users from executing any command.
aaa authorization commands default local group tacacs+	In this scenario, system chooses local authorization first and grants access if the user is locally authenticated. If not, the request fails over to TACACS+ server. This combination of command options is useful when both local and remote authenticated users want to execute commands when TACACS+ server is reachable.
aaa authorization commands default local none	Although configurable, this combination of command options does not provide any additional security with respect to user access. It is equivalent to having no authorization.

Use Case Scenarios of Command Authorization

In the following scenarios, local user refers to user whose is authenticated locally and whose profile is available locally, but not available on the remote server (TACACS+ server). Similarly, remote user refers to user whose is authenticated remotely and whose profile is available on the remote server, but not available locally. And, both local user and remote user are considered to have *root-lr* permission to execute the commands, in these scenarios.

Table 19: Use Case Scenarios of Command Authorization

Type of User (local or remote)	AAA Configuration Summary	Use Case Scenario	Expected Behavior
Local and remote user	No command authorization configured	Execute a command	Command authorization succeeds if the required task-IDs are available
Local user	Only <i>tacacs+ command authorization</i> configured.	Execute a command when TACACS+ server is reachable	Command authorization fails
		Execute a command when TACACS+ server is not reachable	Command authorization fails
Remote user	Only <i>tacacs+ command authorization</i> configured	Execute a command when TACACS+ server is reachable	Command authorization succeeds Router# show run aaa authorization aaa authorization commands default group tacacs+
		Execute a command when TACACS+ server is not reachable	Command authorization fails
Local user	Only <i>tacacs+ command authorization</i> configured with failover option as <i>none</i> .	Execute a command when TACACS+ server is reachable	Command authorization fails
		Execute a command when TACACS+ server is not reachable	Command authorization succeeds Router# show user authentication method local
Remote user	Only <i>tacacs+ command authorization</i> configured with failover option as <i>none</i> .	Execute a command that is restricted only to that user when TACACS+ server is reachable	Command authorization fails
		Execute a command that is restricted only to that user when TACACS+ server is not reachable	Command authorization succeeds

Type of User (local or remote)	AAA Configuration Summary	Use Case Scenario	Expected Behavior
Local user	Only <i>local command authorization</i> configured.	Execute a command	Command authorization succeeds Router# show run aaa authentication aaa authentication login default group tacacs+ local
Remote user	Only <i>local command authorization</i> configured.	Execute a command	Command authorization fails
Local user	Only <i>tacacs+ command authorization</i> configured with failover option as <i>local</i> .	Execute a command when TACACS+ server is reachable	Command authorization fails
		Execute a command when TACACS+ server is not reachable	Command authorization succeeds Router# show run aaa authentication aaa authorization commands default group tacacs+ local
Remote user	Only <i>tacacs+ command authorization</i> configured with failover option as <i>local</i> .	Execute a command when TACACS+ server is reachable	Command authorization succeeds Router# show run aaa authentication aaa authorization commands default group tacacs+ local
		Execute a command when TACACS+ server is not reachable	Command authorization fails

Configuration Example for AAA Services

The following examples show how to configure AAA services.

An authentication method list `vty-authen` is configured. This example specifies a method list that uses the list of all configured TACACS+ servers for authentication. If that method fails, the local username database method is used for authentication.

```
configure
aaa authentication login vty-authen group tacacs+ local
```

The default method list for PPP is configured to use local method.

```
aaa authentication ppp default local
```

A username `user1` is created for login purposes, a secure login password is assigned, and `user1` is made a `root-lr` user. Configure similar settings for username `user2`.

```
username user1
secret lab
group root-lr
exit
```

```
username user2
secret lab
exit
```

A task group named tga is created, tasks are added to tga, a user group named uga is created, and uga is configured to inherit permissions from task group tga. A description is added to task group uga.

```
taskgroup tga
task read bgp
task write ospf
exit
```

```
usergroup uga
taskgroup tga
description usergroup uga
exit
```

Username user2 is configured to inherit from user group uga.

```
username user2
group uga
exit
```

Three TACACS servers are configured.

```
tacacs-server host 10.1.1.1 port 1 key abc
tacacs-server host 10.2.2.2 port 2 key def
tacacs-server host 10.3.3.3 port 3 key ghi
```

A user group named priv5 is created, which will be used for users authenticated using the TACACS+ method and whose entry in the external TACACS+ daemon configuration file has a privilege level of 5.

```
usergroup priv5
taskgroup operator
exit
```

An authorization method list, vty-author, is configured. This example specifies that command authorization be done using the list of all configured TACACS+ servers.

```
aaa authorization commands vty-author group tacacs+
```

An accounting method list, vty-acct, is configured. This example specifies that start-stop command accounting be done using the list of all configured TACACS+ servers.

```
aaa accounting commands vty-acct start-stop group tacacs+
```

For TACACS+ authentication, if, for example, a privilege level 8 is returned, and no local usergroup priv8 exists and no local user with the same name exists, the **aaa default-taskgroup** command with tga specified as the *taskgroup-name* argument ensures that such users are given the taskmap of the task group tga.

```
aaa default-taskgroup tga
```

For line template vty, a line password is assigned that is used with line authentication and makes usergroup uga the group that is assigned for line authentication (if used), and makes vty-authen, vty-author, and vty-acct, respectively, the method lists that are used for authentication, authorization, and accounting.

```
line template vty
password lab
users group uga
login authentication vty-authen
authorization commands vty-author
accounting commands vty-acct
exit
```

A TACACS+ server group named abc is created and an already configured TACACS+ server is added to it.

```
aaa group server tacacs+ abc
server 10.3.3.3
exit
```



CHAPTER 5

Implementing Certification Authority Interoperability

Certification authority (CA) interoperability is provided in support of the IP Security (IPSec), Secure Socket Layer (SSL), and Secure Shell (SSH) protocols. This module describes how to implement CA interoperability.

CA interoperability permits devices and CAs to communicate so that your device can obtain and use digital certificates from the CA. Although IPSec can be implemented in your network without the use of a CA, using a CA provides manageability and scalability for IPSec.



Note IPSec is not currently supported.

Feature History for Implementing Certification Authority Interoperability

Release	Modification
Release 7.0.12	This chapter was introduced.
Release 7.3.1	Added support for verifying authenticity of RPM packages using runtime and install time fingerprint.
Release 7.3.1	Added support to collect filesystem inventory.
Release 7.3.1	Added support for new optimizations via IMA.
Release 7.3.1	Added support for retrieving CRL through the http proxy server.

- [Implementing Certification Authority Interoperability, on page 141](#)
- [Information About Implementing Certification Authority, on page 196](#)

Implementing Certification Authority Interoperability

Certification authority (CA) interoperability is provided in support of the IP Security (IPSec), Secure Socket Layer (SSL), and Secure Shell (SSH) protocols. This module describes how to implement CA interoperability.

CA interoperability permits devices and CAs to communicate so that your device can obtain and use digital certificates from the CA. Although IPsec can be implemented in your network without the use of a CA, using a CA provides manageability and scalability for IPsec.



Note IPsec is not currently supported.

Feature History for Implementing Certification Authority Interoperability

Release	Modification
Release 7.0.12	This chapter was introduced.
Release 7.3.1	Added support for verifying authenticity of RPM packages using runtime and install time fingerprint.
Release 7.3.1	Added support to collect filesystem inventory.
Release 7.3.1	Added support for new optimizations via IMA.
Release 7.3.1	Added support for retrieving CRL through the http proxy server.

Prerequisites for Implementing Certification Authority

The following prerequisites are required to implement CA interoperability:

- You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.
- You need to have a CA available to your network before you configure this interoperability feature. The CA must support Cisco Systems PKI protocol, the simple certificate enrollment protocol (SCEP) (formerly called certificate enrollment protocol [CEP]).

How to Implement CA Interoperability

This section contains the following procedures:

Configure Router Hostname and IP Domain Name

This task configures a router hostname and IP domain name.

You must configure the hostname and IP domain name of the router if they have not already been configured. The hostname and IP domain name are required because the router assigns a fully qualified domain name (FQDN) to the keys and certificates used by IPsec, and the FQDN is based on the hostname and IP domain name you assign to the router. For example, a certificate named router20.example.com is based on a router hostname of router20 and a router IP domain name of example.com.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **hostname *name***

Example:

```
Router(config)# hostname myhost
```

Configures the hostname of the router.

Step 3 **domain name *domain-name***

Example:

```
Router(config)# domain name mydomain.com
```

Configures the IP domain name of the router.

Step 4 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
 - **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
 - **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.
-

RSA key pairs

RSA key pairs play a crucial role in securing IKE key management messages by enabling both signing and encryption. Their use is required before a certificate can be obtained for your router. Specifically, RSA key pairs are used to

- digitally sign IKE key management messages, ensuring their authenticity and integrity
- encrypt IKE key management messages, protecting sensitive information from unauthorized access, and
- satisfy prerequisites for obtaining a digital certificate for the router, which further enhances security in network communications.

Table 20: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Syslog warnings for RSA keys and DSA keys	Release 26.1.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100, K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>This enhancement ensures Cisco IOS XR devices remain compliant with evolving security standards. During system reboot, the device now sends syslog warnings if weak SSH host keys are detected—specifically, RSA keys less than 3072 bits or any DSA keys. Additionally, the default RSA key size has been increased from 2048 to 3072 bits to further strengthen security.</p> <p>This feature introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI: .</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The crypto key generate rsa command has been modified. • The crypto key generate dsa command has been modified. • The show crypto key mypubkey rsa command has been modified.
RSA and DSA Keys Available in Running Configuration	Release 25.1.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
RSA and DSA Keys Available in Running Configuration	Release 24.4.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM
RSA and DSA Keys Available in Running Configuration	Release 7.3.4	<p>You can now view the RSA and DSA keys in the running configuration by using the show running-configuration command. This feature is applicable to the following sections:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Generate Key Pair, on page 175 • Generate Key Pair, on page 175 • Configure FIPS-compliant Keys, on page 336

Syslog warnings for RSA keys and DSA keys

Starting with Cisco IOS XR Release 26.1.1, the default RSA key size is 3072 bits; syslog warning is triggered during system boot for weak SSH host key, where RSA key is less than 3072 bits. Additionally, DSA keys are no longer auto-generated at boot, and if found, a syslog warning prompts their removal. These changes ensure compliance with current cryptographic security standards and enhance device protection against emerging threats.

Generate RSA key pair

This task generates an RSA key pair.



Note

- RSA keys are auto-generated at the time of router boot up.
- The details of RSA and DSA keys are displayed in the running configuration.

Procedure

Step 1 (Optional) Execute the **crypto key generate rsa general-keys** command to generate RSA key pairs.

Example:

```
Router# crypto key generate rsa general-keys
```

This step is required only if the RSA key pair is missing on the router during the router bootup.

From Cisco IOS XR Release 7.3.2 onwards, you can configure this command from XR Config mode. For more details, see [Public key-pairs, on page 191](#).

To delete the RSA keys, use the no form: **no crypto key generate rsa**

Step 2 (Optional) Execute the **crypto key zeroize rsa [keypair-label]** to delete all RSAs from the router.

Example:

```
Router# crypto key zeroize rsa key1
```

The *keypair-label* argument is the RSA key pair label that names the RSA key pairs.

You can run the **crypto key zeroize** command only in the `exec` mode.

- In some situations, where you believe that the RSA keys were compromised in some way or the RSA keys should no longer be used, you should delete all the RSA keys from your router using the **crypto key zeroize rsa** command.
- To remove a specific RSA key pair, use the *keypair-label* argument.
- From Cisco IOS XR Release 7.3.2 onwards, you can delete key-pairs with the **no** form of the command mentioned in Step [Step 1, on page 145](#) from XR Config mode. For more details, see [Public key-pairs, on page 191](#).

Step 3 (Optional) Execute the **show crypto key mypubkey rsa** command to display the RSA public keys for your router.

Example:

```
Router# show crypto key mypubkey rsa
Fri Mar 27 14:00:20.954 IST
Key label: the_default
Type : RSA General purpose
Size : 3072
Created : 01:13:10 IST Thu Feb 06 2025
Data :
30820122 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 01050003 82010F00 3082010A 02820101
00A93DE0 1E485EE3 0E7F0964 C48361D1 B6014BE7 A303D8D6 F7790E92 88E69C4B
B97B7A9C D1B277E3 1569093C 82BD3258 7F67FB49 94860ECD 34498F1F 59B45757
F32C8E8F 7CEE23EC C36A43D1 9F85C0D9 B96A14DD DD3BBD4C A1FB0888 EED210A7
39D9A403 7ACE0F6E 39107226 CA621AD8 6E8102CA 9761B86F D33F2871 9DD16559
AFCB4729 EFCEDBAF 83DF76E4 9A439844 EE3B1180 4022F575 99E11A2C E25BB23D
9DD74C81 4E5C1345 D9E3CC79 1B98B1AA 6C06F004 22B901EC 36C099FE 10DE2622
EB7CE618 9A555769 12D94C90 D9BEE5EA A664E7F6 4DF8D8D4 FE7EAB07 1EF4FEAB
22D9E55F 62BA66A0 72153CEC 81F2639F B5F2B5C5 25E10364 19387C6B E8DB8990
11020301 0001
```

Step 4 (Optional) Execute the **show running-config** command to display the RSA keys generated in XR configuration mode.

Note

The keys in the following example are in OpenSSL format. Only those keys that are generated in the `config` mode are visible in the running configuration.

```
Router#show running-config

Thu May 12 08:38:04.244 UTC
Building configuration...
!! IOS XR Configuration 7.3.4
```

```

!! Last configuration change at Thu May 12 08:37:59 2025 by cisco
!
username cisco
  group root-lr
  group cisco-support
  secret 10
$6$8zR0nTbkA7A1n...$0Kn.YxNNmh1cXo9cEvEwLGAFf.rEOTycjsizI/TLBz9WoQX.rmxVwkNgTKAnROUGPtBVlQ/Ndew8gEREXJ7mIO
!
call-home
  service active
  contact smart-licensing
  profile CiscoTAC-1
    active
    destination transport-method http
!
!
interface MgmtEth0/RSP0/CPU0/0
  shutdown
!
crypto key generate rsa test general-keys 3072 | -----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
MIIBIDANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ0AMIIBCACQAEAgixFnlD/AADcil6eV38A
AIIlxZ5XfwAAcJb6e1d/AAAA7du+AAAAAI6Qs47BQLhIVQAAAAAAAAAAWQDQVn8A
ANyKXp5XfwAAKAAAAAAAAACaNCwV38AANyKXp5XfwAAmJXFnlD/AADcil6eV38A
AJolxZ5XfwAAA03bvgAAAABVAAAAAAAAABBEANBwfwAA3IpenlD/AAgAAAAAAAA
AI8lxZ5XfwAA3IpenlD/AACPJcWwV38AAHhZANBwfwAAA03bvgAAAAADUTNDpQMwP
UUUAAAAAAAAAkBcA0FZ/AADcil6eV38AABgAAAAAAAAiSXFnlD/AADcil6eV38A
AAIBAA==
-----END PUBLIC KEY-----
|
end

```

Import Public Key to the Router

This task imports a public key to the router.

A public key is imported to the router to authenticate the user.

Procedure

Step 1 `crypto key import authentication rsa [usage keys | general-keys] [keypair-label]`

Example:

```
Router# crypto key import authentication rsa general-keys
```

Generates RSA key pairs.

- Use the **usage keys** keyword to specify special usage keys; use the **general-keys** keyword to specify general-purpose RSA keys.
- The *keypair-label* argument is the RSA key pair label that names the RSA key pairs.

Step 2 `show crypto key mypubkey rsa`

Example:

Import Public Key to the Router

```

Router# show crypto key mypubkey rsa
Fri Mar 27 14:00:20.954 IST
Key label: system-root-key
Type : RSA General purpose
Size : 2048
Created : 01:13:10 IST Thu Feb 06 2020
Data :
 30820122 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 01050003 82010F00 3082010A 02820101
 00A93DE0 1E485EE3 0E7F0964 C48361D1 B6014BE7 A303D8D6 F7790E92 88E69C4B
 B97B7A9C D1B277E3 1569093C 82BD3258 7F67FB49 94860ECD 34498F1F 59B45757
 F32C8E8F 7CEE23EC C36A43D1 9F85C0D9 B96A14DD DD3BBD4C A1FB0888 EED210A7
 39D9A403 7ACE0F6E 39107226 CA621AD8 6E8102CA 9761B86F D33F2871 9DD16559
 AFCB4729 EFCEDBAF 83DF76E4 9A439844 EE3B1180 4022F575 99E11A2C E25BB23D
 9DD74C81 4E5C1345 D9E3CC79 1B98B1AA 6C06F004 22B901EC 36C099FE 10DE2622
 EB7CE618 9A555769 12D94C90 D9BEE5EA A664E7F6 4DF8D8D4 FE7EAB07 1EF4FEAB
 22D9E55F 62BA66A0 72153CEC 81F2639F B5F2B5C5 25E10364 19387C6B E8DB8990
 11020301 0001
Key label: system-enroll-key
Type : RSA General purpose
Size : 2048
Created : 01:13:16 IST Thu Feb 06 2020
Data :
 30820122 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 01050003 82010F00 3082010A 02820101
 009DBC14 C83604E4 EB3D3CF8 5BA7FDDB 80F7E85B 427332D8 BBF80148 F0A9C281
 49F87D5C 0CEBA532 EBE797C5 7F174C69 0735D13A 493670CB 63B04A12 4BCA7134
 EE0031E9 047CAA1E 802030C5 6071E8C2 F8ECE002 CC3B54E7 5FD24E5C 61B7B7B0
 68FA2EFA 0B83799F 77AE4621 435D9DFF 1D713108 37B614D3 255020F9 09CD32E8
 82B07CD7 01A53896 6DD92B5D 5119597C 98D394E9 DBD1ABAF 6DE949FE 4A8BF1E7
 851EB3F4 60B1114A 1456723E 063E50C4 2D410906 BDB7590B F1D58480 F3FA911A
 6C9CD02A 58E68D04 E94C098F 0F0E81DB 76B40C55 64603499 2AC0547A D652412A
 BCBBF69F 76B351EE 9B2DF79D E490C0F6 92D1BB97 B905F33B FAB53C20 DDE2BB22
 C7020301 0001

```

(Optional) Displays the RSA public keys for your router.

The **show running-config** command also displays the RSA keys. The keys in the following example are in OpenSSL format.

Note

Only those keys that are generated in the `config` mode are visible in the running configuration.

```

Router(config)#crypto key generate rsa test
Router(config)#commit
Thu May 12 08:37:59.894 UTC
Router(config)#end
Router#show running-config
Thu May 12 08:38:04.244 UTC
Building configuration...
!! IOS XR Configuration 7.3.4
!! Last configuration change at Thu May 12 08:37:59 2022 by cisco
!
username cisco
 group root-lr
 group cisco-support
 secret 10
$6$8zR0nTbkA7A1n...$0Kn.YxNNmhlcXo9cEvEwLGAff.rEOTycjsizI/TLBz9WoQX.rmxVwkNgTKANROUGPtBVlQ/Ndew8gEREXJ7mIO
!
call-home
 service active
 contact smart-licensing
 profile CiscoTAC-1
 active
 destination transport-method http
!

```

```

!
interface MgmtEth0/RSP0/CPU0/0
 shutdown
!
crypto key generate rsa test general-keys 2048 | -----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
MIIBIDANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ0AMIIBCACQAEAgixFnld/AADcil6eV38A
AIIlXZ5XfwAAcJb6e1d/AAAA7du+AAAAAI6Qs47BQLhIVQAAAAAAAAAAWQDQVn8A
ANyKXp5XfwAAKAAAAAAAAAACaNCwV38AAAnyKXp5XfwAAmJXFnld/AADcil6eV38A
AJolXZ5XfwAAA03bvgAAAABVAAAAAAAAABBEANBwfwAA3Ipenld/AAAgAAAAAAAA
AI8lXZ5XfwAA3Ipenld/AACPJcWV38AAHhZANBwfwAAA03bvgAAAADUTNDpQMWp
UUUAAAAAAAAAKBcA0FZ/AADcil6eV38AABgAAAAAAAAiSXFnd/AADcil6eV38A
AAIBAA==
-----END PUBLIC KEY-----
|
end

```

Declare Certification Authority and Configure Trusted Point

This task declares a CA and configures a trusted point.

Procedure

Step 1 configure

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 crypto ca trustpoint ca-name

Example:

```
Router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint myca
```

Declares a CA.

- Configures a trusted point with a selected name so that your router can verify certificates issued to peers.
- Enters trustpoint configuration mode.

Step 3 enrollment url CA-URL

Example:

```
Router(config-trustp)# enrollment url http://ca.domain.com/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
```

Specifies the URL of the CA.

- The URL should include any nonstandard cgi-bin script location.

Step 4 query url LDAP-URL

Example:

```
Router(config-trustp)# query url ldap://my-ldap.domain.com
```

(Optional) Specifies the location of the LDAP server if your CA system supports the LDAP protocol.

Step 5 enrollment retry period minutes

Example:

```
Router(config-trustp)# enrollment retry period 2
```

(Optional) Specifies a retry period.

- After requesting a certificate, the router waits to receive a certificate from the CA. If the router does not receive a certificate within a period of time (the retry period) the router will send another certificate request.
- Range is from 1 to 60 minutes. Default is 1 minute.

Step 6 enrollment retry count number

Example:

```
Router(config-trustp)# enrollment retry count 10
```

(Optional) Specifies how many times the router continues to send unsuccessful certificate requests before giving up.

- The range is from 1 to 100.

Step 7 rsakeypair keypair-label

Example:

```
Router(config-trustp)# rsakeypair mykey
```

(Optional) Specifies a named RSA key pair generated using the **crypto key generate rsa** command for this trustpoint.

- Not setting this key pair means that the trustpoint uses the default RSA key in the current configuration.

Step 8 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Authenticate CA

This task authenticates the CA to your router.

The router must authenticate the CA by obtaining the self-signed certificate of the CA, which contains the public key of the CA. Because the certificate of the CA is self-signed (the CA signs its own certificate),

manually authenticate the public key of the CA by contacting the CA administrator to compare the fingerprint of the CA certificate.

Procedure

Step 1 `crypto ca authenticate ca-name`

Example:

```
Router#crypto ca authenticate myca
```

Authenticates the CA to your router by obtaining a CA certificate, which contains the public key for the CA.

Step 2 `show crypto ca certificates`

Example:

```
Router#show crypto ca certificates
```

(Optional) Displays information about the CA certificate.

Multi-Tier Certificate Authority for Trustpoint Authentication

Table 21: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Multi-Tier Certificate Authority for Trustpoint Authentication	Release 25.1.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Multi-Tier Certificate Authority for Trustpoint Authentication	Release 24.4.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM
Multi-Tier Certificate Authority for Trustpoint Authentication	Release 7.10.1	<p>Apart from the root certificate authority (CA), you can now use a subordinate CA to issue certificates and authenticate your network devices. This feature is beneficial when you have an existing CA hierarchy where it is not the root CA but the subordinate CA that issues the leaf or router certificates.</p> <p>In earlier releases, you could associate only a single CA, not a multi-tier CA, to a trustpoint. And, you could use only the root CA certificate to enroll the router certificates.</p> <p>This feature modifies the show crypto ca certificates command to display the Trusted Certificate Chain field.</p>

During terminal-based enrollment of a CA trustpoint, Cisco IOS XR network devices accepted only Root CA certificate. You might have some network topologies which use multi-tier CA hierarchy for enrollment purposes because it provides more flexibility and security. From Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.10.1 and later, as part of terminal-based authentication, you can import a complete CA hierarchy (from the Root CA till the subordinate CA that issues the certificate) as part of a single authentication request. With this feature, you can provide a certificate chain including the Root CA and intermediate subordinate CAs as part of the terminal-based enrollment process. This feature is useful when you have an existing CA hierarchy where it is not the root CA but the subordinate CA that issues the leaf or router certificates.

You can have a maximum of 8 tiers, that is, a chain of CA with one Root CA and seven subordinate CAs, for trustpoint authentication.

How to Use Multi-Tier CA for Trustpoint Authentication

Use the **crypto ca authenticate** command to use multi-tier CAs for trustpoint authentication or enrollment. You must use only privacy enhanced mail (PEM)-encoded certificates for trustpoint authentication using multi-tier CAs.

The enrollment process remains the same as that of the enrollment using single-tier CA, except that you get a message on the router console that prompts to use only PEM-encoded certificates.

Prerequisite

You must generate a key pair, import a public key and configure a trustpoint on the router as detailed in the previous sections.

Configuration Example

```
Router#crypto ca authenticate test-ca
Mon Feb  6 08:17:48.943 UTC

Enter the base 64/PEM encoded certificate/certificates.
Please note: for multiple certificates use only PEM
End with a blank line or the word "quit" on a line by itself

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIF5TCCA82gAwIBAgICEAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQELBQAwXTElMAkGA1UEBhMCSU4x
CzAJBgNVBAGMAktBMQwwCgYDVQQHDANCR0wxDTALBgNVBAoMBENTQ08xDTALBgNV
.
.
.
/4UzeeX6110gGJVbDwGeIZTH00artqxHquKQ2P7eXQ1pg0PRNRqWN90SvT5yE33N
eHgbtvdHg1K6K6IAj/NGnd7xUrA1TQ4bdmouCNkgbXM/G9DwgkOOvZ8KYRP9JW57
LYIv2ZcRS2vdnZRD9JPGVig2EgcfVptj+Q==
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIF9TCCA92gAwIBAgIUD6AGesleqedhorkrJ9HWjz1RQzswDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEL
BQAwXTElMAkGA1UEBhMCSU4xCzAJBgNVBAGMAktBMQwwCgYDVQQHDANCR0wxDTAL
.
.
.
+6rMWd6BmfSy2PT3Qz5AjO2+3N1dd67qRRrX7skklkX4JXY42n5/19PQtSp0wTBh
uy5yUAagynu0z07GczE7E9V+tJHRmNTbnd8pxLk41TwqtiCIXwQLZA75SkwCS5wh
fn7OrV7uFjMaggNkvj0kSSokWxqJ+j/KqMAA2zQMUV+qdvT6i+ZV44U=
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
Serial Number  : 10:01
Subject:
CN=SUB_CA_CERT,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
  Issued By      :
CN=TWO-LEVEL-CA,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
  Validity Start : 12:31:40 UTC Sun Jun 14 2020
  Validity End   : 12:31:40 UTC Wed Jun 12 2030

CRL Distribution Point
http://10.105.236.78/crl_akshath_two_level_ca/crl.der
SHA1 Fingerprint:
D8E0C11ECED96F67FDBC800DB6A126676A76BD62
Serial Number  : 0F:A0:06:7A:C9:5E:A9:E7:61:A2:B9:2B:27:D1:D6:8F:3D:51:43:3B
Subject:
CN=TWO-LEVEL-CA,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
  Issued By      :
CN=TWO-LEVEL-CA,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
```

```

Validity Start : 13:12:32 UTC Sun Jun 07 2020
Validity End   : 13:12:32 UTC Sat Jun 02 2040

CRL Distribution Point
http://10.105.236.78/crl_akshath_two_level_ca/crl.der
SHA1 Fingerprint:
08E71248FB7578614442E713AC87C461D173952F

```

```

CA Certificate validated using issuer certificate.
Router#

```

Verification

Use the **show crypto ca certificates *trustpoint-name*** command to view the CA certificate chain. The command output displays the **Trusted Certificate Chain** field if there is one or more subordinate CAs involved in the hierarchy.

```

Router#show crypto ca certificates test-ca
Mon Feb  6 09:03:53.019 UTC

Trustpoint      : test-ca
=====
CA certificate
Serial Number   : 10:01
Subject:
    CN=SUB_CA_CERT,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
Issued By      :
    CN=TWO-LEVEL-CA,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
Validity Start : 12:31:40 UTC Sun Jun 14 2020
Validity End   : 12:31:40 UTC Wed Jun 12 2030

CRL Distribution Point
    http://10.105.236.78/crl_akshath_two_level_ca/crl.der
SHA1 Fingerprint:
    D8E0C11ECED96F67FDBC800DB6A126676A76BD62

Trusted Certificate Chain
Serial Number   : 0F:A0:06:7A:C9:5E:A9:E7:61:A2:B9:2B:27:D1:D6:8F:3D:51:43:3B
Subject:
    CN=TWO-LEVEL-CA,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
Issued By      :
    CN=TWO-LEVEL-CA,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
Validity Start : 13:12:32 UTC Sun Jun 07 2020
Validity End   : 13:12:32 UTC Sat Jun 02 2040

CRL Distribution Point
    http://10.105.236.78/crl_akshath_two_level_ca/crl.der
SHA1 Fingerprint:
    08E71248FB7578614442E713AC87C461D173952F

Router certificate
Key usage       : General Purpose
Status         : Available
Serial Number   : 28:E5
Subject:
    CN=test
Issued By      :
    CN=SUB_CA_CERT,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
Validity Start : 08:49:54 UTC Mon Feb 06 2023
Validity End   : 08:49:54 UTC Wed Mar 08 2023
SHA1 Fingerprint:
    6C8644FA67D9CEBC7C5665C35838265F578835AB
Associated Trustpoint: test-ca

```

Request Your Own Certificates

This task requests certificates from the CA.

You must obtain a signed certificate from the CA for each of your router's RSA key pairs. If you generated general-purpose RSA keys, your router has only one RSA key pair and needs only one certificate. If you previously generated special usage RSA keys, your router has two RSA key pairs and needs two certificates.

Procedure

Step 1 `crypto ca enroll ca-name`

Example:

```
Router# crypto ca enroll myca
```

Requests certificates for all of your RSA key pairs.

- This command causes your router to request as many certificates as there are RSA key pairs, so you need only perform this command once, even if you have special usage RSA key pairs.
- This command requires you to create a challenge password that is not saved with the configuration. This password is required if your certificate needs to be revoked, so you must remember this password.
- A certificate may be issued immediately or the router sends a certificate request every minute until the enrollment retry period is reached and a timeout occurs. If a timeout occurs, contact your system administrator to get your request approved, and then enter this command again.

Step 2 `show crypto ca certificates`

Example:

```
Router# show crypto ca certificates
```

(Optional) Displays information about the CA certificate.

CA enrollment URL

Table 22: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
IPv6 support for CA enrollment URL	Release 25.1.1	Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100]) (select variants only*) * This feature is supported on Cisco 8712-MOD-M routers.

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
IPv6 support for CA enrollment URL	Release 24.4.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: Q200, P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100, K100]); Centralized Systems (8600 [ASIC:Q200]) ; Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100])</p> <p>You can enhance network compatibility and simplify management in modern network environments using IPv6 addresses and CA server URLs that resolve to IPv6 addresses as enrollment URLs for the CA hosted on IPv6-based servers. This improvement addresses previous limitations that caused configuration issues and failures when using IPv6 CA enrollment URL.</p>

The CA Enrollment URL

- is a web address that routers use to connect with a Certification Authority (CA) for certificate enrollment and renewal, and
- automates the process of obtaining digital certificates, minimizing manual intervention and reducing the risk of potential errors.

How CA enrollment URL works

- When a router needs to enroll for a new certificate or renew an existing one, the router sends a request to the enrollment URL. The requests sent to the enrollment URL typically include the device's identity information and its public key.
- Upon receiving a request at the enrollment URL, the CA processes it to verify the identity of the requester. The verification involves checking the authenticity and validity of the information provided in the enrollment request.
- After the validation is successful, the CA issues a digital certificate. This certificate is then sent back to the router through the enrollment URL.
- The router then installs and use this certificate for secure communications.

IPv4 support for CA enrollment URL

The routers support IPv4 addresses or web addresses resolving to an IPv4 address as the CA server address when specifying the CA URL using the [enrollment url](#) command.

IPv6 support for CA enrollment URL

Starting from the Cisco IOS XR Release 24.4.1, you can now configure IPv6 addresses or web addresses resolving to an IPv6 address as the CA server address when specifying the CA URL using the **enrollment url** command. Thus eliminating previous restrictions that caused failures in declaring a CA using IPv6 in the **crypto ca trust point** command.

Guidelines for CA enrollment URL

These are the guidelines for CA enrollment URL:

- The enrollment URL string must start with `http://CA_name`, where `CA_name` is the host Domain Name System (DNS) name or IP address of the CA (for example, `http://ca-server`).
- If the CA CGI-bin script location is not `/CGI-bin/pkclient.exe` at the CA (the default CA CGI-bin script location), you must also include the nonstandard script location in the URL in the form of `http://CA-name/script-location`, where `script-location` is the full path to the CA scripts.

Configure enrollment URL for CA

Use this procedure to enroll the URL for the CA.

Procedure

Step 1 Declare the CA and enter the trustpoint configuration mode using the **crypto ca trustpoint myca** command.

Example:

```
Router# configure
Router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint myca
```

Step 2 Specify the URL of the CA using the **enrollment url** command.

Example:

```
Router(config-trustp)# enrollment url http://ca.domain.com/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
```

Step 3 Execute the **show running-config** command to verify the enrollment URL for the CA.

Example:

```
Router# show running-config crypto ca trustpoint myca
crypto ca trustpoint myca
  enrollment url http://ca.domain.com/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
!
```

Verify that the enrollment URL for the CA is <http://ca.domain.com/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll>.

Configure Certificate Enrollment Using Cut-and-Paste

This task declares the trustpoint certification authority (CA) that your router should use and configures that trustpoint CA for manual enrollment by using cut-and-paste.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **crypto ca trustpoint *ca-name***

Example:

```
Router#crypto ca trustpoint myca
```

Declares the CA that your router should use and enters trustpoint configuration mode.

- Use the *ca-name* argument to specify the name of the CA.

Step 3 **enrollment terminal**

Example:

```
Router(config-trustp)# enrollment terminal
```

Specifies manual cut-and-paste certificate enrollment.

Step 4 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Step 5 **crypto ca authenticate *ca-name***

Example:

```
Router# crypto ca authenticate myca
```

Authenticates the CA by obtaining the certificate of the CA.

- Use the *ca-name* argument to specify the name of the CA. Use the same name that you entered in step 2.

Step 6 **crypto ca enroll *ca-name***

Example:

```
Router# crypto ca enroll myca
```

Obtains the certificates for your router from the CA.

- Use the *ca-name* argument to specify the name of the CA. Use the same name that you entered in Step 2.

Step 7 **crypto ca import *ca-name* certificate**

Example:

```
Router# crypto ca import myca certificate
```

Imports a certificate manually at the terminal.

- Use the *ca-name* argument to specify the name of the CA. Use the same name that you entered in Step 2.

Note

You must enter the **crypto ca import** command twice if usage keys (signature and encryption keys) are used. The first time the command is entered, one of the certificates is pasted into the router; the second time the command is entered, the other certificate is pasted into the router. (It does not matter which certificate is pasted first.)

Step 8

```
show crypto ca certificates
```

Example:

```
Router# show crypto ca certificates
```

Displays information about your certificate and the CA certificate.

The following example shows how to configure CA interoperability.

Comments are included within the configuration to explain various commands.

```
configure
hostname myrouter
domain name mydomain.com
end

Uncommitted changes found, commit them? [yes]:yes

crypto key generate rsa mykey

The name for the keys will be:mykey
Choose the size of the key modulus in the range of 360 to 2048 for your General Purpose
Keypair
Choosing a key modulus greater than 512 may take a few minutes.
How many bits in the modulus [1024]:
Generating RSA keys ...
Done w/ crypto generate keypair
[OK]

show crypto key mypubkey rsa

Key label:mykey
Type      :RSA General purpose
Size      :1024
Created   :17:33:23 UTC Thu Sep 18 2003
Data      :
 30819F30 0D06092A 864886F7 0D010101 05000381 8D003081 89028181 00CB8D86
BF6707AA FD7E4F08 A1F70080 B9E6016B 8128004C B477817B BCF35106 BC60B06E
07A417FD 7979D262 B35465A6 1D3B70D1 36ACAFBD 7F91D5A0 CFB0EE91 B9D52C69
7CAF89ED F66A6A58 89EEF776 A03916CB 3663FB17 B7DBEBF8 1C54AF7F 293F3004
C15B08A8 C6965F1E 289DD724 BD40AF59 E90E44D5 7D590000 5C4BEA9D B5020301
0001

! The following commands declare a CA and configure a trusted point.

configure
```

```
crypto ca trustpoint myca
enrollment url http://xyz-ultra5
enrollment retry count 25
enrollment retry period 2
rsakeypair mykey
end
```

Uncommitted changes found, commit them? [yes]:yes

! The following command authenticates the CA to your router.

```
crypto ca authenticate myca
```

```
Serial Number :01
Subject Name :
cn=Root coax-u10 Certificate Manager,ou=HFR,o=Cisco Systems,l=San Jose,st=CA,c=US
Issued By :
cn=Root coax-u10 Certificate Manager,ou=HFR,o=Cisco Systems,l=San Jose,st=CA,c=US
Validity Start :07:00:00 UTC Tue Aug 19 2003
Validity End :07:00:00 UTC Wed Aug 19 2020
Fingerprint:58 71 FB 94 55 65 D4 64 38 91 2B 00 61 E9 F8 05
Do you accept this certificate?? [yes/no]:yes
```

! The following command requests certificates for all of your RSA key pairs.

```
crypto ca enroll myca
```

```
% Start certificate enrollment ...
% Create a challenge password. You will need to verbally provide this
password to the CA Administrator in order to revoke your certificate.
% For security reasons your password will not be saved in the configuration.
% Please make a note of it.
```

Password:

Re-enter Password:

```
Fingerprint: 17D8B38D ED2BDF2E DF8ADB7F A7DBE35A
```

! The following command displays information about your certificate and the CA certificate.

```
show crypto ca certificates
```

```
Trustpoint :myca
=====
CA certificate
Serial Number :01
Subject Name :
cn=Root coax-u10 Certificate Manager,ou=HFR,o=Cisco Systems,l=San Jose,st=CA,c=US
Issued By :
cn=Root coax-u10 Certificate Manager,ou=HFR,o=Cisco Systems,l=San Jose,st=CA,c=US
Validity Start :07:00:00 UTC Tue Aug 19 2003
Validity End :07:00:00 UTC Wed Aug 19 2020
Router certificate
Key usage :General Purpose
Status :Available
Serial Number :6E
Subject Name :
unstructuredName=myrouter.mydomain.com,o=Cisco Systems
Issued By :
cn=Root coax-u10 Certificate Manager,ou=HFR,o=Cisco Systems,l=San Jose,st=CA,c=US
Validity Start :21:43:14 UTC Mon Sep 22 2003
Validity End :21:43:14 UTC Mon Sep 29 2003
CRL Distribution Point
ldap://coax-u10.cisco.com/CN=Root coax-u10 Certificate Manager,O=Cisco Systems
```

Certificate Authority Trust Pool Management

The trust pool feature is used to authenticate sessions, such as HTTPS, that occur between devices by using commonly recognized trusted agents called certificate authorities (CAs). This feature is enabled by default in the software to create a scheme to provision, store, and manage a pool of certificates from known CAs in a way similar to the services a browser provides for securing sessions. A special trusted point called a trust pool is designated, containing multiple known CA certificates from Cisco and possibly from other vendors. The trust pool consists of both built-in and downloaded CA certificates.

CA Certificate Bundling in the Trust Pool

The router uses a built-in CA certificate bundle that is packaged into the baseline image. The bundle is contained in a special certificate store called a CA trust pool, which is updated automatically by Cisco. This trust pool is known by Cisco and other vendors. A CA certificate bundle can be in the following formats:

- Privilege Management Infrastructure (PMI) certificates in Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER) binary format enveloped within a public-key cryptographic message syntax standard 7 (pkcs7).
- A file containing concatenated X.509 certificates in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format with PEM headers.

Prerequisites for CA Trust Pool Management

The use of the Certificate Authority requires that a crypto subsystem is included in the software image. Crypto is the Cisco proprietary encryption mechanism used in the Cisco software, which is available in the baseline image.

Restrictions for CA trust pool management

- Device certificates that use CA certificates cannot be enrolled in a CA trust pool.
- Starting with Cisco IOS XR software version 7.3.3, the server certificates (leaf certificates) in the router must have a Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) in the Common Name (CN) field.
- To add an IP address in the Subject Alternate Name (SAN) field of server certificates, add the extension type as IP address in the certificate. If the IP address extension type configuration isn't available, use the [crypto ca fqdn-check ip-address allow](#) command for the router to validate the IP address in the SAN field successfully.

Updating the CA Trustpool

The CA trustpool must be updated when the following conditions occur:

- A certificate in the trustpool is due to expire or has been reissued.
- The published CA certificate bundle contains additional trusted certificates that are needed by a given application.
- The configuration has been corrupted.

The CA trustpool is considered as a single entity, As such, any update you perform will replace the entire trustpool.



Note A built-in certificate in the trustpool cannot be physically replaced. However, a built-in certificate is rendered inactive after an update if its X.509 subject-name attribute matches the certificate in the CA certificate bundle.

Following are the methods available for updating the certificates in the trustpool:

- **Automatic update:** A timer is established for the trustpool that matches the CA certificate with the earliest expiration time. If the timer is running and a bundle location is not configured and not explicitly disabled, syslog warnings should be issued at reasonable intervals to alert the admin that this trustpool policy option is not set. Automatic trustpool updates use the configured URL. When the CA trustpool expires, the policy is read, the bundle is loaded, and the PKI trustpool is replaced. If the automatic CA trustpool update encounters problems when initiating, then the following schedule is used to initiate the update until the download is successful: 20 days, 15 days, 10 days, 5 days, 4 days, 3 days, 2 days, 1 day, and then once every hour.
- **Manual update:** [Manually Update Certificates in Trust Pool, on page 162](#) provides details.

Manually Update Certificates in Trust Pool

The CA trust pool feature is enabled by default and uses the built-in CA certificate bundle in the trust pool, which receives automatic updates from Cisco. Perform this task to manually update certificates in the trust pool if they are not current, are corrupt, or if certain certificates need to be updated.

Procedure

Step 1 `crypto ca trustpool import url clean`

Example:

```
Router#crypto ca trustpool import url clean
```

(Optional) Manually removes all downloaded CA certificates. This command is run in the EXEC mode.

Step 2 `crypto ca trustpool import url url`

Example:

```
Router#crypto ca trustpool import url
http://www.cisco.com/security/pki/trs/ios.p7b
```

Specify the URL from which the CA trust pool certificate bundle must be downloaded. This manually imports (downloads) the CA certificate bundle into the CA trust pool to update or replace the existing CA certificate bundle.

Step 3 `show crypto ca trustpool policy`

Example:

```
Router#show crypto ca trustpool

Trustpool: Built-In
=====
CA certificate
  Serial Number   : 5F:F8:7B:28:2B:54:DC:8D:42:A3:15:B5:68:C9:AD:FF
  Subject:
    CN=Cisco Root CA 2048,O=Cisco Systems
  Issued By      :
    CN=Cisco Root CA 2048,O=Cisco Systems
```

```

Validity Start : 20:17:12 UTC Fri May 14 2004
Validity End   : 20:25:42 UTC Mon May 14 2029
SHA1 Fingerprint:
    DE990CED99E0431F60EDC3937E7CD5BF0ED9E5FA

Trustpool: Built-In
=====
CA certificate
  Serial Number : 2E:D2:0E:73:47:D3:33:83:4B:4F:DD:0D:D7:B6:96:7E
Subject:
  CN=Cisco Root CA M1,O=Cisco
Issued By :
  CN=Cisco Root CA M1,O=Cisco
Validity Start : 20:50:24 UTC Tue Nov 18 2008
Validity End   : 21:59:46 UTC Fri Nov 18 2033
SHA1 Fingerprint:
    45AD6BB499011BB4E84E84316A81C27D89EE5CE7

```

Displays the CA trust pool certificates of the router in a verbose format.

Retrieve CRL through the HTTP Proxy Server

Table 23: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Retrieve CRL through the HTTP Proxy Server	Release 25.1.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I
Retrieve CRL through the HTTP Proxy Server	Release 24.4.1	<p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Retrieve CRL through the HTTP Proxy Server	Release 7.3.1	<p>CRL contains the serial numbers of the third-party certificates that are invalidated by the issuing Certificate Authority.</p> <p>In the event that the CRL Distribution point (CDP) is not directly reachable, you can fetch the CRL through the http proxy server using the newly introduced <code>crypto ca http-proxy</code> command.</p> <p>Command modified for this feature: <code>crypto ca crl request</code></p>

The router receives a certificate from a peer and downloads a CRL from the CA as part of certificate validation. The router then checks the CRL to make sure the certificate of the peer has not been revoked. If the certificate appears on the CRL, the router will not accept the certificate and will not authenticate the peer.

A CRL can be reused with the same certificate multiple times until the CRL expires.

If the router receives the certificate of a peer after the applicable CRL has expired, the router downloads the new CRL.

If the CRL Distribution point (CDP) is not directly reachable, you can obtain the CRL through the http proxy server using this feature.

Configuration Example

This example shows how to retrieve CRL through the http proxy server using the `crypto ca http-proxy` command for smart licensing:

```
<!---Enabling the Router to use HTTP Proxy Server to Retrieve CRL---!>

Router# config
Router(config)# crypto ca http-proxy 10.10.10.1 port 1
Router(config)# commit

<!---Registering the Router with a Token on the Smart Licensing Server---!>

Router# license smart register idtoken NWRkMTJjZjYtMzJhNi00YzYxLWI3M$
Router# commit
```

Verification

Smart licensing registration is validated by fetching the CRL from the CDP, through the http proxy server. If the validation is successful, then the `show crypto ca crls` command displays the CRLs. If the validation has failed, then the `show crypto ca crls` command displays no output.

This example shows how to verify the retrieved CRL and the license status:

```
<!---Verifying the Retrieved CRLs---!>

Router#show crypto ca crls
Thu Jun  6 13:43:00.763 UTC
CRL Entry
```

```

=====
Issuer : CN=xyz-w2k Root CA 2,O=xyz Limited,C=BM
Last Update : Dec 17 18:18:14 2018 GMT
Next Update : Jun 15 18:18:14 2019 GMT
CRL Distribution Point :
      http://xyz-w2k.cisco.com/CertEnroll/xyz-w2k-root.crl
CRL Entry
=====
Issuer : CN=zxy-w2k SSL ICA G2,O=zxy,C=US
Last Update : Jun  6 12:57:04 2019 GMT
Next Update : Jun  9 12:57:04 2019 GMT
CRL Distribution Point :
      http://zxy-w2k.cisco.com/CertEnroll/zxy-w2k-root.crl
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#

```

<!---Verifying the License Status----!>

```

Router#show license status
Smart Licensing is ENABLED
Utility:
  Status: DISABLED
Data Privacy:
  Sending Hostname: yes
    Callhome hostname privacy: DISABLED
    Smart Licensing hostname privacy: DISABLED
  Version privacy: DISABLED
Transport:
  Type: Callhome
Registration:
  Status: REGISTERED
  Smart Account: BU Production Test 1
  Virtual Account:
  Export-Controlled Functionality: ALLOWED
  Initial Registration: SUCCEEDED on Jun 06 2019 13:42:46 UTC
  Last Renewal Attempt: None
  Next Renewal Attempt: Dec 03 2019 13:42:46 UTC
  Registration Expires: Jun 05 2020 13:37:45 UTC
License Authorization:
  Status: AUTHORIZED on Jun 06 2019 13:42:55 UTC
  Last Communication Attempt: SUCCEEDED on Jun 06 2019 13:42:55 UTC
  Next Communication Attempt: Jul 06 2019 13:42:54 UTC
  Communication Deadline: Sep 04 2019 13:37:55 UTC

Export Authorization Key:
Features Authorized:
  <none>

```



Note If you want to fetch the latest CRL from a specific CDP, use the **crypto ca crl request** *<cdp-url>* [**http-proxy** *<ip-address>* **port** *<port-number>*] **command.**

Configuring Optional Trustpool Policy Parameters

Procedure

Step 1 configure

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 crypto ca trustpool policy**Example:**

```
Router(config)#crypto ca trustpool policy
Router(config-trustpool)#
```

Enters ca-trustpool configuration mode where commands can be accessed to configure CA trustpool policy parameters.

Step 3 cabundle url URL**Example:**

```
Router(config-trustpool)#cabundle url
http://www.cisco.com/security/pki/crl/crca2048.crl
```

Specifies the URL from which the CA trustpool certificate bundle is downloaded.

Step 4 crl optional**Example:**

```
Router(config-trustpool)#crl optional
```

Disables revocation checking when the trustpool policy is being used. By default, the router enforces a check of the revocation status of the certificate by querying the certificate revocation list (CRL).

Step 5 description LINE**Example:**

```
Router(config-trustpool)#description Trustpool for Test.
```

Handling of CA Certificates appearing both in Trust Pool and Trust Point

There may be cases where a CA resides in both the trust pool and a trust point; for example, a trust point is using a CA and a CA bundle is downloaded later with this same CA inside. In this scenario, the CA in the trust point and its policy is considered, before the CA in the trust pool or trust pool policy to ensure that any current behavior is not altered when the trust pool feature is implemented on the router.

The policy indicates how the security appliance obtains the CA certificate and the authentication policies for user certificates issued by the CA.

Expiry Notification for PKI Certificate

The section provides information about the notification mechanism using SNMP trap and syslog messages when a public key infrastructure (PKI) certificate is approaching its expiry date.

Learn About the PKI Alert Notification

Security is critical and availability of certificates for applications is vital for authenticating the router. If the certificate expires, they become invalid and impacts services like Crosswork Trust Insights, Internet Key Exchange version 2, dot1x, and so on.

What if there is a mechanism to alert the user about the expiry date of the certificate?

IOS -XR provides a mechanism by which a CA client sends a notification to a syslog server when certificates are on the verge of expiry. Alert notifications are sent either through the syslog server or Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) traps.

PKI traps retrieves the certificate information of the devices in the network. The device sends SNMP traps at regular intervals to the network management system (NMS) based on the threshold configured in the device.

An SNMP trap (certificate expiry notification) is sent to the SNMP server at regular intervals starting from 60 days to one week before the certificate end date. The notifications are sent at the following intervals:

The notifications are sent at the following intervals:

| Intervals | Description | Notification Mode |
|------------------------|---|--|
| First notification | The notification is sent 60 days before the expiry of the certificate. | The notification are in a warning mode. |
| Repeated notifications | The repeated notification is sent every week, until a week before the expiry of the certificate.

The notifications are in a warning mode when the certificate is valid for more than a week. | The notifications are in a warning mode when the certificate is valid for more than a week. |
| Last notification | The notifications are sent every day until the certificate expiry date. | The notifications are in an alert mode when the validity of a certificate is less than a week. |

The notifications include the following information:

- Certificate serial number
- Certificate issuer name
- Trustpoint name
- Certificate type
- Number of days remaining for the certificate to expire
- Certificate subject name

The following is a syslog message that is displayed on the device:

```
%SECURITY-CEPKI-1-CERT_EXPIRING_ALERT : Certificate expiring WITHIN A WEEK.
Trustpoint Name= check, Certificate Type= ID, Serial Number= 02:EC,
Issuer Name= CN=cacert,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN, Subject name= CN=cisco.com,
Time Left= 1 days, 23 hours, 59 minutes, 41 seconds
```

Restrictions for PKI Credentials Expiry Alerts

Alerts are not sent for the following certificates:

- Secure Unique Device Identifier (SUDI) certificates
- Certificates that belong to a trustpool. Trustpools have their own expiry alerts mechanism
- Trustpoint clones
- CA certificates that do not have a router certificate associated with it.
- Certificates with key usage keys

Restrictions for PKI Credentials Expiry Alerts

This feature cannot be disabled and requires no additional configuration tasks.

To enable PKI traps, use the **snmp-server traps pki** command. If SNMP is configured, the SNMP trap is configured in the same PKI expiry timer.

```
Router(config)# snmp-server traps pki
Router(config)# commit
```

Verification

This example shows sample output from the show running-config command.

```
Router# show runn snmp-server traps
snmp-server traps pki
```

What's Next: See [Regenerate the Certificate, on page 168](#).

Regenerate the Certificate

The certificate becomes invalid once expired. When you see the certificate expiry notification, we recommend you to regenerate the certificate, as soon as possible.

Perform the following steps, to regenerate the certificates:

1. Clear the existing certificate using the following command:

```
Router# clear crypto ca certificates [trustpoint-name]
```

For example,

```
Router# clear crypto ca certificates myca
```

2. We recommend you to regenerate a new keypair for the label configured under the trustpoint-name. The new keypair overwrites the old key pair.

```
Router# crypto key generate rsa [keypair-label]
```

For example,

```
Router# crypto key generate rsa mykey
The name for the keys will be: mykey
% You already have keys defined for mykey
Do you really want to replace them? [yes/no]: yes
  Choose the size of the key modulus in the range of 512 to 4096 for your General Purpose
  Keypair. Choosing a key modulus greater than 512 may take a few minutes.

How many bits in the modulus [2048]:
```

```

Generating RSA keys ...
Done w/ crypto generate keypair
[OK]The name for the keys will be: mykey
% You already have keys defined for mykey
Do you really want to replace them? [yes/no]: yes
  Choose the size of the key modulus in the range of 512 to 4096 for your General Purpose
  Keypair. Choosing a key modulus greater than 512 may take a few minutes.

How many bits in the modulus [2048]:
Generating RSA keys ...
Done w/ crypto generate keypair
[OK]

```

3. Reenroll the certificate using the following command. For more information, see [Request Your Own Certificates, on page 155](#).

```

Router# crypto ca authenticate [trustpoint-name]
Router# crypto ca enroll [trustpoint-name]

```

For example,

```

Router# crypto ca authenticate myca
Router# crypto ca enroll myca

```

Automatic renewal of PKI certificate

Table 24: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|--|
| Automatic renewal of Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) certificate | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |

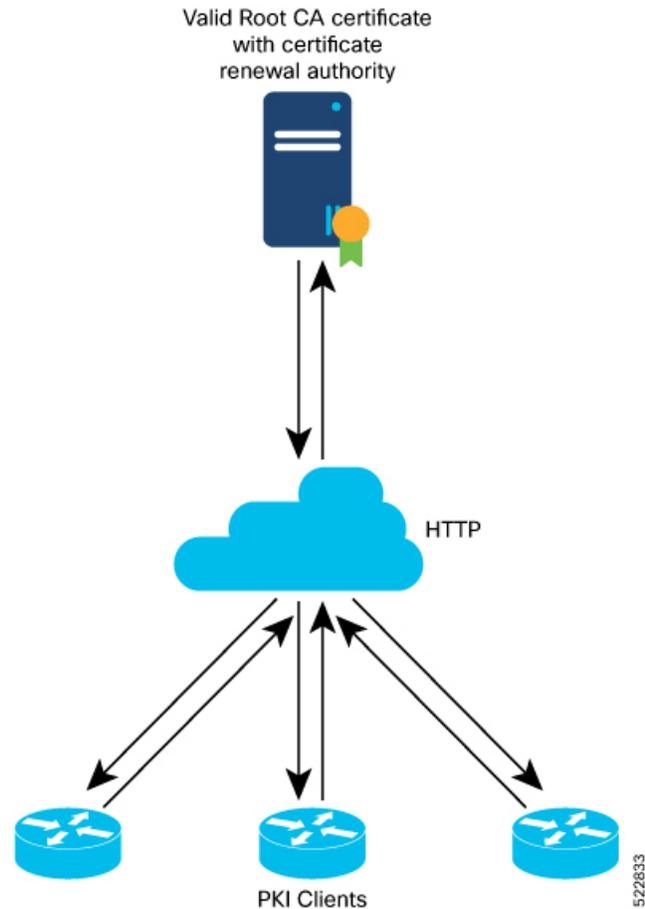
| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|---|
| Automatic renewal of Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) certificate | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |
| Automatic renewal of Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) certificate | Release 7.5.3 | <p>You can now enable the router to renew the PKI certificate from the Certificate Authority (CA) by configuring the percentage of the certificate validity, after which the router requests a new certificate from the CA, and the CA authorizes it before certification expiration. This feature eliminates the previously needed manual efforts of certification renewal and avoids interruptions such as MACsec session flaps due to certificate expiry and so on.</p> <p>This feature introduces the following commands:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • auto-enroll • renewal-message-type |

The public key infrastructure (PKI) controls the digital certificates that protect the sensitive information flowing through a network to provide secure end-to-end communication. The PKI encrypts and decrypts data using a public key and a private key pair that it generates. A PKI (digital) certificate is a digital entity used to authenticate the identity of a router. These PKI certificates often have a short validity time and would need manual efforts from the network operators to replace them in time.

With automatic renewal of PKI certificate, the router has an ability to automatically renew the PKI certificate when it is approaching its expiry date. Here, you can configure a timeline for the PKI certificate renewal. You can specify the percentage of certificate validity, after which you would prefer the router to request a new certificate from the CA server. This timeline for auto-renewal of the PKI certificate is called auto-enroll. When a router with auto-enroll configured completes the said period, the router will generate a certificate signing request and sends the request to the CA using Simple Certificate Management Protocol (SCMP). The CA

server will immediately create a newly signed certificate and ensures that it replaces the old certificate in the router. This way, automatic renewal of the PKI certificate before expiry avoids any interruptions to data flowing through the network.

Figure 8: Automatic renewal of Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) certificate



Pre-requisites

- Ensure that the CA has a valid certificate.
- Make sure that the CA possess certificate renewal capability.
- You must configure a trustpoint in the router. Configure the trustpoint using [crypto ca trustpoint](#) command.



Note A trustpoint should be authenticated before any enrolment. The trustpoint is authenticated when it has a CA certificate, and it is enrolled when it has a router certificate.

- The communication between the PKI Client and CA server should be over HTTP protocol. That is, the enrollment url for CA server should a HTTP url.

Configuration Guidelines

- The PKI certificates are signed using the RSA algorithm only.
- If you configure the auto-enroll option under trustpoint after the renew timer for a PKI certificate has started, then such configuration will only apply to the next renewal cycle and not the current one. The same condition applies while configuring the **no auto-enroll** option as well.
- The auto-enroll percentage may range between 1 and 99.
- The certificate renewal process requires the serial number and IP address values in the trustpoint. If these values are readily available under the trustpoint, the renewal process obtains it from there. If not, the router CLI requests you to configure these values during trustpoint enrollment.
- By default, the PKI uses PKCS requests for automatic certification renewal. You can also configure the router to use the Renewal request by executing the **renewal-message-type renewalreq** command.
- If the CA server is unable to address the certificate renewal requests, it requests the router to poll the renewal request. In such scenarios, by default, the router retries for 10 minutes with a gap of 1 minute between each request if a certificate renewal attempt fails. You can also configure these values using the **enrollment retry count** and **enrollment retry period** commands.

Configuration Example

Configuration

Configuring this feature using the CLI:

```
Router# configure
Router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint test
Router(config-trustp)# enrollment url http://frog.phoobin.com
Router(config-trustp)# subject-name OU=Spiral Dept., O=tiedye.com
Router(config-trustp)# auto-enroll 30
Router(config-trustp)# commit
```

To disable this feature, execute the following:

```
Router# configure
Router(config)# no auto-enroll
Router(config-trustp)# commit
```

Running configuration

```
Router# show running-config crypto ca trustpoint test
crypto ca trustpoint test
  enrollment url http://frog.phoobin.com
  auto-enroll 30
!
```

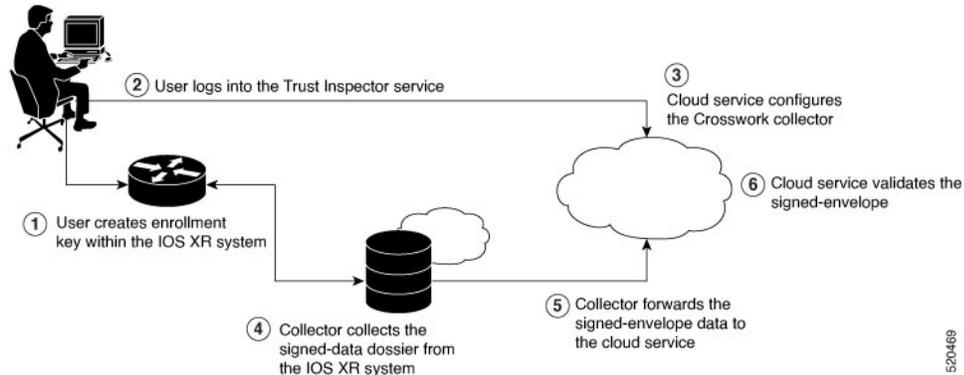
Integrating Cisco IOS XR and Crosswork Trust Insights

The Cisco IOS XR Software provides you the infrastructure to enroll and share the signed-data with Cisco Crosswork cloud infrastructure and applications. The [Cisco Crosswork Trust Insights](#) is a cloud-based Software as a service (SaaS) that provides signed and encrypted system integrity information to track the trust posture of network hardware and software components. For details, see [Cisco Crosswork Trust Insights Data Sheet](#).

Integrating IOS XR and Crosswork Trust Insights include these main processes:

- System enrollment – Enrolling a Cisco IOS XR platform into Crosswork cloud infrastructure.
- Signed-data sharing – Sharing the data for infrastructure trust analysis between the systems that run IOS XR and Crosswork. This involves collecting the signed-data dossier, that is, signed-data that is needed for infrastructure trust inspection service.

Workflow



The following steps depict the workflow of Cisco IOS XR and Crosswork Trust Insights integration:

1. As part of the enrollment process, the user generates new key pair and trust root within the IOS XR system by using the IOS XR commands.
2. The user logs into the Trust Inspector service, and enters the enrollment workflow in the enrollment dialog to create a new device ID. The user must provide the management IP address, login credentials and certificate root to the Trust Inspector service.
3. The Trust Inspector service configures the Crosswork collector to log in to the router, and to pull the data that is pushed down from the cloud to the collector.
4. The Crosswork collector begins a periodic polling cycle and executes a command to generate a signed-information dossier from each IOS XR instance that is being polled.
5. The collector forwards the signed-envelope data to the cloud service for validation.
6. The cloud service validates signed-envelope against the enrolled certificate or trust chain.

How to Integrate Cisco IOS XR and Crosswork Trust Insights

Integrating Cisco IOS XR and Crosswork Trust Insights involve these main tasks for system enrollment and data-signing:

- [Generate Key Pair, on page 175](#)
- [Generate System Trust Point for the Leaf and Root Certificate, on page 178](#)
- [Generate Root and Leaf Certificates, on page 179](#)
- [System Certificates Expiry, on page 180](#)
- [Collect Data Dossier, on page 181](#)

Prerequisites

Before you begin, you must check [here](#) for any available IOS XR Software Maintenance Updates (SMUs) specific to Crosswork Trust Insights. For information related to SMUs, see [Cisco IOS XR Release Notes](#).

You must ensure that the below configurations are present on the IOS XR device, before starting IOS XR and Crossworks Trust Insights integration.

- User authorization required to collect the signed-data dossier
- SSH server configuration
- Netconf server configuration
- Domain name configuration, which is required for certification enrollment

The sections given below lists the configuration example for the prerequisites.

Configuration Example for User Authorization

You must have the required user access privileges in order to collect the data dossier from the system. This is defined in terms of IOS XR Task IDs for each command.

For the respective Task ID applicable for each data dossier option and for the signed-envelope, see the Task ID section in the Command Reference page of **show platform security integrity dossier** command and **utility sign** command.



Note We recommend that you use the **task execute dossier** to configure a CTI (customer-define) user, who collects dossier from the system.

Listed below are the configurations to set up a user with sufficient authorization to collect all the signed-data dossier. You can configure customized task groups, then associate those task groups with user groups, and finally associate the user groups with the user.

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#taskgroup alltasks-dossier
Router(config-tg)#task read sysmgr
Router(config-tg)#task read system
Router(config-tg)#task read pkg-mgmt
Router(config-tg)#task read basic-services
Router(config-tg)#task read config-services
Router(config-tg)#task execute dossier
Router(config-tg)#commit
```

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#usergroup dossier-group
Router(config-ug)#taskgroup alltasks-dossier
Router(config-ug)#commit
```

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#username dossier-user
Router(config-un)#group dossier-group
Router(config-un)#commit
```

Configuration Example for for SSH and Netconf

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#ssh server v2
Router(config)#ssh server vrf default
```

```

Router(config)#ssh server netconf vrf default
Router(config)#netconf-yang agent
Router(config-ncy-agent)#ssh
Router(config-ncy-agent)#exit
Router(config)#domain name example.com
Router(config)#commit

```

Running Configuration

```

ssh server v2
ssh server vrf default
ssh server netconf vrf default
!
netconf-yang agent
  ssh
!
domain name example.com

```

While the dossier is collected from a device through SSH, the SSH session might timeout. Also, multiple sessions to a device can result in the denial of some SSH sessions. To avoid such occurrence, the following configuration is recommended on the device:

```

Router#configure
Router(config)#ssh server rate-limit 600
Router(config)#line default
Router(config-line)#exec-timeout 0 0
Router(config-line)#session-timeout 0
Router(config-line)#commit

```

Running Configuration

```

ssh server rate-limit 600
!
line default
  exec-timeout 0 0
  session-timeout 0
!

```

Generate Key Pair

To enroll a system running Cisco IOS XR software, you must generate the key and the certificate for both the leaf and the root node. The system supports a two tier self-signed certificate chain for the enrollment key to support re-keying without re-enrollment of the certificate with the Crossworks service.

You can use the **system-root-key** and **system-enroll-key** options in the **crypto key generate** command to generate the root key and the enrollment key respectively, for all the hashing algorithms. You can do this for hashing algorithms such as RSA, DSA or ECDSA (including ECDSA nistp384 and ECDSA nistp521).

To delete the RSA keys, use the no form: **no crypto key generate rsa**

The details of RSA and DSA keys are displayed in the running configuration.

Starting with Cisco IOS XR Release 26.1.1, the default RSA key size is 3072 bits; any smaller key is considered weak, triggering a syslog warning during system boot. This enhancement ensures compliance with current cryptographic security standards and enhance device protection against emerging threats.

Example of generating key pair

Key pair generation for root:

```
Router#crypto key generate rsa system-root-key

Sun Oct 20 13:05:26.657 UTC
The name for the keys will be: system-root-key
Choose the size of the key modulus in the range of 512 to 4096 for your General Purpose
Keypair. Choosing a key modulus greater than 512 may take a few minutes.
How many bits in the modulus 3072:
Generating RSA keys ...
Done w/ crypto generate keypair
[OK]
```

Key pair generation for leaf:

```
Router#crypto key generate rsa system-enroll-key

Sun Oct 20 13:05:40.370 UTC
The name for the keys will be: system-enroll-key
Choose the size of the key modulus in the range of 512 to 4096 for your General Purpose
Keypair. Choosing a key modulus greater than 512 may take a few minutes.
How many bits in the modulus 3072:
Generating RSA keys ...
Done w/ crypto generate keypair
[OK]
```

Verification

You can use the **show crypto key mypubkey rsa** command to verify the above key pair generation.

```
Router#show crypto key mypubkey rsa | begin system-

Fri Mar 27 14:00:20.954 IST
Key label: system-root-key
Type      : RSA General purpose
Size      : 3072
Created   : 01:13:10 IST Thu Feb 06 2025
Data      :
30820122 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 01050003 82010F00 3082010A 02820101
00A93DE0 1E485EE3 0E7F0964 C48361D1 B6014BE7 A303D8D6 F7790E92 88E69C4B
B97B7A9C D1B277E3 1569093C 82BD3258 7F67FB49 94860ECD 34498F1F 59B45757
F32C8E8F 7CEE23EC C36A43D1 9F85C0D9 B96A14DD DD3BBD4C A1FB0888 EED210A7
39D9A403 7ACE0F6E 39107226 CA621AD8 6E8102CA 9761B86F D33F2871 9DD16559
AFCB4729 EFCEDBAF 83DF76E4 9A439844 EE3B1180 4022F575 99E11A2C E25BB23D
9DD74C81 4E5C1345 D9E3CC79 1B98B1AA 6C06F004 22B901EC 36C099FE 10DE2622
EB7CE618 9A555769 12D94C90 D9BEE5EA A664E7F6 4DF8D8D4 FE7EAB07 1EF4FEAB
22D9E55F 62BA66A0 72153CEC 81F2639F B5F2B5C5 25E10364 19387C6B E8DB8990
11020301 0001

Key label: system-enroll-key
Type      : RSA General purpose
Size      : 3072
Created   : 01:13:16 IST Thu Feb 06 2025
Data      :
30820122 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 01050003 82010F00 3082010A 02820101
009DBC14 C83604E4 EB3D3CF8 5BA7FDDB 80F7E85B 427332D8 BBF80148 F0A9C281
49F87D5C 0CEBA532 EBE797C5 7F174C69 0735D13A 493670CB 63B04A12 4BCA7134
EE0031E9 047CAA1E 802030C5 6071E8C2 F8ECE002 CC3B54E7 5FD24E5C 61B7B7B0
```

```

68FA2EFA 0B83799F 77AE4621 435D9DFF 1D713108 37B614D3 255020F9 09CD32E8
82B07CD7 01A53896 6DD92B5D 5119597C 98D394E9 DBD1ABAF 6DE949FE 4A8BF1E7
851EB3F4 60B1114A 1456723E 063E50C4 2D410906 BDB7590B F1D58480 F3FA911A
6C9CD02A 58E68D04 E94C098F 0F0E81DB 76B40C55 64603499 2AC0547A D652412A
BCBBF69F 76B351EE 9B2DF79D E490C0F6 92D1BB97 B905F33B FAB53C20 DDE2BB22
C7020301 0001

```

You can also view the RSA keys in the running configuration. The keys in the following example are in OpenSSL format:



Note Only those keys that are generated in the `config` mode are visible in the running configuration.

```

Router(config)#crypto key generate rsa test
Router(config)#commit
Thu May 12 08:37:59.894 UTC
Router(config)#end
Router#show running-config
Thu May 12 08:38:04.244 UTC
Building configuration...
!! IOS XR Configuration 7.3.4
!! Last configuration change at Thu May 12 08:37:59 2025 by cisco
!
username cisco
  group root-lr
  group cisco-support
  secret 10
$6$8zR0nTbkA7Aln...$0Kn.YxNnmhlcXo9cEvEwLGAff.rEOTycjsizI/TLBz9WcQX.mmxVwkNgTKAnROUGPtBVlQ/Ndew8gEREXJ7mI0
!
call-home
  service active
  contact smart-licensing
  profile CiscoTAC-1
    active
  destination transport-method http
!
!
interface MgmtEth0/RSP0/CPU0/0
  shutdown
!
crypto key generate rsa test general-keys 3072 | -----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
MIIBIDANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ0AMIIBCACQAEAgIXFnld/AADcil6eV38A
AI1lxZ5XfwAAcJb6e1d/AAA7du+AAAAAI6Qs47BQLhIVQAAAAAAAAAAWQDQVn8A
ANyKXp5XfwAAKAAAAAAAAACaNCwE38AANyKXp5XfwAAmjXFnlD/AADcil6eV38A
AJolxZ5XfwAAAO3bvgAAAAABVAAAAAAAAABBEANBfwAA3Ipenld/AAAgAAAAAAAA
AI8lxZ5XfwAA3Ipenld/AACPJcWeV38AAHhZANBfwAAAO3bvgAAAADUTNDpQMWp
UUUAAAAAAAAAAkBCa0FZ/AADcil6eV38AABgAAAAAAAAAAiSXFnlD/AADcil6eV38A
AAIBAA==
-----END PUBLIC KEY-----
|
end

```

Associated Commands

- `crypto key generate dsa`
- `crypto key generate ecdsa`
- `crypto key generate rsa`

- `show crypto key mypubkey dsa`
- `show crypto key mypubkey ecdsa`
- `show crypto key mypubkey rsa`

Generate System Trust Point for the Leaf and Root Certificate

You must configure these steps to generate the system trust point for the root and the leaf certificate:

Configuration Example

```
Router#config
Router(config)#domain name domain1
Router(config)#crypto ca trustpoint system-trustpoint
Router(config)#keypair rsa system-enroll-key
Router(config)#ca-keypair rsa system-root-key
Router(config)#subject-name CN=lab1-ads,C=US,ST=CA,L=San Jose,O=cisco systems,OU=ASR
Router(config)#subject-name ca-certificate CN=lab1-ca,C=US,ST=CA,L=San Jose,O=cisco
systems,OU=ASR
Router(config)#enrollment url self
Router(config)#key-usage certificate digitalsignature keyagreement dataencipherment
Router(config)#lifetime certificate 300
Router(config)#message-digest sha256
Router(config)#key-usage ca-certificate digitalsignature keycertsign crlsign
Router(config)#lifetime ca-certificate 367
Router(config)#commit
```

Running Configuration

```
config
domain name domain1
crypto ca trustpoint system-trustpoint
keypair rsa system-enroll-key
ca-keypair rsa system-root-key
subject-name CN=lab1-ads,C=US,ST=CA,L=San Jose,O=cisco systems,OU=ASR
subject-name ca-certificate CN=lab1-ca,C=US,ST=CA,L=San Jose,O=cisco systems,OU=ASR
enrollment url self
key-usage certificate digitalsignature keyagreement dataencipherment
lifetime certificate 300
message-digest sha256
key-usage ca-certificate digitalsignature keycertsign crlsign
lifetime ca-certificate 367
!
```

Associated Commands

- `ca-keypair`
- `crypto ca trustpoint`
- `domain`
- `enrollment`
- `key-usage`
- `key-pair`
- `lifetime`

- message-digest
- subject-name

Generate Root and Leaf Certificates

You must perform these steps to generate the root and the leaf certificates.

The root certificate is self-signed. The root certificate signs the leaf certificate.

Example of Generating Root Certificate

```
Router#crypto ca authenticate system-trustpoint

Sun Oct 20 13:07:24.136 UTC
% The subject name in the certificate will include: CN=lab1
ca,C=US,ST=CA,L=San Jose,O=cisco systems,OU=ASR
% The subject name in the certificate will include: ios.cisco.com
Serial Number   : 0B:62
Subject:
serialNumber=c44a11fc,unstructuredName=ios.cisco.com,OU=ASR,O=cisco systems,L=San
Jose,ST=CA,C=US,CN=lab1-ca
Issued By       :
                serialNumber=c44a11fc,unstructuredName=ios.cisco.com,OU=ASR,O=cisco systems,L=San
Jose,ST=CA,C=US,CN=lab1-ca
Validity Start  : 13:07:26 UTC Sun Oct 20 2019
Validity End    : 13:07:26 UTC Wed Oct 21 2020
SHA1 Fingerprint:
                9DD50A6B24FEB1DDEE40CD2B4D99A829F260967
```

Example of Generating Leaf Certificate

```
Router#crypto ca enroll system-trustpoint

Sun Oct 20 13:07:45.593 UTC
% The subject name in the certificate will include: CN=lab1-ads,C=US,ST=CA,L=San Jose,O=cisco
systems,OU=ASR
% The subject name in the certificate will include: ios.cisco.com
% Include the router serial number in the subject name? [yes/no]: yes
% The serial number in the certificate will be: c44a11fc
% Include an IP address in the subject name? [yes/no]: no
Certificate keypair configured Type: 1, Label: system-enroll-key.Leaf cert key usage string:
critical,digitalSignature,keyEncipherment,keyAgreement. Serial Number   : 0B:63
Subject:
serialNumber=c44a11fc,unstructuredName=ios.cisco.com,OU=ASR,O=cisco systems,L=San
Jose,ST=CA,C=US,CN=lab1-ads
Issued By       :
                serialNumber=c44a11fc,unstructuredName=ios.cisco.com,OU=ASR,O=cisco systems,L=San
Jose,ST=CA,C=US,CN=lab1-ca
Validity Start  : 13:07:47 UTC Sun Oct 20 2019
Validity End    : 13:07:47 UTC Sat Aug 15 2020
SHA1 Fingerprint:
                19D4C40F9EFF8FF25B59DE0161BA6C0706DC9E3A
```

Verification

You can use the **show crypto ca certificates system-trustpoint [detail]** command to see the details of generated root and leaf certificates:

```

Router#show crypto ca certificates system-trustpoint
Fri Mar 27 14:00:51.037 IST

Trustpoint      : system-trustpoint
=====
CA certificate
Serial Number  : 10:B5
Subject:
    serialNumber=7b20faa4,unstructuredName=test-secl.cisco.com
Issued By      :
    serialNumber=7b20faa4,unstructuredName=test-secl.cisco.com
Validity Start : 12:30:17 UTC Fri Feb 21 2020
Validity End   : 12:30:17 UTC Sat Feb 20 2021
SHA1 Fingerprint:
    9400A30816805219FAAA5B9C86C214E6F34CEF7B
Router certificate
Key usage      : General Purpose
Status         : Available
Serial Number  : 10:B6
Subject:

serialNumber=7b20faa4,unstructuredAddress=10.1.1.1,unstructuredName=test-secl.cisco.com,CN=Anetwork,OU=IT,O=Spark
Network,L=Rotterdam,ST=Zuid Holland,C=NL
Issued By      :
    serialNumber=7b20faa4,unstructuredName=test-secl.cisco.com
Validity Start : 12:30:31 UTC Fri Feb 21 2020
Validity End   : 12:30:31 UTC Sat Feb 20 2021
SHA1 Fingerprint:
    21ACDD5EB6E6F4103E02C1BAB107AD86DDCDD1F3
Associated Trustpoint: system-trustpoint

```

Associated Commands

- **crypto ca authenticate**
- **crypto ca enroll**
- **show crypto ca certificates system-trustpoint**

System Certificates Expiry

You need to regenerate the certificate, before it expires. IOS -XR provides a mechanism by which a CA client sends a notification to a syslog server when certificates are on the verge of expiry. For more information see [Learn About the PKI Alert Notification, on page 167](#).

When you see the certificate expiry notification, we recommend you to regenerate the certificate, see [Regenerate the Certificate, on page 168](#).

The following example shows how to regenerate the certificate.

```

Router# clear crypto ca certificates system-trustpoint
Router# crypto ca authenticate system-trustpoint
Router# crypto ca enroll system-trustpoint

```

Collect Data Dossier

Table 25: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Description |
|------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Collect Filesystem Inventory | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| Collect Filesystem Inventory | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |
| Collect Filesystem Inventory | Release 7.3.1 | <p>With this feature, a snapshot of the filesystem metadata such as when the file was created, modified, or accessed is collected at each configured interval.</p> <p>In addition to displaying the changes that the file underwent as compared to the previous snapshot, the inventory helps in maintaining data integrity of all the files in the system.</p> |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Description |
|------------------|---------------------|--|
| IMA Optimization | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| IMA Optimization | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |
| IMA Optimization | Release 7.3.1 | <p>Integrity Measurement Architecture (IMA) is a Linux-based utility that attests and appraises the integrity of a system security, at runtime. In this release, IMA introduces the following IMA optimization aspects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Incremental IMA that collects IMA events selectively and progressively instead of collecting all the IMA events at the same time. You can define the start of an IMA sequence, which consists of start event, start sequence number, and start time. • SUDI Signature - provides the hardware root of trust to the dossier that is collected by the system. |

The Cisco IOS XR Software provides a data dossier command, **show platform security integrity dossier**, that helps in collecting the data from various IOS XR components. The output is presented in JSON format.

You can choose various selectors for this command as given below :

```
Router#show platform security integrity dossier include packages reboot-history
rollback-history system-integrity-snapshot system-inventory nonce 1580 | utility sign nonce
1580 include-certificate
```

Create Signed-Envelope

To verify the data integrity and authenticity of the data dossier output, a signature is added to the output data. To enable this feature, you can use the **utility sign** command along with the **show platform security integrity dossier** command. The output is presented in JSON format.

This **utility sign** can also be used with any of the IOS XR commands.



Note The Secure Unique Device Identifier or SUDI signature provides the hardware root of trust to the dossier that is collected by the system.

Verification Example

```
Router#show platform security integrity dossier nonce 1234 include reboot-history
Thu Feb 27 22:20:57.542 IST
{"collection-start-time":158282257.6049321,"model-name":"http://cisco.com/rs/jag/Cisco-IO-IR-are","model-revision":"2019-09-05","license-udi":{"result-code":
"Success", "license-udi": "UDI: PID:NCS-5501-SE,SN:FOC2107R0ZB\n"},"version":{"result-code":
"Success", "version": "Cisco IOS XR Software, Version 7.0.12\nCopyright (c) 2013-2020 by
Cisco Systems, Inc.\n\nBuild Information:\n Built By      : user1\n Built On       : Mon Jan
27 01:36:26 PST 2020\n Built Host    : iox-lnx-076\n Workspace     : /auto/srca
rchive15/prod/7.0.12/cisco8000/ws\n Version      : 7.0.12\n Location       :
/opt/cisco/XR/packages/\n Label        : 7.0.12\nncisco NCS-5500 () processor\nSystem
uptime is 4 days 10 hours 12 minutes\n\n"},"platform":{"result-code":"Success", "platform":
{"Node      Type      State      Config
state\n-----\n\n0/RP0/CPU0
NCS-5501-SE(Active)      IOS XR RUN      NSHUT\n0/RP0/NPU0      Slice
UP      \n0/FT0      NCS-1RU-FAN-FW      OPERATIONAL
NSHUT\n0/FT1      NCS-1RU-FAN-FW      OPERATIONAL      NSHUT\n0/PM0
NCS-1100W-ACFW      FAILED      NSHUT\n0/PM1
NCS-1100W-ACFW      OPERATIONAL
NSHUT\n0/FT1","reboot-history":{"result-code":"Success","model-name":"Cisco-IO-IR-linx-os-reboot-history-qa","model-revision":"2019-04-05","node":{"node-name":
"0/RP0/CPU0", "reboot-history": [{"reason": "
User initiated graceful reload", "time": "Wed Feb 19 15:25:11 2020", "cause-code": 1, "no":
1}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN", "time": "Wed Feb 19 16:38:00 2020", "cause-code": 37, "no":
2}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN", "time": "Wed Feb 19 19:06:27 2020", "cause-code": 37, "no":
3}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN", "time": "Thu Feb 20 11:50:50 2020", "cause-code": 37, "no":
4}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN", "time": "Fri Feb 21 10:54:09 2020", "cause-code": 37, "no":
5}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN", "time": "Fri Feb 21
19:00:10 2020", "cause-code": 37, "no": 6}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN", "time": "Sun Feb
23 12:05:25 2020", "cause-code": 37, "no": 7}}], {"node-name": "0/0/CPU0", "reboot-history":
[{"reason": "Reboot triggered by install", "time": "Tue Feb 4 19:59:23 2020", "cause-code":
36, "no": 1}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN", "time": "Tue Feb 4 20:12:06 2020", "cause-code":
37, "no": 2}, {"reason": "Headless SDR", "time": "Sun Feb 9 17:45:25 2020", "cause-code":
671088647, "no": 3}, {"reason": "User initiated graceful reload", "time": "Sun Feb 9
17:45:29 2020", "cause-code": 241, "no": 4}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN", "time": "Sun Feb
```

```

9 18:28:25 2020", "cause-code": 37, "no": 5}, {"reason": "Headless SDR", "time": "Sun Feb
9 19:01:55 2020", "cause-code": 671088647, "no": 6}, {"reason": "Headless SDR", "time":
"Wed Feb 19 15:25:19 2020", "cause-code": 671088647, "no": 7}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN",
"time": "Wed Feb 19 16:37:46 2020", "cause-code": 37, "no": 8}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN",
"time": "Wed Feb 19 19:06:1
4 2020", "cause-code": 37, "no": 9}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN", "time": "Thu Feb 20 11:50:37
2020", "cause-code": 37, "no": 10}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN", "time": "Fri Feb 21 10:54:01
2020", "cause-code": 37, "no": 11}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN", "time": "Fri Feb 21 18:59:57
2020", "cause-code": 37, "no": 12}, {"reason": "CARD_SHUTDOWN", "time": "Sun Feb 23 12:05:12
2020", "cause-code": 37, "no": 13}}]}}, "collection-end-time":1582822260.296664}
Router#

```

Collect Filesystem Inventory

The metadata of the filesystem can be collected using data dossier. The metadata of the file includes information about time the file was created, last accessed, last modified and so on. A snapshot is captured at each configured interval. The initial snapshot shows a complete snapshot of all files in the filesystem. The files are scanned periodically and new inventory data is collected and stored as incremental snapshots.

To enable this feature, use the **filesystem-inventory** command.

```

Router(config)#filesystem-inventory
Router(config-filesystem-inventory)#snapshot-interval 2
Router(config-filesystem-inventory)#commit

```

The `snapshot-interval` is the time interval in 15-minute blocks. The interval ranges 1–96. For example, value of 2 indicates that a snapshot interval is collected every 30 minutes. The snapshots are stored in `in/misc/scratch/filesysinv`. The logs are stored in `/var/log/iosxr/filesysinv/*`.

To retrieve the filesystem inventory, use the following dossier command. Output is presented in JSON format.

```

show platform security integrity dossier include filesystem-inventory | file
<platform>-parent.json

{"collection-start-time":1610168028.380901,
"model-name":"http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-ama",
"model-revision":"2019-08-05","license-udi":{"result-code": "Success", "license-udi":
"UDI: PID:NCS-55A1-24H,SN:FOC2104R15R\n"},"version":{"result-code": "Success",
"version": "Cisco IOS XR Software, Version 7.3.1
\nCopyright (c) 2013-2020 by Cisco Systems, Inc.\n\nBuild Information:\n
Built By      : <user>\n Built On       : Thu Jan  7 17:16:02 PST 2021\n
Built Host    : <host>\n Workspace     : <ws>
Version      : 7.3.1\n Location       : /opt/cisco/XR/packages/\n Label        : 7.3.1\n\ncisco

() processor\nSystem uptime is 8 hours 7 minutes\n\n"},"platform":{"result-code":
"Success", "platform":
"Node          Type                               State          Config state
-----
0/RP0/CPU0     <node-type>(Active)                            IOS XR RUN     NSHUT\n
0/RP0/NPU0     Slice                                           UP
0/RP0/NPU1     Slice                                           UP
0/FT0         <platform>-A1-FAN-RV                            OPERATIONAL    NSHUT
0/FT1         <platform>-A1-FAN-RV                            OPERATIONAL    NSHUT
0/FT2         <platform>-A1-FAN-RV                            OPERATIONAL    NSHUT
PM1           <platform>-1100W-ACRV                           OPERATIONAL    NSHUT
"},
-----Output is snipped for brevity
-----

```

To limit the number of snapshots, use the following command:

```
show platform security integrity dossier include filesystem-inventory
filesystem-inventory-options '{"0/RP0/CPU0": {"block_start": 0, "count": 1}}'
```

To start from a new block, use the following command:

```
show platform security integrity dossier include filesystem-inventory
filesystem-inventory-options '{"0/RP0/CPU0": {"block_start": 5}}'
```

To collect data from a remote node, use the following command:

```
show platform security integrity dossier include filesystem-inventory
filesystem-inventory-options '{"0/RP1/CPU0": {"block_start": 0}}' | file
harddisk:PE1_remote.json
```

Incremental Integrity Measurement Architecture

With incremental Integrity Measurement Architecture (IMA), you can define the starting IMA sequence that you want to include in a response. The system then starts to report the subsequent events.

```
show platform security integrity dossier incremental-ima
{"ima_start":[{"0/RP0/CPU0":{"start_event":1000,"start_time":"Tue Feb 16 09:15:17
2021"}}]}
```

Associated Command

- **show platform security integrity dossier**
- **utility sign**

Procedure to Test Key Generation and Data-signing with Different Key Algorithm

You can follow these steps to test key generation and data-signing with a different key algorithm:

- Unconfigure the trustpoint (using the **no crypto ca trustpoint system-trustpoint** command)
- Clear the certificates that were generated earlier (using the **clear crypto ca certificates system-trustpoint** command)
- Generate new keys.
- Configure the system trustpoint again.
- Authenticate and enroll the system trustpoint to generate the certificates.

See [How to Integrate Cisco IOS XR and Crosswork Trust Insights, on page 173](#) section for configuration steps of each task.

Verify Authenticity of RPM Packages Using Fingerprint

Table 26: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Description |
|---|---------------------|---|
| Verify Authenticity of RPM Packages Using Fingerprint | Release 25.1.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Description |
|---|---------------------|---|
| Verify Authenticity of RPM Packages Using Fingerprint | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |
| Verify Authenticity of RPM Packages Using Fingerprint | Release 7.3.1 | <p>This feature helps in verifying the authenticity of an installable package using fingerprint values. The fingerprint value of the package is compared with a point of reference called Known Good Value (KGV). The KGV for an image or package is generated after it is built by Cisco.</p> <p>After installing the package, the associated install time and build time fingerprint values are compared using Yang RPC to determine whether the package is genuine. A match in the fingerprints indicates that the package published on CCO and that installed on router are the same.</p> |

Is there a simple way to determine the authenticity of a package that is installed on a router? Is there a mechanism to identify whether a package signature is checked at install time, or detect changes to the files after the package is installed at run time?

Cisco IOS XR, Release 7.3.1 introduces a fingerprint mechanism to verify the authenticity of a package that Cisco releases. This mechanism helps determine whether the installed package is genuine, where the installed and running software matches the software that is published by Cisco.

There are significant security measures for installing software using GPG and IMA signing. However, there is need to report more data for Cisco Crosswork application to monitor and flag potential issues for further investigation. Cisco Crosswork monitors the installed software over a period to help accomplish the following tasks:

- To determine whether there are any differences between the software that is published on Cisco.com and that downloaded to the router.
- To determine whether any files in a package have been altered, either accidentally or maliciously, from the time the package was installed.

A Known Good Value (KGV) is calculated and published for each package. This value is considered the right value for the package.

Two fingerprint (hex) values for each active or committed packages are monitored to ensure authenticity of the package:

- **Install time fingerprint:** Hex value that represents the software in the package at install time. An RPM is genuine if it is not modified before install, and it matches the KGV. Whereas a manipulated RPM shows a mismatch in the fingerprint that is published in the KGV.
- **Run time fingerprint:** Hex value that represents the running software of an installed package. The value matches the corresponding install time fingerprint if the RPM has not been modified since the install time. If there are changes to the files, the run time and install time fingerprints show a mismatch. Every time the files that are installed by an RPM are changed, the run time fingerprint also changes. A value of 0 (zero) is displayed if no run time fingerprint is available for a package. This is used to monitor changes to the running software over time.



Note These two values are displayed only in the Yang model output. No CLI commands are provided to view these values.

```
Received message from host
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:97f5bc36-0eb0-4d2f-9c6f-3d34fea14be0"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<data>
  <install xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XR-spirit-install-instmgr-oper">
    <packages>
      <active>
        <summary>
          <rpm-fingerprint-status>generation-up-to-date</rpm-fingerprint-status>
          <rpm-fingerprint-timestamp>Mon Jun 15 15:58:22 2020</rpm-fingerprint-timestamp>

          <package>
            <name>asr9k-xr</name>
            <version>7.3.1</version>
            <release>r731</release>
            <gpg-key-id>ddcead3dcb38048d</gpg-key-id>
            <rpm-fingerprint>

            <rpm-fingerprint-install-time>2871bf68d3cd764938775afc9e5a69c130f9fbde</rpm-fingerprint-install-time>

            <rpm-fingerprint-run-time>2871bf68d3cd764938775afc9e5a69c130f9fbde</rpm-fingerprint-run-time>

          </rpm-fingerprint>
        </package>

        <package>
          <name>asr9k-mcast-x64</name>
          <version>2.0.0.0</version>
```

```

<release>r731</release>
<gpg-key-id>ddcead3dcb38048d</gpg-key-id>
<rpm-fingerprint>

<rpm-fingerprint-install-time>3ddca55bc00a0ce2c2e52277919d398621616b28</rpm-fingerprint-install-time>

<rpm-fingerprint-run-time>3ddca55bc00a0ce2c2e52277919d398621616b28</rpm-fingerprint-run-time>

  </rpm-fingerprint>
</package>
----- Truncated for brevity -----

```

In the example, both the install time and run time fingerprints are the same.

The fingerprint generation status is used to indicate how up-to-date the run time fingerprints are. This may indicate that generation is currently in progress and will complete shortly, or generation is awaiting the end of an atomic change.

Support for Ed25519 Public-Key Signature System

Table 27: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|---|
| Support for Ed25519 Public-Key Signature System | Release 25.1.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100])(select variants only*)
*This feature is supported on the Cisco 8712-MOD-M routers. |
| Support for Ed25519 Public-Key Signature System | Release 24.4.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)
*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|---|
| Support for Ed25519 Public-Key Signature System | Release 7.3.1 | <p>This feature allows you to generate and securely store crypto key pair for the Ed25519 public-key signature algorithm on Cisco IOS XR 64-bit platforms. This signature system provides fast signing, fast key generation, fool proof session keys, collision resilience, and small signatures. The feature also facilitates integration of Cisco IOS XR with Cisco Crosswork Trust Insights.</p> <p>Commands introduced for this feature are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • crypto key generate ed25519 • crypto key zeroize ed25519 • show crypto key mypubkey ed25519 <p>Commands modified for this feature are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ca-keypair • keypair |

The Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.3.1 introduces the support for Ed25519 public-key signature algorithm on 64-bit platforms. Prior to this release, only DSA, ECDSA, and RSA signature algorithms were supported. The Ed25519 signature algorithm uses the elliptic curve cryptography that offers a better security with faster performance when compared to other signature algorithms.

You can generate the Ed25519 crypto keys either with an empty label or with two predefined labels: **system-root-key** and **system-enroll-key**. In the case of an empty label, the system generates the key pair against the default label. You can use the key pairs with the predefined labels to integrate Cisco IOS XR with Cisco Crosswork Trust Insights.

Generate Crypto Key for Ed25519 Signature Algorithm

Configuration Example

To generate the Ed25519 crypto key, use the **crypto key generate ed25519** command in XR EXEC mode or XR Config mode.

```
Router#crypto key generate ed25519
```

To delete the Ed25519 crypto key with default label or any predefined label, use the **crypto key zeroize ed25519** command in XR EXEC mode.



Note From Cisco IOS XR Release 7.3.2 onwards, you can generate and delete key-pairs from XR Config mode, as well. For more details, see [Public key-pairs, on page 191](#).

Verification

Use the **show crypto key mypubkey ed25519** command to view all Ed25519 crypto keys generated on the system.

```
Router# show crypto key mypubkey ed25519

Mon Nov 30 07:05:06.532 UTC
Key label: the_default
Type : ED25519
Size : 256
Created : 07:03:17 UTC Mon Nov 30 2020
Data :
FF0ED4E7 71531B3D 9ED72C48 3F79EC59 9EFECCC3 46A129B2 FAAA12DD EE9D0351

]
```

Related Topics

- [Support for Ed25519 Public-Key Signature System, on page 188](#)
- [Integrate Cisco IOS XR with Cisco Crosswork Trust Insights using Ed25519, on page 190](#)

Associated Commands

- **crypto key generate ed25519**
- **crypto key zeroize ed25519**
- **show crypto key mypubkey ed25519**

Integrate Cisco IOS XR with Cisco Crosswork Trust Insights using Ed25519

Configuration Example

This section shows how to generate the system trustpoint, and the root and leaf certificates using the Ed25519 signature algorithm, as part of integrating Cisco IOS XR with Cisco Crosswork Trust Insights.

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#domain name domain1
Router(config)#crypto ca trustpoint system-trustpoint
Router(config-trustp)#keypair ed25519 system-enroll-key
Router(config-trustp)#ca-keypair ed25519 system-root-key
Router(config-trustp)#commit

/* Generate root and leaf certificates */
Router#crypto ca authenticate system-trustpoint
Router#crypto ca enroll system-trustpoint
```

Running Configuration

```

config
domain name domain1
crypto ca trustpoint system-trustpoint
  keypair ed25519 system-enroll-key
  ca-keypair ed25519 system-root-key
!
```

For the complete integration procedure, see, [Integrating Cisco IOS XR and Crosswork Trust Insights](#), on page 172.

Public key-pairs

A public key-pair is a cryptographic credential that

- consists of a mathematically linked public and private key,
- enables secure communication and authentication, and
- supports multiple cryptographic algorithms such as RSA and ECDSA.

Table 28: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|---|
| Syslog alerts on public keys generated in XR config mode | Release 26.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100, K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>This enhancement ensures Cisco IOS XR devices remain compliant with evolving security standards. During system reboot, the device now sends syslog warnings for public keys if weak SSH host keys are detected—specifically, RSA keys less than 3072 bits or any DSA keys. Additionally, the default RSA key size has been increased from 2048 to 3072 bits to further strengthen security.</p> <p>This feature introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI: .</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The crypto key generate rsa command has been modified. • The crypto key generate dsa command has been modified. • The show crypto key mypubkey rsa command has been modified. |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|---|
| Public Key-Pair Generation in XR Config Mode | Release 25.1.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100])(select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on the Cisco 8712-MOD-M routers. |
| Public Key-Pair Generation in XR Config Mode | Release 24.4.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M |
| Public Key-Pair Generation in XR Config Mode | Release 7.3.2 | This feature allows you to generate public-key pairs in the XR Config mode, which in turn lets you save configurations. You can then load these saved configurations across different routers to quickly deploy the key-pair configurations.

You could generate public-key pairs in earlier releases only in the XR EXEC mode, which does not save configurations. So manually executing the key-pair generation commands on every router was time-consuming.

The following commands are available in XR Config mode, in addition to XR EXEC mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • crypto key generate rsa • crypto key generate dsa • crypto key generate ecdsa • crypto key generate ed25519 |

Syslog alerts on public keys generated in XR config mode

Starting with Cisco IOS XR Release 26.1.1, the default RSA key size is 3072 bits; syslog warning is triggered during system boot for weak SSH host key, where RSA key is less than 3072 bits. Additionally, DSA keys are no longer auto-generated at boot, and if found, a syslog warning prompts their removal. These changes ensure compliance with current cryptographic security standards and enhance device protection against emerging threats.

The following table provides the supported key types and key sizes in FIPS (Federal Information Processing Standard) and non-FIPS modes.

Table 29: Supported key types for non-FIPS and FIPS mode

| Key types | Non-FIPS mode | FIPS mode |
|-----------|--|--|
| RSA | Supported for all key sizes from 512 - 4096 | Supported for key sizes 2048, 3072, 4096 |
| DSA | Supported for key sizes 512, 768, 1024 | Supported for key size 2048 |
| ECDSA | Supported for key sizes nistp256, nistp384, nistp512 | Supported for key sizes nistp256, nistp384, nistp512 |
| ED25519 | Supported | Not Supported |

For more details on FIPS, see [Configuring FIPS Mode, on page 333](#) chapter in this guide.

Usage guidelines for public key-pairs

These are some usage guidelines to follow when you generate public key-pairs in XR config mode:

- Do not generate **system-root-key** and **system-enroll-key** in XR config mode.
- Generating a key-pair in XR config mode overwrites any key-pair previously generated in XR EXEC mode, except in Cisco IOS XR Release 24.4.1 and later.
- From Release 24.4.1 onwards, generate keys in XR config mode only after zeroizing or removing any existing key using the **no generate** command.
- You cannot overwrite or delete keys generated in XR config mode from XR EXEC mode.
- When you use the **no** form of the **crypto key generate** command in XR config mode, only keys generated in config mode are deleted.
- The **show crypto key mypubkey** displays keys generated in XR EXEC mode first, followed by those generated in XR config mode.

Generate public key-pairs in XR config mode

Generate cryptographic key-pairs in Cisco IOS XR config mode for secure device communications.

Follow these steps to generate public key pairs:

Procedure

Step 1 Generate the necessary key-pairs required for your deployment.

Example:

```
Router# conf t
Router(config)#crypto key generate dsa 1024
Router(config)#crypto key generate rsa user1 general-keys 3072
Router(config)#crypto key generate rsa user2 usage-keys 3072
Router(config)#crypto key generate rsa 3072
Router(config)#crypto key generate ecdsa nistp256
```

```
Router(config)#crypto key generate ecdsa nistp384
Router(config)#crypto key generate ecdsa nistp521
Router(config)#crypto key generate ed25519
Router(config)#commit
```

Use **no** form of the command in XR Configuration mode to delete any of the key-pairs.

Starting with Cisco IOS XR Release 26.1.1, the default RSA key size is 3072 bits; syslog warning is triggered during system boot for weak SSH host key (RSA key < 3072 bits). Additionally, if you configure the DSA key, a syslog on system boot alerts you to remove the DSA key.

Step 2 View the generated key-pairs.

Example:

```
Router# show crypto key mypubkey ecdsa
Key label: the_default
Type      : ECDSA General Curve Nistp256
Degree    : 256
Created   : 11:49:22 IST Wed Apr 21 2021
Data      :
 04D6D132 2253ABD0 81449E3F 9D5CEA3A 1107950A 829E9090 8960FBD5 ABA039B7
24A4E217 7EA47475 91C60AC7 013DBC2E EA8434D9 0BD5B0FC 694913AE 0098A4F5
77

Key label: the_default
Type      : ECDSA General Curve Nistp521
Degree    : 521
Created   : 22:44:22 IST Thu Mar 18 2021
Data      :
 04017798 4369F493 8D0E57D1 1975FC46 CDC03A78 03A9F90E B38CA504 17DB9A64
D1DEA6A6 D23E7E20 4D8D4D31 C7878BDB BF5EEE40 1978A889 70C5D703 BB033B77
0FFD9201 366A9AC8 35E69BB3 97FF4E91 6B498510 39425971 C5E43858 83286088
A6A7BF92 0EA2B416 BD4E81CE DCEB65F1 15CC75B5 91204E89 3339A168 2382CAB6
40170131 8F

-----
Public keys from config sysdb:
-----
Key label: the_default
Type      : ECDSA General Curve Nistp384
Degree    : 384
Created   : 11:51:52 IST Wed Apr 21 2021
Data      :
 045F7C14 1A88C27E 9CED3FF1 7FEDFA03 B49575FA 7AD88370 BC9C7D7F F99C8917
33620916 758BDEFC 7187E33A 2D3CCD33 14FF3267 9855A5E9 E3BD166C CE838462
40742231 6198EE12 3E189F42 22A8149A 8E7B186D 88E728D4 7F47D565 53441061
79
```

The specified key-pairs are generated and appear in the device configuration.

System logs and error messages

These are the system logs and error messages reported when generating key-pairs.

- The router sends these system logs on successful creation of key-pairs:

```
cepki[287]: %SECURITY-CEPKI-6-KEY_INFO : crypto key DSA generated, label:the_default,
modBits:1024
cepki[287]: %SECURITY-CEPKI-6-KEY_INFO : crypto key ECDSA_NISTP256 generated,
```

```
label:the_default, modBits:256
```

- The router sends these system logs on deletion of key-pairs:

```
cepki[287]: %SECURITY-CEPKI-6-KEY_INFO : crypto key RSA zeroized, label:user1
cepki[287]: %SECURITY-CEPKI-6-KEY_INFO : crypto key DSA zeroized, label:the_default
```

- The router sends these error messages if you try to overwrite the key-pairs generated in XR Config Mode from XR EXEC mode:

```
Router#conf t
Router(config)#crypto key generate ed25519
Router(config)#commit
Router#crypto key generate ed25519
Cannot execute the command : Operation not permitted
ce_cmd[68727]: %SECURITY-CEPKI-6-ERR_2 : Cannot execute the command : Operation
not permitted
ce_cmd[68736]: %SECURITY-CEPKI-6-ERR : Key is added as part of config mode, key deletion
is not allowed , delete key from config mode
```

- The router sends these error messages if you try to delete key-pairs generated in XR Config Mode from XR EXEC mode:

```
Router#conf t
Router(config)#crypto key generate ed25519
Router(config)#commit
Router#crypto key zeroize ed25519
Cannot execute the command : Operation not permitted
ce_cmd[68736]: %SECURITY-CEPKI-6-ERR_2 : Cannot execute the command : Operation not
permitted
```

- The router sends a syslog warning if the DSA keys and weak RSA keys are found during the system boot or process restart.

```
Router# process restart cepki
Tue Dec 9 04:50:55.396 UTC
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Dec 9 04:50:55.445 UTC: sysmgr_control[66932]:
%OS-SYSMGR-4-PROC_RESTART_NAME : User cifyauto (con0_RP0_CPU0) requested a restart of
process cepki at 0/RP0/CPU0
Router#
```

This product contains cryptographic features and is subject to United States and local country laws governing import, export, transfer and use. Delivery of Cisco cryptographic products does not imply third-party authority to import, export, distribute or use encryption. Importers, exporters, distributors and users are responsible for compliance with U.S. and local country laws. By using this product you agree to comply with applicable laws and regulations. If you are unable to comply with U.S. and local laws, return this product immediately.

A summary of U.S. laws governing Cisco cryptographic products may be found at:

<http://www.cisco.com/wvl/export/crypto/tool/stqrg.html>

If you require further assistance please contact us by sending email to export@cisco.com.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Dec 9 04:50:56.430 UTC: cepki[277]:
%INFRA-WARN_INSECURE-4-INSECURE_FEATURE_WARN : Feature 'Weak RSA SSH host key present'
utilized or configured. This feature is deprecated as it is known to be insecure; it
```

will be removed in a future release. Consider upgrading RSA (crypto key generate rsa) to at least 3072 bits

- The router sends a syslog warning if the DSA keys are found during the system boot or process restart.

```
Router# process restart cepki
Tue Dec  9 05:14:49.926 UTC
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Dec  9 05:14:49.973 UTC: sysmgr_control[68825]:
%OS-SYSMGR-4-PROC_RESTART_NAME : User cagyauto (con0_RP0_CPU0) requested a restart of
process cepki at 0/RP0/CPU0
Router#
```

This product contains cryptographic features and is subject to United States and local country laws governing import, export, transfer and use. Delivery of Cisco cryptographic products does not imply third-party authority to import, export, distribute or use encryption. Importers, exporters, distributors and users are responsible for compliance with U.S. and local country laws. By using this product you agree to comply with applicable laws and regulations. If you are unable to comply with U.S. and local laws, return this product immediately.

A summary of U.S. laws governing Cisco cryptographic products may be found at:
<http://www.cisco.com/wwl/export/crypto/tool/stqrg.html>

If you require further assistance please contact us by sending email to export@cisco.com.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Dec  9 05:14:50.969 UTC: cepki[277]:
%INFRA-WARN_INSECURE-4-INSECURE_FEATURE_WARN : Feature 'Weak DSA SSH host key present'
utilized or configured. This feature is deprecated as it is known to be insecure; it
will be removed in a future release. Consider removing DSA (crypto key zeroize dsa)
```

Information About Implementing Certification Authority

Supported Standards for Certification Authority Interoperability

Cisco supports the following standards:

- Public-Key Cryptography Standard #7 (PKCS #7)—A standard from RSA Data Security Inc. used to encrypt and sign certificate enrollment messages.
- Public-Key Cryptography Standard #10 (PKCS #10)—A standard syntax from RSA Data Security Inc. for certificate requests.
- RSA keys—RSA is the public key cryptographic system developed by Ron Rivest, Adi Shamir, and Leonard Adelman. RSA keys come in pairs: one public key and one private key.
- SSL—Secure Socket Layer protocol.
- X.509v3 certificates—Certificate support that allows the IPSec-protected network to scale by providing the equivalent of a digital ID card to each device. When two devices want to communicate, they exchange digital certificates to prove their identity (thus removing the need to manually exchange public keys with each peer or specify a shared key at each peer). These certificates are obtained from a CA. X.509 as part of the X.500 standard of the ITU.



Note The Internet Key Exchange (IKE) standard is not supported.

Certification Authorities

Purpose of CAs

CAs are responsible for managing certificate requests and issuing certificates to participating IPSec network devices. These services provide centralized key management for the participating devices.

CAs simplify the administration of IPSec network devices. You can use a CA with a network containing multiple IPSec-compliant devices, such as routers.

Digital signatures, enabled by public key cryptography, provide a means of digitally authenticating devices and individual users. In public key cryptography, such as the RSA encryption system, each user has a key pair containing both a public and a private key. The keys act as complements, and anything encrypted with one of the keys can be decrypted with the other. In simple terms, a signature is formed when data is encrypted with a user's private key. The receiver verifies the signature by decrypting the message with the sender's public key. The fact that the message could be decrypted using the sender's public key indicates that the holder of the private key, the sender, must have created the message. This process relies on the receiver's having a copy of the sender's public key and knowing with a high degree of certainty that it does belong to the sender and not to someone pretending to be the sender.

Digital certificates provide the link. A digital certificate contains information to identify a user or device, such as the name, serial number, company, department, or IP address. It also contains a copy of the entity's public key. The certificate is itself signed by a CA, a third party that is explicitly trusted by the receiver to validate identities and to create digital certificates.

To validate the signature of the CA, the receiver must first know the CA's public key. Normally, this process is handled out-of-band or through an operation done at installation. For instance, most web browsers are configured with the public keys of several CAs by default. IKE, an essential component of IPSec, can use digital signatures to authenticate peer devices for scalability before setting up SAs.

Without digital signatures, a user must manually exchange either public keys or secrets between each pair of devices that use IPSec to protect communication between them. Without certificates, every new device added to the network requires a configuration change on every other device with which it communicates securely. With digital certificates, each device is enrolled with a CA. When two devices want to communicate, they exchange certificates and digitally sign data to authenticate each other. When a new device is added to the network, a user simply enrolls that device with a CA, and none of the other devices needs modification. When the new device attempts an IPSec connection, certificates are automatically exchanged and the device can be authenticated.

CA Registration Authorities

Some CAs have a registration authority (RA) as part of their implementation. An RA is essentially a server that acts as a proxy for the CA so that CA functions can continue when the CA is offline.



CHAPTER 6

Implementing Keychain Management

This module describes how to implement keychain management on Cisco 8000 Series Routers. Keychain management is a common method of authentication to configure shared secrets on all entities that exchange secrets such as keys, before establishing trust with each other. Routing protocols and network management applications on Cisco IOS XR software often use authentication to enhance security while communicating with peers.

- [Prerequisites for Configuring Keychain Management, on page 199](#)
- [Restrictions for Implementing Keychain Management, on page 199](#)
- [Information About Implementing Keychain Management, on page 199](#)
- [How to Implement Keychain Management, on page 200](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Implementing Keychain Management, on page 208](#)

Prerequisites for Configuring Keychain Management

You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.

Restrictions for Implementing Keychain Management

You must be aware that changing the system clock impacts the validity of the keys in the existing configuration.

Information About Implementing Keychain Management

The keychain by itself has no relevance; therefore, it must be used by an application that needs to communicate by using the keys (for authentication) with its peers. The keychain provides a secure mechanism to handle the keys and rollover based on the lifetime. Border Gateway Protocol (BGP), Open Shortest Path First (OSPF), and Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS) use the keychain to implement a hitless key rollover for authentication. BGP uses TCP authentication, which enables the authentication option and sends the Message Authentication Code (MAC) based on the cryptographic algorithm configured for the keychain. For information about BGP, OSPF, and IS-IS keychain configurations, see the *Configure>Routing* end-user guide listed [here](#).

- Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) uses keychain for authentication.

For more information about RSVP, see the *Configure>MPLS* end-user guide listed [here](#).

- IP Service Level Agreements (IP SLAs) use a keychain for MD5 authentication for the IP SLA control message. For more information about IP SLAs, see the *Configure>System Monitoring* end-user guide listed [here](#).

To implement keychain management, you must understand the concept of key lifetime, which is explained in the next section.

Lifetime of Key

If you are using keys as the security method, you must specify the lifetime for the keys and change the keys on a regular basis when they expire. To maintain stability, each party must be able to store and use more than one key for an application at the same time. A keychain is a sequence of keys that are collectively managed for authenticating the same peer, peer group, or both.

Keychain management groups a sequence of keys together under a keychain and associates each key in the keychain with a lifetime.



Note Any key that is configured without a lifetime is considered invalid; therefore, the key is rejected during configuration.

The lifetime of a key is defined by the following options:

- Start-time—Specifies the absolute time.
- End-time—Specifies the absolute time that is relative to the start-time or infinite time.

Each key definition within the keychain must specify a time interval for which that key is activated; for example, lifetime. Then, during a given key's lifetime, routing update packets are sent with this activated key. Keys cannot be used during time periods for which they are not activated. Therefore, we recommend that for a given keychain, key activation times overlap to avoid any period of time for which no key is activated. If a time period occurs during which no key is activated, neighbor authentication cannot occur; therefore, routing updates can fail.

Multiple keychains can be specified.

How to Implement Keychain Management

This section contains the following procedures:

Configure Keychain

This task configures a name for the keychain.

You can create or modify the name of the keychain.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
Enters global configuration mode.
```

Step 2 **key chain** *key-chain-name*

Example:

```
Router(config)# key chain isis-keys
router(config-isis-keys)#
Creates a name for the keychain.
```

Note

Configuring only the keychain name without any key identifiers is considered a nonoperation. When you exit the configuration, the router does not prompt you to commit changes until you have configured the key identifier and at least one of the XR Config mode attributes or keychain-key configuration mode attributes (for example, lifetime or key string).

Step 3 **commit**

Commits the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

Step 4 **show key chain** *key-chain-name*

Example:

```
Router# show key chain isis-keys
Key-chain: isis-keys/ -

accept-tolerance -- infinite
Key 8 -- text "1104000E120B520005282820"
  cryptographic-algorithm -- MD5
  Send lifetime: 01:00:00, 29 Jun 2006 - Always valid [Valid now]
  Accept lifetime: 01:00:00, 29 Jun 2006 - Always valid [Valid now]
```

(Optional) Displays the name of the keychain.

Note

The *key-chain-name* argument is optional. If you do not specify a name for the *key-chain-name* argument, all the keychains are displayed.

Step 5 **show run**

Example:

```
key chain isis-keys
accept-tolerance infinite
key 8
  key-string mykey91abcd
  cryptographic-algorithm MD5
  send-lifetime 1:00:00 june 29 2006 infinite
```

```

accept-lifetime 1:00:00 june 29 2006 infinite
!
!
!

```

Configure Tolerance Specification to Accept Keys

This task configures the tolerance specification to accept keys for a keychain to facilitate a hitless key rollover for applications, such as routing and management protocols.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **key chain** *key-chain-name*

Example:

```
Router(config)# key chain isis-keys
```

Creates a name for the keychain.

Step 3 **accept-tolerance** *value* [**infinite**]

Example:

```
Router(config-isis-keys)# accept-tolerance infinite
```

Configures an accept tolerance limit—duration for which an expired or soon-to-be activated keys can be used for validating received packets—for a key that is used by a peer.

- Use the *value* argument to set the tolerance range in seconds. The range is from 1 to 8640000.
- Use the **infinite** keyword to specify that an accept key is always acceptable and validated when used by a peer.

Step 4 **commit**

Commits the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

Configure Key Identifier for Keychain

This task configures a key identifier for the keychain.

You can create or modify the key for the keychain.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **key chain** *key-chain-name*

Example:

```
Router(config)# key chain isis-keys
```

Creates a name for the keychain.

Step 3 **key** *key-id*

Example:

```
Router(config-isis-keys)# key 8
```

Creates a key for the keychain. The key ID has to be unique within the specific keychain.

- Use the *key-id* argument as a 48-bit integer.

Step 4 **commit**

Commits the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

Configure Text for Key String

This task configures the text for the key string.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **key chain** *key-chain-name*

Example:

```
Router(config)# key chain isis-keys
```

Creates a name for the keychain.

Step 3 **key** *key-id*

Example:

```
Router(config-isis-keys)# key 8  
Router(config-isis-keys-0x8)#
```

Creates a key for the keychain.

Step 4 **key-string** [**clear** | **password**] *key-string-text*

Example:

```
Router(config-isis-keys-0x8)# key-string password 8
```

Specifies the text string for the key.

- Use the **clear** keyword to specify the key string in clear text form; use the **password** keyword to specify the key in encrypted form.

Step 5 **commit**

Commits the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

Determine Valid Keys

This task determines the valid keys for local applications to authenticate the remote peers.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **key chain** *key-chain-name*

Example:

```
Router(config)# key chain isis-keys
```

Creates a name for the keychain.

Step 3 **key** *key-id*

Example:

```
Router(config-isis-keys)# key 8
Router(config-isis-keys-0x8)#
```

Creates a key for the keychain.

Step 4 **accept-lifetime** *start-time* [**duration** *duration-value* | **infinite** | *end-time*]

Example:

```
Router(config-isis-keys)# key 8
Router(config-isis-keys-0x8)# accept-lifetime 1:00:00 october 24 2005 infinite
```

(Optional) Specifies the validity of the key lifetime in terms of clock time. You can specify the *start-time* and *end-time* in *hh:mm:ss month DD YYYY* format or *hh:mm:ss DD month YYYY* format.

Step 5 **commit**

Commits configuration changes and exits the configuration session.

Configure Keys to Generate Authentication Digest for Outbound Application Traffic

This task configures the keys to generate authentication digest for the outbound application traffic.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **key chain** *key-chain-name*

Example:

```
Router(config)# key chain isis-keys
```

Creates a name for the keychain.

Step 3 **key** *key-id*

Example:

```
Router(config-isis-keys)# key 8
Router(config-isis-keys-0x8)#
```

Creates a key for the keychain.

Step 4 **send-lifetime** *start-time* [**duration** *duration-value* | **infinite** | *end-time*]

Example:

```
Router(config-isis-keys)#key 8
Router(config-isis-keys-0x8)# send-lifetime 1:00:00 october 24 2005 infinite
```

(Optional) Specifies the set time period during which an authentication key on a keychain is valid to be sent. You can specify the validity of the key lifetime in terms of clock time.

In addition, you can specify a start-time value and one of the following values:

- **duration** keyword (seconds)
- **infinite** keyword
- *end-time* argument

If you intend to set lifetimes on keys, Network Time Protocol (NTP) or some other time synchronization method is recommended.

Step 5 **commit**

Commits the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

Configure Cryptographic Algorithm

This task allows the keychain configuration to accept the choice of the cryptographic algorithm.

From Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.2.1 and later, you must follow the below guidelines while configuring the key chain. These are applicable only for FIPS mode (that is, when **crypto fips-mode** is configured).

- You must configure the session with a FIPS-approved cryptographic algorithm. A session configured with non-approved cryptographic algorithm for FIPS (such as, **MD5** and **HMAC-MD5**) does not work. This is applicable for OSPF, BGP, RSVP, ISIS, or any application using key chain with non-approved cryptographic algorithm.
- If you are using any **HMAC-SHA** algorithm for a session, then you must ensure that the configured *key-string* has a minimum length of 14 characters. Otherwise, the session goes down.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure****Example:**

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **key chain** *key-chain-name***Example:**

```
Router(config)# key chain isis-keys
Router(config-isis-keys)#
```

Creates a name for the keychain.

Step 3 **key** *key-id*

Example:

```
Router(config-isis-keys)# key 8
Router(config-isis-keys-0x8)#
```

Creates a key for the keychain.

Step 4 **cryptographic-algorithm** [HMAC-MD5 | HMAC-SHA1-12 | HMAC-SHA1-20 | MD5 | SHA-1 | AES-128-CMAC-96 | HMAC-SHA-256 | HMAC-SHA1-96]

Example:

```
Router(config-isis-keys-0x8)# cryptographic-algorithm MD5
```

Specifies the choice of the cryptographic algorithm. You can choose from the following list of algorithms:

- HMAC-MD5
- HMAC-SHA1-12
- HMAC-SHA1-20
- MD5
- SHA-1
- HMAC-SHA-256
- HMAC-SHA1-96
- AES-128-CMAC-96

The routing protocols each support a different set of cryptographic algorithms:

- Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) supports HMAC-MD5, HMAC-SHA1-12, HMAC-SHA1-96 and AES-128-CMAC-96.
- Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS) supports HMAC-MD5, SHA-1, MD5, AES-128-CMAC-96, HMAC-SHA-256, HMAC-SHA1-12, HMAC-SHA1-20, and HMAC-SHA1-96.
- Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) supports MD5, HMAC-MD5, HMAC-SHA-256, HMAC-SHA1-12, HMAC-SHA1-20, and HMAC-SHA1-96.

Step 5 **commit**

Commits configuration changes and exits the configuration session

Configuration Examples for Implementing Keychain Management

This section provides the following configuration example:

Configuring Keychain Management: Example

The following example shows how to configure keychain management:

```
configure
key chain isis-keys
  accept-tolerance infinite
  key 8
    key-string mykey9labcd
    cryptographic-algorithm MD5
    send-lifetime 1:00:00 june 29 2006 infinite
    accept-lifetime 1:00:00 june 29 2006 infinite
```

```
Router#show key chain isis-keys
```

```
Key-chain: isis-keys/ -

accept-tolerance -- infinite
Key 8 -- text "1104000E120B520005282820"
  cryptographic-algorithm -- MD5
  Send lifetime: 01:00:00, 29 Jun 2006 - Always valid [Valid now]
  Accept lifetime: 01:00:00, 29 Jun 2006 - Always valid [Valid now]
```



CHAPTER 7

MACSec Using EAP-TLS Authentication

This chapter describes how to achieve MACSec encryption between two Routers using the 802.1x Port-based authentication with Extensible Authentication Protocol-Transport Layer Security (EAP-TLS). EAP-TLS allows mutual authentication using certificates, between the authentication server and the client, and generates the Master Session Key (MSK). This MSK is used to derive the Connectivity Association Key (CAK), and the corresponding Connectivity Association Key Name (CKN) is derived from the EAP session ID.

- [Guidelines and Limitations for EAP-TLS Authentication, on page 209](#)
- [IEEE 802.1X Device Roles, on page 210](#)
- [Prerequisites for MACSec MKA Using EAP-TLS Authentication, on page 210](#)
- [MACsec with Local EAP-TLS Authentication, on page 210](#)
- [Configure MACSec Encryption Using EAP-TLS Authentication, on page 210](#)
- [Configure RADIUS Server, on page 211](#)
- [Configure 802.1X Authentication Method, on page 211](#)
- [Generate RSA Key Pair, on page 211](#)
- [Configure Trustpoint, on page 213](#)
- [Configure Domain Name, on page 213](#)
- [Authenticate Certificate Authority and Request Certificates, on page 213](#)
- [Configure EAP Profile, on page 214](#)
- [Configure 802.1X Profile on the Device, on page 214](#)
- [Configure MACSec EAP and 802.1X Profile on an Interface, on page 215](#)
- [Verify MACSec EAP and 802.1X Configuration on Interface, on page 215](#)

Guidelines and Limitations for EAP-TLS Authentication

The EAP-TLS authentication has the following guidelines and limitations:

- The IOS-XR software supports 802.1X only on physical ports (Ethernet interfaces).
- The IOS-XR software supports only EAP-TLS authentication method.
- 802.1X Port-based authentication is used only to derive keys for MKA, and does not perform port control.
- The IOS-XR software supports both the PAE roles, as an authenticator and a supplicant.
- The IOS-XR software as an authenticator supports Remote EAP authentication using RADIUS as EAP transport.

- The IOS-XR software supports only single-host mode, and not multi-host mode.

IEEE 802.1X Device Roles

The devices in the network have the following specific roles with IEEE 802.1X authentication.

- Supplicant - An entity at one end of a point-to-point LAN segment that seeks to be authenticated by an Authenticator attached to the other end of that link.
- Authenticator - An entity that facilitates authentication of other entities attached to the same LAN.
- Authentication Server - An entity that provides an authentication service to an Authenticator. This service determines, from the credentials provided by the Supplicant, whether the Supplicant is authorized to access the services provided by the system in which the Authenticator resides.

Prerequisites for MACSec MKA Using EAP-TLS Authentication

- Ensure that a Certificate Authority (CA) server is configured for the network.
- Ensure that the configured CA certificate is valid.
- Ensure that the user has configured Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) Release 2.2 onwards or Cisco Secure Access Control Server Release 5.6 onwards as external AAA server.
- Ensure that the remote AAA server is configured with EAP-TLS method.
- Ensure that both the routers, the CA server, and the external AAA server are synchronized using Network Time Protocol (NTP). If time is not synchronized on all these devices, certificates may not be validated.

MACsec with Local EAP-TLS Authentication

In local EAP authentication, the EAP-server is co-located with the authenticator locally on the router. This feature enables the router to authenticate dot1x (802.1x) clients with the EAP-TLS method using TLS Version 1.0 (TLSv1). It provides EAP-TLS based mutual authentication, where a Master Session Key (MSK) is generated on successful authentication.

The [enable-tls1.3-legacy-kdf](#) must be configured when using EAP based MACsec with Local EAP Authentication to ensure interoperability with XR releases earlier than Release 25.4.1.

Configure MACSec Encryption Using EAP-TLS Authentication

Configuring MACSec encryption using EAP-TLS authentication involves the following tasks:

Configure RADIUS Server

To configure RADIUS server pre-shared keys, obtain the pre-shared key values for the remote RADIUS server and perform this task. You can also specify an IPv6 address for the host (radius server).

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# radius-server host 209.165.200.225 key 7 094F471A1A0A57
Router(config)# radius-server vsa attribute ignore unknown
Router(config)# commit
```

Running Configuration

```
Router# show run radius-server
radius-server host 209.165.200.225 auth-port 1646
      key 7 094F471A1A0A57
      radius-server vsa attribute ignore unknown
!
```

Configure 802.1X Authentication Method

You can configure 802.1X authentication method using RADIUS as the protocol. Only default AAA method is supported for 802.1X authentication.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
Router(config)# commit
```

Running Configuration

```
Router# show run aaa
configure
  aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
```

Generate RSA Key Pair

RSA key pairs are used to sign and encrypt key management messages. This is required before you can obtain a certificate for the node. You must enter the key modulus size when prompted.

```
Router# crypto key generate rsa 8002
Wed Aug  7 10:25:22.461 UTC
The name for the keys will be: 8002
Choose the size of the key modulus in the range of 512 to 4096 for your General Purpose
Keypair.
Choosing a key modulus greater than 512 may take a few minutes.

How many bits in the modulus [2048]: 600
Generating RSA keys ...
Done w/ crypto generate keypair
[OK]
```

To delete the RSA keys, use the `no` form: **no crypto key generate rsa**

The following is a sample output of **show crypto key mypubkey rsa** command.

```
Router# show crypto key mypubkey rsa

Key label: 8002
Type      : RSA General purpose
Size     : 600
Created  : 12:56:29 UTC Wed Aug 07 2019
Data     :
3067300D 06092A86 4886F70D 01010105 00035600 3053024C 0096DB0F EE3B3233
6E5FDA53 0FC504D1 9A056E29 BB703118 C6A8A254 1DC6504B 29CD4DA0 984735C8
46CD39A1 C379B059 92870F76 693D4A66 D9953F69 450238D4 C57803AF 41160D4F
C9451945 02030100 01
```

Running Configuration

You can also view the RSA keys in the running configuration. The keys in the following example are in OpenSSL format:



Note Only those keys that are generated in the `config` mode are visible in the running configuration.

```
Router(config)#crypto key generate rsa test
Router(config)#commit
Thu May 12 08:37:59.894 UTC
Router(config)#end
Router#show running-config
Thu May 12 08:38:04.244 UTC
Building configuration...
!! IOS XR Configuration 7.3.4
!! Last configuration change at Thu May 12 08:37:59 2022 by cisco
!
username cisco
  group root-lr
  group cisco-support
  secret 10
$6$8zR0nTbkA7A1n...$0Kn.YxNNnh1cXo9cEvEwLGAff.rEOTycjsizI/TLBz9WoQX.rmxVwkNgTKAnROUGPtBVlQ/Ndew8gEREXJ7mIO
!
call-home
  service active
  contact smart-licensing
  profile CiscoTAC-1
    active
  destination transport-method http
!
!
interface MgmtEth0/RSP0/CPU0/0
  shutdown
!
crypto key generate rsa test general-keys 2048 | -----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
MIIBIDANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ0AMIIBCACCAQEAgixFnld/AADcil6eV38A
AI1lxZ5XfwAAcJb6eld/AAAA7du+AAAAAI6Qs47BQLhIVQAAAAAAAAAAWQDQVn8A
ANyKXp5XfwAAKAAAAAAAAAACnCWv38AANyKXp5XfwAAmjXFnd/AADcil6eV38A
AJolxZ5XfwAAA03bvgAAAABVAAAAAAAAABBEANBfwAA3Ipenld/AAAgAAAAAAAA
AI8lxZ5XfwAA3Ipenld/AACPJcWv38AAHhZANBfwAAA03bvgAAAADUTNDpQMwP
UUUAAAAAAAAAkBcA0FZ/AADcil6eV38AABgAAAAAAAAAiSXFnd/AADcil6eV38A
AAIBAA==
-----END PUBLIC KEY-----
|
end
```

Configure Trustpoint

Trustpoints let you manage and track CAs and certificates. A trustpoint includes the identity of the CA, CA-specific configuration parameters, and an association with one, enrolled identity certificate. After you have defined a trustpoint, you can reference it by name in commands requiring that you specify a CA.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint test2
Router(config-trustp)# enrollment url http://caurl.com
Router(config-trustp)# subject-name CN=8000Series,OU=BU,O=Govt,L=Newyork,ST=NY,C=US
Router(config-trustp)# rsakeypair 8002
Router(config-trustp)# crl optional
Router(config-trustp)# commit
```

You can also specify the enrollment URL as an IP address (*http://10.2.2.2*).

Running Configuration

The following is a sample output of **show run crypto ca trustpoint test2** command.

```
crypto ca trustpoint test2
crl optional
subject-name CN=8000Series,OU=BU,O=Govt,L=Newyork,ST=NY,C=US
enrollment url http://caurl.com
rsakeypair 8002
!
```

Configure Domain Name

You can configure a domain name, which is required for certificate enrollment.

```
Router(config)# domain name ca.8000-series.cisco.com
Router(config)# commit
```

Running Configuration

The following is a sample output of **show run domain name** command.

```
Router# show run domain name
Thu Mar 29 16:10:42.533 IST
domain name ca.8000-series.cisco.com
```

Authenticate Certificate Authority and Request Certificates

Certificate enrollment involves the following two steps:

1. Obtain CA certificate for the given trust point, using the **crypto ca authenticate tp_name** command.
2. Enroll the device certificate with CA, using the **crypto ca enroll tp_name** command.

```
Router# crypto ca authenticate test2
Router# crypto ca enroll test2
```

Running Configuration

The following is a sample output of the **show crypto ca certificates** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show crypto ca certificates
Trustpoint : test2
=====
CA certificate
Serial Number      : E0:18:F3:E4:53:17:3E:28
Subject            : subject-name CN=8002,OU=BU,O=Govt,L=Newyork,ST=NY,C=US
Issued By          : subject-name CN=8002,OU=BU,O=Govt,L=Newyork,ST=NY,C=US
Validity Start     : 08:17:32 UTC Fri Jun 24 2016
Validity End       : 08:17:32 UTC Mon Jun 22 2026
SHA1 Fingerprint   : 894ABBFAA3B08E5B7D9E470ECFBBC04576B569F2
Router certificate
Key usage          : General Purpose
Status             : Available
Serial Number      : 03:18
Subject            :
serialNumber=cf302761,unstructuredAddress=209.165.200.225,unstructuredName=8002,
C=US,ST=NY,L=Newyork,O=Govt,OU=BU,CN=8002
Issued By          : CN=8000Series,OU=BU,O=Govt,L=Newyork,ST=NY,C=US
Validity Start     : 13:04:52 UTC Fri Feb 23 2018
Validity End       : 13:04:52 UTC Sat Feb 23 2019
SHA1 Fingerprint   : 33B50A59C76CCD87D3D0F0271CD5C81F4A1EE9E1
Associated Trustpoint: test2
```

Configure EAP Profile

You can configure multiple EAP profiles.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# eap profile 8002
Router(config-eap)# identity CE1
Router(config-eap)# method tls pki-trustpoint test2
Router(config-eap)# commit
```

Running Configuration

The following is sample output of **show run eap** command.

```
Router# show run eap profile 8002
eap profile 8002
method tls pki-trustpoint test2
!
identity CE1
!
```

Configure 802.1X Profile on the Device

```
Router# configure
Router(config)# dot1x profile 8k_prof
Router(config-dot1x-8k_prof)# pae both
Router(config-dot1x-8k_prof)# authenticator timer reauth-time 3600
Router(config-dot1x-8k_prof)# supplicant eap profile 8002
Router(config-dot1x-8k_prof)# exit
Router(config)# commit
Router(config)# end
```

Running Configuration

The following is a sample output of the **show run dot1x profile 8k_prof** command.

```
Router# show run dot1x profile 8k_prof

dot1x profile 8k_prof
pae both
authenticator
    timer reauth-time 3600
!
supplicant
    eap profile 8002
!
```

Configure MACSec EAP and 802.1X Profile on an Interface

You can attach one of the 802.1X profiles on an interface.

```
Router# configure
Router(config)# interface fourHundredGigE 0/0/0/0
Router(config-if)# dot1x profile 8k_prof
Router(config-if)# macsec eap policy macsec-1
Router(config-if)# commit
```

Running Configuration

The following is a sample output of the **show run interface** command.

```
Router# show run interface HundredGigE 0/0/0/0
interface HundredGigE 0/0/0/0
dot1x profile 8k_prof
macsec eap policy macsec-1
!
```

Verify MACSec EAP and 802.1X Configuration on Interface

The following is a sample output of **show dot1x interface** command.

```
Router# show dot1x interface HundredGigE 0/0/0/24 detail

Dot1x info for HundredGigE 0/0/0/24
-----
Interface short name : Hu0/0/0/24
Interface handle     : 0x800020
Interface MAC        : 0201.9ab0.85af
Ethertype            : 888E
PAE                  : Both
Dot1x Port Status   : AUTHORIZED
Dot1x Profile        : 8k_prof
Supplicant:
Config Dependency    : Resolved
Eap profile          : 8k
Client List:
Authenticator        : 0257.3fae.5cda
EAP Method           : EAP-TLS
Supp SM State        : Authenticated
Supp Bend SM State   : Idle
Last authen time     : 2018 Mar 01 13:31:03.380
Authenticator:
Config Dependency    : Resolved
ReAuth               : Enabled, 0 day(s), 01:00:00
```

```

Client List:
Supplicant           : 0257.3fae.5cda
Auth SM State       : Authenticated
Auth Bend SM State   : Idle
Last authen time    : 2018 Mar 01 13:33:17.852
Time to next reauth : 0 day(s), 00:59:57

```

```

MKA Interface:
Dot1x Tie Break Role : Auth
EAP Based Macsec     : Enabled
MKA Start time       : 2018 Mar 01 13:33:17.852
MKA Stop time        : NA
MKA Response time    : 2018 Mar 01 13:33:18.357

```

The following is a sample output of **show macsec mka session interface** command.

```

Router# show macsec mka session interface HundredGigE 0/0/0/24
=====
Interface Local-TxSCI # Peers Status Key-Server
=====
Hu0/0/0/24 0201.9ab0.85af/0001 1 Secured YES

```

The following is a sample output of **show macsec mka session interface detail** command.

```

Router# show macsec mka session interface HundredGigE 0/0/0/24 detail

MKA Detailed Status for MKA Session
=====
Status                               : SECURED - Secured MKA Session with MACsec

Local Tx-SCI                          : 0201.9ab0.85af/0001
Local Tx-SSCI                         : 2
Interface MAC Address                  : 0201.9ab0.85af
MKA Port Identifier                    : 1
Interface Name                         : Hu0/0/0/24
CAK Name (CKN)                        : A94399EE68B2A455F85527A4309485DA
CA Authentication Mode                 : EAP
Keychain                              : NA (EAP mode)
Member Identifier (MI)                 : 3222A4A7678A6BDA553FDB54
Message Number (MN)                   : 114
Authenticator                          : YES
Key Server                             : YES
MKA Cipher Suite                       : AES-128-CMAC
Configured MACSec Cipher Suite        : GCM-AES-XPN-256
Latest SAK Status                      : Rx & Tx
Latest SAK AN                          : 1
Latest SAK KI (KN)                    : 3222A4A7678A6BDA553FDB5400000001 (1)
Old SAK Status                         : No Rx, No Tx
Old SAK AN                              : 0
Old SAK KI (KN)                       : RETIRED (0)
SAK Transmit Wait Time                 : 0s (Not waiting for any peers to respond)
SAK Retire Time                        : 0s (No Old SAK to retire)
Time to SAK Rekey                      : NA
MKA Policy Name                        : *DEFAULT POLICY*
Key Server Priority                     : 16
Delay Protection                        : FALSE
Replay Window Size                     : 64
Include ICV Indicator                  : FALSE
Confidentiality Offset                 : 0
Algorithm Agility                      : 80C201
SAK Cipher Suite                       : 0080C20001000004 (GCM-AES-XPN-256)
MACsec Capability                      : 3 (MACsec Integrity, Confidentiality, & Offset)
MACsec Desired                         : YES

# of MACsec Capable Live Peers        : 1

```

of MACsec Capable Live Peers Responded : 1

Live Peer List:

| MI | MN | Rx-SCI (Peer) | SSCI | KS-Priority |
|--------------------------|-----|---------------------|------|-------------|
| 86B47DE76B42D9D7AB6805F7 | 113 | 0257.3fae.5cda/0001 | 1 | 16 |

Potential Peer List:

| MI | MN | Rx-SCI (Peer) | SSCI | KS-Priority |
|----|----|---------------|------|-------------|
|----|----|---------------|------|-------------|

Peers Status:

Last Tx MKPDU : 2018 Mar 01 13:36:56.450
Peer Count : 1
RxSCI : 02573FAE5CDA0001
MI : 86B47DE76B42D9D7AB6805F7
Peer CAK : Match
Latest Rx MKPDU : 2018 Mar 01 13:36:56.450



CHAPTER 8

Implementing URPF

This section describes the implementation of URPF.

- [Understanding uRPF, on page 219](#)
- [Configuring uRPF in Loose Mode, on page 221](#)
- [Configuring uRPF in Strict Mode, on page 222](#)

Understanding uRPF

Table 30: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | |
|--------------------|---------------------|---|
| uRPF in Loose Mode | Release 25.4.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 8711-48Z-M• 8011-12G12X4Y-A• 8011-12G12X4Y-D |
| uRPF in Loose Mode | Release 25.1.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 8712-MOD-M• 8011-4G24Y4H-I |

| Feature Name | Release Information | |
|--------------------|---------------------|--|
| uRPF in Loose Mode | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |
| uRPF in Loose Mode | Release 7.3.15 | <p>When the source IP address of an incoming packet is not present in the Forwarding Information Base (FIB), the router considers it as an invalid packet and drops it. Use the allow-default keyword of ipv4/ipv6 verify unicast source reachable-via command and configure the default route for the interface so that the router does not drop a packet even when the source IP address is not present in the FIB.</p> <p>The command ipv4/ipv6 verify unicast source reachable-via is introduced.</p> |

It has become commonplace practice for hackers planning a Denial of Service (DoS) attack to use forged IP addresses (the practice is known as IP address spoofing). Hackers constantly change the source IP address to avoid detection by service providers. DoS uses more than one forged IP address from thousands of hosts that are infected with malware to flood a device. Therefore, it is complicated to identify and defeat the malware attack.

The uRPF is a mechanism for validating the source IP address of packets that are received on a router. A router that is configured with uRPF performs a reverse path lookup in the FIB table to validate the presence of the source IP address. If the FIB table lists the source IP address, then it indicates that the source is reachable and valid. If the FIB table does not list the source IP address, the router treats the packet as malicious and drops it.

The router supports uRPF in two modes:

- **uRPF in Loose Mode:** In uRPF loose mode, the router checks if it has a matching entry for the source IP address in the FIB and does not drop the legitimate regardless of interfaces the source address is learned on
- **uRPF in Strict Mode:** In uRPF strict mode, the router check if the interface receiving traffic packets is the same as the interface to reach the incoming packet's source address, the router considers such traffic packets legitimate and processes them. If not, the router drops it. The router supports uRPF in Strict Mode since IOS XR Release 7.9.1

Configuring uRPF in Loose Mode

When you configure uRPF in loose mode, the router checks if it has a matching entry for the source IP address in the FIB and does not drop the legitimate traffic that uses an alternate interface to reach the router. The uRPF in loose mode is useful in multihomed, service provider, edge networks.

Configuration

Use the following configuration to configure uRPF in loose mode on the router.

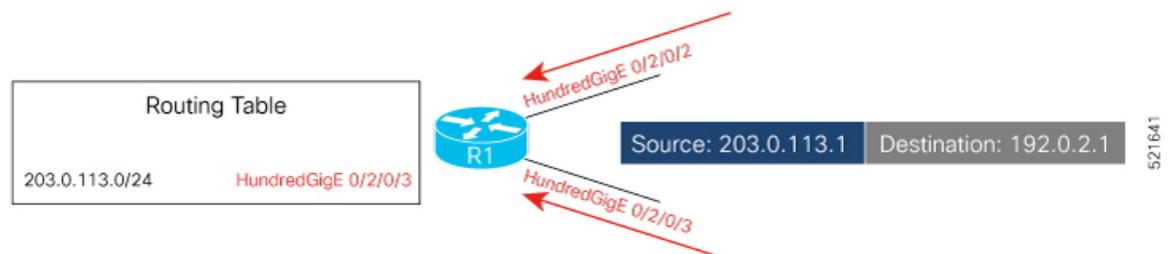


- Note**
- You can configure uRPF in loose mode on router interfaces, subinterfaces, bundle interfaces, and bundle subinterfaces
 - Configure both IPv4 and IPv6 commands (as described in this section) for uRPF to work.

```
Router(config)# interface HundredGigE 0/2/0/2
Router(config-if)# ipv4 verify unicast source reachable-via any
Router(config-if)# ipv6 verify unicast source reachable-via any
Router(config-if)# commit
```

In the following figure, in router R1, the FIB table lists HundredGigE0/2/0/3 as the egress interface for the network 203.0.113.0/24. The ingress interface is HundredGigE 0/2/0/2. R1 receives packets with source IP address as 203.1.113.1 from both the interfaces, HundredGigE0/2/0/2 and HundredGigE0/2/0/3. When you configure uRPF in loose mode on the ingress interface, the router checks if the source address has a matching entry in the FIB table. The router does not drop the packet even if the ingress interface is not listed in the FIB table as the outgoing interface for that prefix.

Figure 9: uRPF in Loose Mode



Running Configuration

To verify that the number of packets dropped due to uRPF configuration, you can use the **show cef drops**:

```
Router(config-if)# show cef drops
Node: 0/0/CPU0
  Unresolved drops      packets :          0
  Unsupported drops     packets :          0
  Null0 drops           packets :          0
  No route drops        packets :          2
  No Adjacency drops    packets :          0
  Checksum error drops  packets :          0
  RPF drops           packets :       1911
  RPF suppressed drops  packets :          0
```

```

RP destined drops   packets :           0
Discard drops       packets :           0
GRE lookup drops    packets :           0
GRE processing drops packets :           0
LISP punt drops     packets :           0
LISP encap err drops packets :           0
LISP decap err drops packets :           0
Node: 0/RP0/CPU0
Unresolved drops   packets :           0
Unsupported drops  packets :           0
Null0 drops        packets :           0
No route drops     packets :            2
No Adjacency drops packets :           0
Checksum error drops packets :           0
RPF drops         packets :          1503

```

You have successfully configured uRPF in loose mode on the router.

Configuring Default Route for uRPF in Loose Mode

When you configure uRPF in loose mode, the source address of the packet must appear in the FIB for the verification process. However, you can use the **allow-default** option to use the default route in the source IP address verification process.

- When you do not configure the **allow-default** option, the router drops the packet that does not have its source address listed in the FIB table.
- When you configure the **allow-default** option, you must configure the default route for the interface. Otherwise, the router drops the packet.
- When you configure uRPF in loose mode with **allow-default** on any VRF interface, then it is applicable to all the interfaces in that VRF of the router.

Use the following configuration to configure uRPF in loose mode on the router along with the default address.

```

Router(config)# interface HundredGigE 0/2/0/2
Router(config-if)# ipv4 verify unicast source reachable-via any allow-default
Router(config-if)# ipv6 verify unicast source reachable-via any allow-default
Router(config-if)# commit

```

Configuring uRPF in Strict Mode

Table 31: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---------------------|---------------------|--|
| uRPF in Strict Mode | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---------------------|---------------------|--|
| uRPF in Strict Mode | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |
| uRPF in Strict Mode | Release 7.9.1 | <p>You can protect the router against DoS attacks with spoofed source IP addresses by enabling the Strict mode in uRPF. When this feature is enabled, the router accepts the incoming packet only if the source IP address of the packet is present in its routing table and if the source IP address of the input packet is reachable via the interface on which the packet has been received. If not, the router drops the packet. In earlier releases IOS XR supports only loose mode uRPF.</p> <p>This feature introduces the hw-module profile cef unipath-surpf command.</p> <p>This feature modifies the ipv4/ipv6 verify unicast source reachable-via command.</p> |

When you enable uRPF in strict mode, the router checks for the source address of the packet in the Forwarding Information Base (FIB). If the router receives the incoming packet on the same interface that the router would use to forward the traffic to the source of the packet, the packet passes the check and is further processed; otherwise, it is dropped. uRPF in strict mode should only be applied where there's natural or configured symmetry. Because internal interfaces are likely to have routing asymmetry. That is, multiple routes to the source of a packet, uRPF in strict mode shouldn't be implemented on interfaces that are internal to the network.

Usage Guidelines

- You can configure uRPF in strict mode on router interfaces, subinterfaces, bundle interfaces, and bundle subinterfaces.
- The tunnel and BVI interfaces don't support uRPF strict mode.
- Configure both IPv4 and IPv6 traffic types for uRPF to work.
- uRPF Strict mode is disabled in the router, by default.
- The uRPF in strict mode supports the **allow default** option. When the **allow default** option is enabled with the uRPF in strict mode, the packet is processed further only if it arrived through the default routes.

Prerequisites

Configure both IPv4 and IPv6 traffic types for uRPF to work.

Configuration

Use the following configuration to configure uRPF in strict mode on the router:

```
Router(config)# hw-module profile cef unipath-surpf enable
Router(config)# interface HundredGigE 0/2/0/2
Router(config-if)# ipv4 address 10.0.0.1 255.255.255.0
Router(config-if)# ipv4 verify unicast source reachable-via rx
Router(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001::1/64
Router(config-if)# ipv6 verify unicast source reachable-via rx
Router(config-if)# commit
Router(config-if)# exit
Router(config)# reload
```



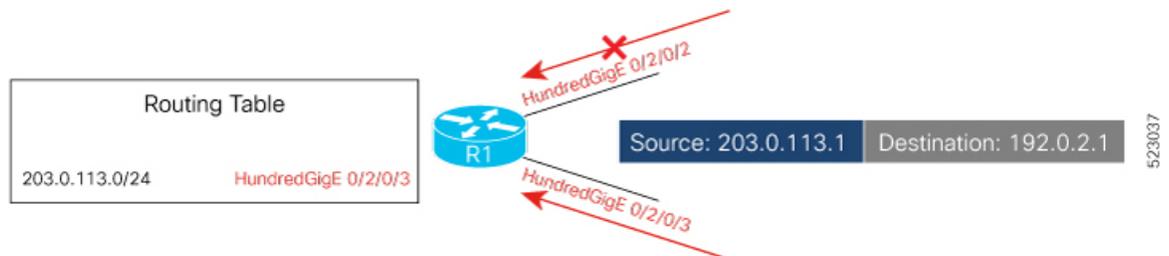
Note You must reload the router after executing the **hw-module profile cef unipath-surpf** command.

In the following figure, in router R1, the FIB table lists HundredGigE0/2/0/3 as the egress interface for the network 203.0.113.0/24. R1 receives packets with source IP address as 203.1.113.1 from two different interfaces, HundredGigE0/2/0/2 and HundredGigE0/2/0/3. R1 accepts the packet coming from HundredGigE0/2/0/3 as the route to reach the source is 203.1.113.1 according to the FIB table. But the incoming packet via HundredGigE0/2/0/2 is dropped as the entries in the FIB table doesn't specifies HundredGigE0/2/0/2 as the interface to reach 203.1.113.1.



Note In the above example, the **hw-module profile cef unipath-surpf** configuration ensures the router R1 drops incoming packets via HundredGigE0/2/0/2, as according to the FIB table, the only interface to reach 203.0.113.0/24 is HundredGigE0/2/0/3. If there are multiple egress interfaces in router R1 for the 203.0.113.0/24 network, they will ensure to check all of these entries before dropping the packet.

Figure 10: uRPF in Strict Mode



Running Configuration

Confirm your configuration as shown:

```
Router(config-if)# show running-config
...
!
interface HundredGigE 0/2/0/2
  ipv4 address 10.0.0.1 255.255.255.0
  ipv4 verify unicast source reachable-via rx
  ipv6 address 2001::1/64
  ipv6 verify unicast source reachable-via rx
!
```

Running Configuration

To verify that the number of packets dropped due to uRPF configuration, you can use the **show cef drops**:

```
Router(config-if)# show cef drops
Node: 0/0/CPU0
  Unresolved drops      packets :          0
  Unsupported drops     packets :          0
  Null0 drops           packets :          0
  No route drops        packets :          2
  No Adjacency drops    packets :          0
  Checksum error drops  packets :          0
  RPF drops             packets :      1911
  RPF suppressed drops  packets :          0
  RP destined drops     packets :          0
  Discard drops         packets :          0
  GRE lookup drops      packets :          0
  GRE processing drops  packets :          0
  LISP punt drops       packets :          0
  LISP encap err drops  packets :          0
  LISP decap err drops  packets :          0
Node: 0/RP0/CPU0
  Unresolved drops      packets :          0
  Unsupported drops     packets :          0
  Null0 drops           packets :          0
  No route drops        packets :          2
  No Adjacency drops    packets :          0
  Checksum error drops  packets :          0
  RPF drops             packets :      1503
```




CHAPTER 9

Implementing Type 6 Password Encryption

Type 6 password encryption uses a reversible 128-bit AES encryption algorithm for storing passwords. Type 6 password encryption allows secure, and encrypted storage of plain-text passwords on the device. The device can decrypt the encrypted passwords into their original plain-text format.

You can use Type 6 password encryption to securely store plain text key strings for authenticating BGP, IP SLA, IS-IS, MACsec, OSPF, and RSVP sessions.

- [How to Implement Type 6 Password Encryption](#) , on page 227

How to Implement Type 6 Password Encryption

Scenario - The following 3-step process explains the Type 6 password encryption process for authenticating BGP sessions between two routers, R1 and R2.

Follow the first two steps for all Type 6 password encryption scenarios. The third step, *Creating BGP Sessions*, is specific to BGP. Similarly, you can enable Type 6 password encryption for OSPF, IS-IS, or other protocol sessions. For details on creating these protocol sessions, see the content in *Configure>Routing* listed [here](#).

For MACsec authentication, refer the *Secure MACsec encryption chapter* in *MACsec Configuration Guide for Cisco 8000 Series Routers, Cisco IOS XR Releases*.



Note You must enable the master key for type 6 password encryption after an iPXE boot using the **key config-key password-encryption** command.

Enabling Type6 Feature and Creating a Primary Key (Type 6 Server)

The Type6 encryption key, hereafter referred to as primary key in this chapter, is the password or key that encrypts all plain text key strings in the router configuration. An Advance Encryption Standard (AES) symmetric cipher does the encryption.

Creating the Primary Key

Use the **key config-key password-encryption** command to create the primary key.

Configuration Example

```
R1 & R2 # key config-key password-encryption
```

```

Fri Jul 19 12:22:45.519 UTC
New password Requirements: Min-length 6, Max-length 64
Characters restricted to [A-Z][a-z][0-9]
Enter new key :
Enter confirm key :
Master key operation is started in background

```

Once the command is executed, the **Master key operation**—creating, updating, or deleting the primary key—happens in the background. You can use the **show type6 server** command to view the status of the primary key operation.

When the key is created, it is stored internally; not as part of the router configuration. The router does not display the primary key as part of the running configuration. So, you cannot see or access the primary key when you connect to the router.

Enabling Type 6 Password Encryption

```

/* Enable Type 6 password encryption */
R1 & R2 (config)# password6 encryption aes
R1 & R2 (config)# commit
Fri Jul 19 12:22:45.519 UTC

```

Modifying the Primary Key



Note The Type 6 primary key update results in configuration change of the key chain and the other clients using Type 6. As the failure of router being configured can disrupt the product network, it is recommended to perform the primary key update operation during a maintenance window. Else, routing protocol sessions might fail.

The primary key is not saved to the running configuration, but the changes are persistent across reloads. The primary key update cannot be rolled back. That is, once the primary key is modified, you cannot revert to the older key using the **rollback configuration** command.

Enter the **key config-key password-encryption** command, and the old key and new key information.

```

R1 & R2# key config-key password-encryption

New password Requirements: Min-length 6, Max-length 64
Characters restricted to [A-Z][a-z][0-9]
Enter old key :
Enter new key :
Enter confirm key :
Master key operation is started in background

```

Deleting the Primary Key

```

R1 & R2# configure
R1 & R2 (config)# no password6 encryption aes
R1 & R2 (config)# commit
R1 & R2 (config)# exit
R1 & R2# key config-key password-encryption delete

```

```

WARNING: All type 6 encrypted keys will become unusable
Continue with master key deletion ? [yes/no]:yes
Master key operation is started in background

```

Verification

Verify that the primary key configuration and Type 6 feature configuration state are in the *Enabled* state. The **Master key Inprogress** field displays **No** to indicate that the primary key activity is complete (created, modified, or deleted). When you disable a primary key, **Disabled** is displayed for all the three states.

```
R1 & R2#show type6 server
```

```
Fri Jul 19 12:23:49.154 UTC
Server detail information:
=====
AES config State      :      Enabled
Masterkey config State :      Enabled
Type6 feature State   :      Enabled
Master key Inprogress :      No
Masterkey Last updated/deleted : Mon Nov 4 15:55:11 2024
Masterkey Size (bits) : 48
Masterkey Hash (Algo:sha512,Format:base64) :
ujJTh2rta8ItSm/1PYQGxq2GQZXtFEqlyHYhtsIztUi66uaVbFNG7IwX9eoQ817jy8UUeX7X3dMUVGTioLq0Ew
```

Verify Type 6 trace server details.

```
R1 & R2#show type6 trace server all
```

```
Fri Jul 19 12:26:05.111 UTC
Client file lib/type6/type6_server_wr
25 wrapping entries (18496 possible, 64 allocated, 0 filtered, 25 total)
Jul 19 09:59:27.168 lib/type6/type6_server_wr 0/RP0/CPU0 t7145 ***** Type6 server process
started Respawn count (1) ****
...
...
Jul 19 12:22:59.908 lib/type6/type6_server_wr 0/RP0/CPU0 t7145 User has started Master key
operation (CREATE)
Jul 19 12:22:59.908 lib/type6/type6_server_wr 0/RP0/CPU0 t7145 Created Master key in TAM
successfully
Jul 19 12:23:00.265 lib/type6/type6_server_wr 0/RP0/CPU0 t7145 Master key Available set to
(AVAILABLE)
Jul 19 12:23:00.272 lib/type6/type6_server_wr 0/RP0/CPU0 t7145 Master key inprogress set
to (NOT INPROGRESS)
```

From Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.0.14 and later, you can use the **show type6 masterkey update status** command to display the update status of the primary key. Prior to this release, you could use the **show type6 clients** command for the same purpose.

```
Router#show type6 masterkey update status
Thu Sep 17 06:48:56.595 UTC
Type6 masterkey operation is NOT inprogress
```

```
Router#show type6 masterkey update status
Thu Sep 17 06:50:07.980 UTC
Type6 masterkey operation is inprogress
```

```
Masterkey update status information:
Client Name      Status
=====
keychain         INPROGRESS
```

Clear Type 6 Client State

You can use the **clear type6 client** command in XR EXEC mode to clear the Type 6 client state.

If the primary key update operation is stuck at any stage, then you can use this **clear** command to clear that state. You can track the primary key update operation using the **show type6 server** command output. If the *Master key Inprogress* field in that output displays as *YES*, then you can use **show type6 masterkey update status** command (or, **show type6 clients** command, prior to Release 7.0.14) to check which client has not completed the operation. Accordingly, you can clear that particular client using the **clear** command.

Associated Commands

- **clear type6 client**
- **key config-key password-encryption**
- **password6 encryption aes**
- **show type6**

Implementing Key Chain for BGP Sessions (Type 6 Client)

For detailed information on key chains, refer the [Implementing Keychain Management](#) chapter.

If you enable Type 6 password encryption, plain-text keys are encrypted using Type 6 encryption. Enter plain-text key-string input in alphanumeric form. If you enable MACsec with Type 6 password encryption, the key-string input is in hexadecimal format.

Configuration

```
/* Enter the key chain details */
R1 & R2# configure
R1 & R2 (config)# key chain my-test-keychain
R1 & R2 (config-type6_password)# key 1
```

Enter the Type 6 encrypted format using the **key-string password6** command.



Note Using the **key-string** command, you can enter the password in clear text format or Type 6 encrypted (already encrypted password) format, as used in this scenario.



Note Enable the same key string for all the routers.

```
R1 & R2 (config-type6_password-1)# key-string password6
6664496443695544484a4448674b695e685d56565d676364554b64555f4c5c645b
R1 & R2 (config-type6_password-1)# cryptographic-algorithm HMAC-MD5
R1 & R2 (config-type6_password-1)# accept-lifetime 1:00:00 october 24 2005 infinite
R1 & R2 (config-type6_password-1)# send-lifetime 1:00:00 october 24 2005 infinite
R1 & R2 (config-type6_password-1)# commit
```



Note Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) supports only HMAC-MD5 and HMAC-SHA1-12.

Verification

Verify key chain trace server information.

```
R1 & R2# show key chain trace server both
```

```
Sat Jul 20 16:44:08.768 UTC
Client file lib/kc/kc_srvr_wr
4 wrapping entries (18496 possible, 64 allocated, 0 filtered, 4 total)
Jul 20 16:43:26.342 lib/kc/kc_srvr_wr 0/RP0/CPU0 t312 *****kc_srvr process
started*****
Jul 20 16:43:26.342 lib/kc/kc_srvr_wr 0/RP0/CPU0 t312 (kc_srvr) Cerrno DLL registration
successfull
Jul 20 16:43:26.349 lib/kc/kc_srvr_wr 0/RP0/CPU0 t312 (kc_srvr) Initialised sysdb connection
Jul 20 16:43:26.612 lib/kc/kc_srvr_wr 0/RP0/CPU0 t317 (kc_srvr_type6_thread) Succesfully
registered as a type6 client
```

Verify configuration details for the key chain.

```
R1 & R2# show key chain type6_password
```

```
Sat Jul 20 17:05:12.803 UTC

Key-chain: my-test-keychain -
  Key 1 -- text "6664496443695544484a4448674b695e685d56565d676364554b64555f4c5c645b"
    Cryptographic-Algorithm -- HMAC_MD5
    Send lifetime -- 01:00:00, 24 Oct 2005 - Always valid [Valid now]
    Accept lifetime -- 01:00:00, 24 Oct 2005 - Always valid [Valid now]
Verify Type 6 client information.
```

Associated Commands

- **key chain**
- **key-string password6**
- **show key chain trace server both**

Creating a BGP Session (Type 6 Password Encryption Use Case)

This example provides iBGP session creation configuration. To know how to configure the complete iBGP network, refer the *BGP Configuration Guide for Cisco 8000 Series Routers*.

Configuration Example

```
/* Create BGP session on Router1 */
R1# configure
R1(config)# router bgp 65537
```

Ensure that you use the same key chain name for the BGP session and the Type 6 encryption (for example, *my-test-keychain* in this scenario).

```
R1 (config-bgp)# neighbor 10.1.1.11 remote-as 65537
R1 (config-bgp)# keychain my-test-keychain
R1 (config-bgp)# address-family ipv4 unicast
R1 (config-bgp)# commit
```

Repeat the above steps on Router 2 as well.

Ensure that you use the same session and keychain for all the routers (R1 and R2 in this case).

```
/* Create BGP session on Router2 */
```

```
R2 (config)# router bgp 65537
R2 (config-bgp)# neighbor 10.1.1.1 remote-as 65537
R2 (config-bgp)# keychain my-test-keychain
R2 (config-bgp)# address-family ipv4 unicast
R2 (config-bgp)# commit
```

Verification

On the routers R1 and R2, verify that the BGP NBR state is in the *Established* state.

```
R1# show bgp sessions
Neighbor      VRF      Spk      AS      InQ      OutQ      NBRState      NSRState
10.1.1.11     default  0        65537   0        0        Established   None
```

```
R2# show bgp sessions
Neighbor      VRF      Spk      AS      InQ      OutQ      NBRState      NSRState
10.1.1.1     default  0        65537   0        0        Established   None
```

Associated Commands

- `session-group`
- `show bgp sessions`



CHAPTER 10

Implementing Management Plane Protection

The Management Plane Protection (MPP) feature in Cisco IOS XR software provides the capability to restrict the interfaces on which network management packets are allowed to enter a device. The MPP feature allows a network operator to designate one or more router interfaces as management interfaces.

Device management traffic may enter a device only through these management interfaces. After MPP is enabled, no interfaces except designated management interfaces accept network management traffic destined to the device. Restricting management packets to designated interfaces provides greater control over management of a device, providing more security for that device.

This module describes how to implement management plane protection on Cisco 8000 Series Routers.

- [Prerequisites for Implementing Management Plane Protection, on page 233](#)
- [Restrictions for Implementing Management Plane Protection, on page 233](#)
- [Information About Implementing Management Plane Protection, on page 234](#)
- [How to Configure a Device for Management Plane Protection, on page 236](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Implementing Management Plane Protection, on page 237](#)
- [Additional References, on page 239](#)

Prerequisites for Implementing Management Plane Protection

You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.

Restrictions for Implementing Management Plane Protection

- Currently, MPP does not keep track of denied or dropped protocol requests.
- MPP configuration does not enable the protocol services. MPP is responsible only for making the services available on different interfaces. The protocols are enabled explicitly.
- Management requests that are received on inband interfaces are not necessarily acknowledged there.
- Route Processor (RP) interfaces are by default designated as out-of-band interfaces, and can be configured under MPP.

- The changes made for the MPP configuration do not affect the active sessions that are established before the changes.
- Currently, MPP controls only the incoming management requests for protocols, such as TFTP, Telnet, Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), Secure Shell (SSH), and HTTP.
- MPP does not support MIB.
- In an MPLS L3VPN, when MPP has a VRF interface attached, it applies the VRF filter on an incoming interface through LPTS. When an incoming packet from the core interface has a different VRF, then MPP does not allow it.



Note When configuring a device for MPP for an inband interface the **interface all** configuration does not apply specific VRF filter and allows traffic for all source and destination interfaces.

Information About Implementing Management Plane Protection

Before you enable the Management Plane Protection feature, you should understand the following concepts:

Inband Management Interface

An *inband management interface* is a Cisco IOS XR software physical or logical interface that processes management packets, as well as data-forwarding packets. An inband management interface is also called a *shared management interface*.

Out-of-Band Management Interface

Out-of-band refers to an interface that allows only management protocol traffic to be forwarded or processed. An *out-of-band management interface* is defined by the network operator to specifically receive network management traffic. The advantage is that forwarding (or customer) traffic cannot interfere with the management of the router, which significantly reduces the possibility of denial-of-service attacks.

Out-of-band interfaces forward traffic only between out-of-band interfaces or terminate management packets that are destined to the router. In addition, the out-of-band interfaces can participate in dynamic routing protocols. The service provider connects to the router's out-of-band interfaces and builds an independent overlay management network, with all the routing and policy tools that the router can provide.

Peer-Filtering on Interfaces

The peer-filtering option allows management traffic from specific peers, or a range of peers, to be configured.

Control Plane Protection Overview

A *control plane* is a collection of processes that run at the process level on a route processor and collectively provide high-level control for most Cisco IOS XR software functions. All traffic directly or indirectly destined

to a router is handled by the control plane. Management Plane Protection operates within the Control Plane Infrastructure.

Management Plane

The *management plane* is the logical path of all traffic that is related to the management of a routing platform. One of three planes in a communication architecture that is structured in layers and planes, the management plane performs management functions for a network and coordinates functions among all the planes (management, control, and data). In addition, the management plane is used to manage a device through its connection to the network.

Examples of protocols processed in the management plane are Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), Telnet, HTTP, Secure HTTP (HTTPS), and SSH. These management protocols are used for monitoring and for command-line interface (CLI) access. Restricting access to devices to internal sources (trusted networks) is critical.

Management Plane Protection Feature

The MPP protection feature, as well as all the management protocols under MPP, are disabled by default. When you configure an interface as either out-of-band or inband, it automatically enables MPP. Consequently, this enablement extends to all the protocols under MPP.

If MPP is disabled and a protocol is activated, all interfaces can pass traffic.

When MPP is enabled with an activated protocol, the only default management interfaces allowing management traffic are the route processor (RP) and standby route processor (SRP) Ethernet interfaces. You must manually configure any other interface for which you want to enable MPP as a management interface, using the MPP CLI that follows. Afterwards, only the default management interfaces and those you have previously configured as MPP interfaces will accept network management packets destined for the device. All other interfaces drop such packets.



Note Logical interfaces (or any other interfaces not present on the data plane) filter packets based on the ingress physical interface.

After configuration, you can modify or delete a management interface.

Following are the management protocols that the MPP feature supports. These management protocols are also the only protocols affected when MPP is enabled.

- SSHv2
- SNMP, all versions
- Telnet
- TFTP
- HTTP
- HTTPS

Benefits of the Management Plane Protection Feature

Implementing the MPP feature provides the following benefits:

- Greater access control for managing a device than allowing management protocols on all interfaces.
- Improved performance for data packets on non-management interfaces.
- Support for network scalability.
- Simplifies the task of using per-interface access control lists (ACLs) to restrict management access to the device.
- Fewer ACLs are needed to restrict access to the device.
- Prevention of packet floods on switching and routing interfaces from reaching the CPU.

How to Configure a Device for Management Plane Protection

This section contains the following tasks:

Configuring a Device for Management Plane Protection for an Inband Interface

Perform this task to configure a device that you have just added to your network or a device already operating in your network. This task shows how to configure MPP as an inband interface in which Telnet is allowed to access the router only through a specific interface.

Perform the following additional tasks to configure an inband MPP interface in non-default VRF.

- Configure the interface under the non-default inband VRF.
- Configure the global inband VRF.
- In the case of Telnet, configure the Telnet VRF server for the inband VRF.

```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)#control-plane
Router(config-ctrl)#management-plane
Router(config-mpp)#inband
Router(config-mpp-inband)#interface fourHundredGigE 0/0/0/0
Router(config-mpp-inband-if)#allow telnet peer
Router(config-telnet-peer)#address ipv4 10.1.1.0/16
Router(config-telnet-peer)#commit
```

- FourHundredGigE 0/0/0/0 is configured as an inband interface. Use the **interface all** command form to configure all interfaces as inband interfaces.
- Telnet protocol is configured on the inband interface. To enable all protocols, use the **allow all** command form.

Running Configuration

The following is a sample output of **show mgmt-plane** command for the inband interface fourHundredGigE 0/0/0/0.

```
Router#show mgmt-plane inband interface fourHundredGigE 0/0/0/0

interface - fourHundredGigE 0/0/0/0
  telnet configured -
    peer v4 allowed - 10.1.0.0/16
```

Configuring a Device for Management Plane Protection for an Out-of-band Interface

Perform the following tasks to configure an out-of-band MPP interface.

- Configure the interface under the out-of-band VRF.
- Configure the global out-of-band VRF.
- For a specific protocol, configure the protocol VRF server for the out-of-band VRF.

```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)#control-plane
Router(config-ctrl)#management-plane
Router(config-mpp)#out-of-band
Router(config-mpp-outband)#vrf target
Router(config-mpp-outband)#interface fourHundredGigE 0/0/0/3
Router(config-mpp-outband-if)#allow tftp peer
Router(config-tftp-peer)#address ipv6 33::33
Router(config-tftp-peer)#commit
```

- FourHundredGigE 0/0/0/3 is configured as an out-of-band interface, for the VRF **target**. Use the **interface all** command form to configure all interfaces as out-of-band interfaces.
- TFTP protocol is configured on the out-of-band interface. To enable all protocols, use the **allow all** command form.

Running Configuration

The following is a sample output of the **show mgmt-plane out-of-band vrf** command.

```
Router#show mgmt-plane out-of-band vrf

Management Plane Protection -
  out-of-band VRF - target
```

Configuration Examples for Implementing Management Plane Protection

This section provides the following configuration example:

Configuring Management Plane Protection: Example

The following example shows a detailed example of how to configure inband and out-of-band interfaces under MPP:

```

configure
control-plane
management-plane
inband
interface all
allow SSH
!
interface fourHundredGigE 0/0/0/0
allow all
allow SSH
allow Telnet peer
address ipv4 10.1.0.0/16
!
!
interface fourHundredGigE 0/0/0/0
allow Telnet peer
address ipv4 10.1.0.0/16
!
!
out-of-band
vrf target
interface fourHundredGigE 0/0/0/3
allow TFTP peer
address ipv6 33::33
!
!
!
!
show mgmt-plane

Management Plane Protection

inband interfaces
-----

interface - fourHundredGigE 0/0/0/0
ssh configured -
    All peers allowed
telnet configured -
    peer v4 allowed - 10.1.0.0/16
all configured -
    All peers allowed
interface - fourHundredGigE 0/0/0/0
telnet configured -
    peer v4 allowed - 10.1.0.0/16

interface - all
all configured -
    All peers allowed

outband interfaces
-----
interface - fourHundredGigE 0/0/0/3

```

```

tftp configured -
  peer v6 allowed - 33::33

show mgmt-plane out-of-band vrf

Management Plane Protection -
  out-of-band VRF - target

```

Additional References

The following sections provide references related to implementing management plane protection.

Related Documents

| Related Topic | Document Title |
|---|---|
| MPP commands: complete command syntax, command modes, command history, defaults, usage guidelines, and examples | <i>Management Plane Protection Commands on System Security Command Reference for Cisco 8000 Series Routers.</i> |

Standards

| Standards | Title |
|---|-------|
| No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature. | — |

MIBs

| MIBs | MIBs Link |
|------|--|
| — | To locate and download MIBs using Cisco IOS XR software, use the Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL and choose a platform under the Cisco Access Products menu:
http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml |

RFCs

| RFCs | Title |
|--|-------|
| No new or modified RFCs are supported by this feature. | — |

Technical Assistance

| Description | Link |
|---|---|
| The Cisco Technical Support website contains thousands of pages of searchable technical content, including links to products, technologies, solutions, technical tips, and tools. Registered Cisco.com users can log in from this page to access even more content. | http://www.cisco.com/techsupport |



CHAPTER 11

Implementing Secure Shell

Table 32: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Implementing Secure Shell | Release 25.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8711-48Z-M • 8011-12G12X4Y-A • 8011-12G12X4Y-D |
| Implementing Secure Shell | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC:K100])(select variants only*).</p> <p>Secure Shell (SSH) provides encrypted communication for secure remote management of network devices. This feature enhances security by protecting against eavesdropping and unauthorized access during remote sessions. By implementing SSH, administrators can ensure secure command-line interface access, safeguarding sensitive data and maintaining the integrity of network operations.</p> <p>*Previously this feature was supported on Q200 and Q100. It is now extended to Cisco 8712-MOD-M routers.</p> |

Secure Shell (SSH) is an application and a protocol that provides a secure replacement to the Berkeley r-tools. The protocol secures sessions using standard cryptographic mechanisms, and the application can be used similarly to the Berkeley **rexec** and **rsh** tools.

Two versions of the SSH server are available: SSH Version 1 (SSHv1) and SSH Version 2 (SSHv2). SSHv1 uses Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) keys and SSHv2 uses either Digital Signature Algorithm (DSA)

keys or RSA keys, or Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) keys. Cisco IOS XR software supports both SSHv1 and SSHv2.

This module describes how to implement Secure Shell on Cisco 8000 Series Routers.



Note Cisco IOS XR does not support X11 forwarding through an SSH connection.



Note Any reference to CiscoSSH in this chapter implies OpenSSH-based implementation of SSH that is available on this platform from Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.3.2 and later. CiscoSSH replaces Cisco IOS XR SSH, which is the older SSH implementation that existed prior to this release.



Note For a complete description of the Secure Shell commands used in this chapter, see the *Secure Shell and Secure Socket Layer Commands* chapter in *System Security Command Reference for Cisco 8000 Series Routers*.

| Release | Modification |
|----------------|--|
| Release 7.3.2 | Introduced CiscoSSH. |
| Release 7.3.2 | Introduced SSH port forwarding feature with CiscoSSH. |
| Release 7.3.15 | Introduced SSH port forwarding feature with Cisco IOS XR SSH. |
| Release 7.3.1 | Introduced these features: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ed25519 Public-Key Algorithm Support for SSH • User Configurable Maximum Authentication Attempts for SSH • X.509v3 Certificate-based Authentication for SSH |
| Release 7.0.12 | This chapter was introduced. |

- [Information About Implementing Secure Shell, on page 242](#)
- [Netconf access controls, on page 253](#)
- [Prerequisites for Implementing Secure Shell, on page 257](#)
- [Guidelines and Restrictions for Implementing Secure Shell, on page 257](#)
- [How to Implement Secure Shell, on page 258](#)

Information About Implementing Secure Shell

To implement SSH, you should understand the following concepts:

SSH Server

The SSH server feature enables an SSH client to make a secure, encrypted connection to a Cisco router. This connection provides functionality that is similar to that of an inbound Telnet connection. Before SSH, security was limited to Telnet security. SSH allows a strong encryption to be used with the Cisco IOS XR software authentication. The SSH server in Cisco IOS XR software works with publicly and commercially available SSH clients.

SSH Client

The SSH client feature is an application running over the SSH protocol to provide device authentication and encryption. The SSH client enables a Cisco router to make a secure, encrypted connection to another Cisco router or to any other device running the SSH server. This connection provides functionality that is similar to that of an outbound Telnet connection except that the connection is encrypted. With authentication and encryption, the SSH client allows for a secure communication over an insecure network.

The SSH client in the Cisco IOS XR software works with publicly and commercially available SSH servers. The SSH client supports the ciphers of AES, 3DES, the hash algorithm SHA1, and password authentication. The user authentication mechanisms supported for SSH are RADIUS, TACACS+, and the use of locally stored usernames and passwords.

The SSH client supports setting DSCP value in the outgoing packets using this command:

```
ssh client dscp dscp-value
```

The *dscp-value* ranges from 0 to 63. If not configured, 16 is set as the default DSCP value in the packets (for both client and server).

You can use the **ssh client** command in the XR Config mode to configure various SSH client options.

SSH also supports remote command execution as follows:

```
Router#ssh 192.0.2.1 username admin command "show redundancy sum"
Password:

Wed Jan  9 07:05:27.997 PST
  Active Node      Standby Node
  -----
           0/4/CPU0      0/5/CPU0 (Node Ready, NSR: Not Configured)
Router#
```

SFTP Feature Overview

SSH includes support for secure file transfer protocol (SFTP), a new standard file transfer protocol introduced in SSHv2. This feature provides a secure and authenticated method for copying router configuration or router image files.

The SFTP client functionality is provided as part of the SSH component and is always enabled on the router. Therefore, a user with the appropriate level can copy files to and from the router. Like the **copy** command, the **sftp** command can be used only in XR EXEC mode.

The SFTP client is VRF-aware, and you may configure the secure FTP client to use the VRF associated with a particular source interface during connections attempts. The SFTP client also supports interactive mode, where the user can log on to the server to perform specific tasks via the Unix server.

The SFTP Server is a sub-system of the SSH server. In other words, when an SSH server receives an SFTP server request, the SFTP API creates the SFTP server as a child process to the SSH server. A new SFTP server instance is created with each new request.

The SFTP requests for a new SFTP server in the following steps:

- The user runs the **sftp** command with the required arguments
- The SFTP API internally creates a child session that interacts with the SSH server
- The SSH server creates the SFTP server child process
- The SFTP server and client interact with each other in an encrypted format
- The SFTP transfer is subject to LPTS policer "SSH-Known". Low policer values will affect SFTP transfer speeds



Note The default policer value for SSH-Known is set to 300pps. Slower transfers are expected due to this. You can adjust the lpts policer value for this punt cause to higher values that allows faster transfers.

You can increase the throughput of SCP or SFTP over inband using the **ssh server tcp-window-scale** command.

When the SSH server establishes a new connection with the SSH client, the server daemon creates a new SSH server child process. The child server process builds a secure communications channel between the SSH client and server via key exchange and user authentication processes. If the SSH server receives a request for the sub-system to be an SFTP server, the SSH server daemon creates the SFTP server child process. For each incoming SFTP server subsystem request, a new SSH server child and SFTP server instances are created. The SSH server authenticates the user session and initiates a connection. It sets the environment for the client and the default directory for the user.

Once the initialization occurs, the SFTP server waits for the SSH_FXP_INIT message from the client, which is essential to start the file communication session. This message may then be followed by any message based on the client request. Here, the protocol adopts a 'request-response' model, where the client sends a request to the server; the server processes this request and sends a response.

The SFTP server displays the following responses:

- Status Response
- Handle Response
- Data Response
- Name Response



Note The server must be running in order to accept incoming SFTP connections.

RSA Based Host Authentication

Verifying the authenticity of a server is the first step to a secure SSH connection. This process is called the host authentication, and is conducted to ensure that a client connects to a valid server.

The host authentication is performed using the public key of a server. The server, during the key-exchange phase, provides its public key to the client. The client checks its database for known hosts of this server and the corresponding public-key. If the client fails to find the server's IP address, it displays a warning message to the user, offering an option to either save the public key or discard it. If the server's IP address is found, but the public-key does not match, the client closes the connection. If the public key is valid, the server is verified and a secure SSH connection is established.

The IOS XR SSH server and client had support for DSA based host authentication. But for compatibility with other products, like IOS, RSA based host authentication support is also added.

RSA Based User Authentication

One of the method for authenticating the user in SSH protocol is RSA public-key based user authentication. The possession of a private key serves as the authentication of the user. This method works by sending a signature created with a private key of the user. Each user has a RSA key pair on the client machine. The private key of the RSA key pair remains on the client machine.

The user generates an RSA public-private key pair on a unix client using a standard key generation mechanism such as `ssh-keygen`. The max length of the keys supported is 4096 bits, and the minimum length is 512 bits. The following example displays a typical key generation activity:

```
bash-2.05b$ ssh-keygen -b 1024 -t rsa
Generating RSA private key, 1024 bit long modulus
```

The public key must be in base64 encoded (binary) format for it to be imported correctly into the box. You can use third party tools available on the Internet to convert the key to the binary format.

Once the public key is imported to the router, the SSH client can choose to use the public key authentication method by specifying the request using the “-o” option in the SSH client. For example:

```
client$ ssh -o PreferredAuthentications=publickey 1.2.3.4
```

If a public key is not imported to a router using the RSA method, the SSH server initiates the password based authentication. If a public key is imported, the server proposes the use of both the methods. The SSH client then chooses to use either method to establish the connection. The system allows only 10 outgoing SSH client connections.

Currently, only SSH version 2 supports the RSA based authentication. For more information on how to import the public key to the router, see the *Implementing Certification Authority Interoperability* chapter in this guide.



Note The preferred method of authentication would be as stated in the SSH RFC. The RSA based authentication support is only for local authentication, and not for TACACS/RADIUS servers.

Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) is a suite of network security services that provides the primary framework through which access control can be set up on your Cisco router or access server. For more information on AAA, the *Configuring AAA Services* chapter in this guide.

SSHv2 Client Keyboard-Interactive Authentication

An authentication method in which the authentication information is entered using a keyboard is known as keyboard-interactive authentication. This method is an interactive authentication method in the SSH protocol. This type of authentication allows the SSH client to support different methods of authentication without having to be aware of their underlying mechanisms.

Currently, the SSHv2 client supports the keyboard-interactive authentication. This type of authentication works only for interactive applications.



Note The password authentication is the default authentication method. The keyboard-interactive authentication method is selected if the server is configured to support only the keyboard-interactive authentication.

SSH and SFTP in Baseline Cisco IOS XR Software Image

The SSH and SFTP components are present in the baseline Cisco IOS XR software image. The management and control plane components (such as the IPSec control plane) are also present in the base package. However, the data plane components (such as the MACSec and the IPSec data plane) are part of the security package as per the export compliance regulations. This segregation of package components makes the software more modular. It also gives you the flexibility of including or excluding the security package as per your requirements.

The base package and the security package allow FIPS, so that the control plane can negotiate FIPS-approved algorithms.

CiscoSSH

Table 33: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--------------|---------------------|---|
| CiscoSSH | Release 7.3.2 | <p>This release introduces CiscoSSH, a newer implementation of SSH on this platform.</p> <p>CiscoSSH leverages OpenSSH implementation, by using the Linux TCP/IP stack to transmit and receive SSH packets over the management Ethernet interface and line card interfaces on the router. CiscoSSH provides additional security features like FIPS compliance and X.509 digital certification. It supports packet path features like MPP, ACL and VRF support, and ensures interoperability with various existing SSH implementations.</p> <p>Note
Cisco IOS XR SSH, the SSH implementation that existed prior to this release, is now deprecated.</p> |



Note Any reference to CiscoSSH in this chapter implies OpenSSH-based implementation of SSH that is available on this platform from Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.3.2 and later. CiscoSSH replaces Cisco IOS XR SSH, which is the older SSH implementation that existed prior to this release.

OpenSSH is a stable, widely deployed open-source implementation of SSH. CiscoSSH implementation leverages the key features of openSSH such as strong authentication, cryptography, encryption, port forwarding, and so on, to provide secured management access to the router. CiscoSSH provides additional security features like FIPS compliance and support for X.509 digital certificate.

For more details on SSH in general, see [Information About Implementing Secure Shell, on page 242](#) and [How to Implement Secure Shell, on page 258](#).

The CiscoSSH implementation also ensures backward compatibility for all the existing Cisco IOS XR SSH configuration and management. You can continue to use SSH the way it was existing before. The functionality and configuration commands of CiscoSSH and Cisco IOS XR SSH remain the same for majority of the part. However, certain behavioral changes exist between CiscoSSH and Cisco IOS XR SSH. For details, see the subsequent sections.

This table lists the behavioral changes introduced by CiscoSSH as compared to Cisco IOS XR SSH. Also, see [Guidelines for Using CiscoSSH, on page 249](#).

Table 34: Behavioral Changes Introduced by CiscoSSH in Comparison to Cisco IOS XR SSH

| Functionality | CiscoSSH | Cisco IOS XR SSH |
|---|---|---|
| Port number for Netconf server | The system uses the port numbers 830 (the default IANA-assigned TCP port number for Netconf over SSH) or 22 (the default port number for SSH) for the Netconf server.

You can explicitly configure the desired port number for Netconf server. | You can explicitly configure the desired port number for Netconf server using the ssh server netconf port command. |
| Username syntax | Because CiscoSSH considers ':' (<i>colon</i>) as a delimiter in certain types of user authentication, it does not support authentication of usernames having ':' (<i>colon</i>) in it. | No restriction for using ':' (<i>colon</i>) in username syntax. |
| Configuring unsupported algorithms | You cannot enable unsupported algorithms using any configuration command. | You can explicitly enable unsupported algorithms using the ssh server enable cipher command. |
| SSH session timeout | The SSH session initiated from the router to an unreachable host times out after 120 seconds. | The SSH session initiated from the router to an unreachable host times out after 60 seconds. |
| SSH session timeout criteria | The SSH timeout configuration considers the total timeout value for the maximum number of login attempts allowed. | The SSH timeout configuration considers the timeout value for individual login attempt. |
| Time-based rekey of SSH sessions | The router triggers time-based rekey of SSH sessions only when it receives a packet after the timer expiry. | The router triggers time-based rekey of SSH sessions immediately after the timer expiry. |
| LPTS policer rate for port-forwarded SSH sessions | When using SSH port forwarding feature, the router considers the traffic flows corresponding to port-forwarded SSH sessions as third party applications. Hence, the LPTS polices those traffic flows at a medium rate. | The LPTS polices the traffic flows corresponding to port-forwarded SSH sessions at a high rate. |
| Port-forwarded channels | No limit to the number of port-forwarded channels supported with CiscoSSH. But, the show ssh command displays a maximum of only 16 entries. | Supports a maximum of 16 port-forwarded channels. |
| File transfer through SCP | While using SCP with CiscoSSH, the router checks for the presence of system files after authentication. | The router checks for the presence of system files before authentication. |

| Functionality | CiscoSSH | Cisco IOS XR SSH |
|----------------------------|--|--|
| File transfer through SFTP | With non-interactive SFTP session initiated from the router, you can transfer files from an external device to the router; not from the router to external device. | You can transfer files from an external device to the router, and the other way round. |

Restrictions for Cisco SSH

- Does not support SSH version 1
- Does not support back up SSH server
- Does not support management access to the router over the standby management Ethernet interface. (prior to Cisco IOS XR Software Release 24.2.1)
- Does not allow to use secondary IPv4 addresses because they are not currently synchronized to Linux (prior to Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.7.1)
- Does not support BVI interfaces as source or destination for the SSH connections (prior to Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.7.1)
- Does not support these algorithms:
 - The cipher algorithms, *aes128-cbc*, *aes192-cbc*, *aes256-cbc*, and *3des-cbc*
 - The key-exchange algorithm, *diffie-hellman-group1-sha1*
- Does not support these commands:
 - **show ssh history**
 - **show ssh history details**
 - **clear ssh stale sessions**
- If you configure ingress ACLs only under the management interface and do not configure them under the **ssh server** configuration mode, then those ingress ACLs do not have any impact on the SSH, or Netconf traffic. This behavior is applicable only to ingress ACLs attached to management interface. This restriction is applicable only until Cisco IOS XR Software Release 25.1.1.

Guidelines for Using CiscoSSH

The following section lists certain functionality aspects and guidelines for using CiscoSSH.

- **Netconf Request:** You must follow a specific syntax when you send Netconf request over CLI. Add the subsystem (*netconf* or *sftp*) name as the last argument while issuing an SSH command.

For example,

```
ssh username@ipaddress -p 830 -s netconf ---> Correct usage
ssh username@ipaddress netconf -p 830 -s ---> Incorrect usage
```

- **Configuring unsupported algorithms:** Configuring CiscoSSH server only with unsupported algorithms (*3des-cbc* or *diffie-hellman-group1-sha1*) results in commit failure. Hence, you must remove such configurations on your router as a part of the pre-upgrade procedure.

For example,

```
Router(config)#ssh server algorithms cipher 3des-cbc
```

```
!!% Operation not permitted: 3des-cbc is not supported in ciscossh, SSH cannot work
with this option only
```

Similarly, if you configure CiscoSSH server with both supported and unsupported algorithms, then the router issues the following warning and removes the unsupported algorithm:

```
Router(config)#ssh server algorithms cipher aes128-ctr aes192-ctr 3des-cbc
```

```
ssh_conf_proxy[1193]: %SECURITY-SSHD_CONF_PRX-3-ERR_GENERAL : 3des-cbc is not supported,
will be removed
```

- **SSH session keep alive:** By default, the SSH session keep alive functionality is enabled in CiscoSSH, to detect and terminate unresponsive sessions. The default keep alive time is 60 seconds, with a maximum of three attempts allowed, so that the detection time for unresponsive sessions is 180 seconds. These keep alive parameters are not configurable.
- **TCP window scale:** Although the router accepts the configuration to change the TCP window scale parameter, the configuration does not have any effect with CiscoSSH. This is because, CiscoSSH uses Linux TCP/IP stack that has dynamic window scaling, and hence it does not require applications to specify the window scale.
- **SSH session limit and rate limit:** Although the configuration for SSH session limit and rate limit applies to all VRFs where SSH is enabled, the router enforces the limit for each VRF. However, the maximum number of virtual teletype (VTY) sessions across all VRFs still remains as 200. This in turn limits the total number of SSH sessions that require a VTY interface, across all VRFs. As a result, when upgrading from a release version having Cisco IOS XR SSH to a version having CiscoSSH, the system applies the session limit and rate limit configurations to all VRFs where SSH is enabled. Hence, as part of the post-upgrade procedure, you must reconfigure these limits to achieve the same limit as that of Cisco IOS XR SSH.
- **SSH session limit enforcement:** Information on the number of active SSH sessions on the router is not persistent across SSH server process restarts. Hence, SSH session limit enforcement does not consider the existing sessions after an SSH server restart.
- **SSH with ACL or MPP configuration:** With SSH ACL or MPP configured on the router, the attempt for client connection that is not allowed as per that configuration times out. The router does not send TCP reset for such blocked SSH connections. This implementation is to enhance security.
- **Ingress ACL:** To filter out the ingress SSH and Netconf traffic, we recommend to configure the ingress ACL under the **ssh server** configuration mode instead of configuring under the management interface.

For SSH:

```
ssh server vrf vrf-name ipv4 access-list ipv4-access-list-name ipv6 access-list ipv6-access-list-name
```

For Netconf:

```
ssh server netconf vrf vrf-name ipv4 access-list ipv4-access-list-name ipv6 access-list ipv6-access-list-name
```

Whereas, starting Cisco IOS XR Software Release 25.1.1, the above configuration is not required to filter out the ingress SSH and Netconf traffic. You can configure the **ssh server packet-flow-netio**

ingress command under the XR Config mode to filter out such traffic while still having the ingress ACL configured on the management interface. Note that this configuration might impact the SCP and SFTP traffic performance.

- **Default VRFs:** Configuring the default SSH VRF using the **ssh vrf default** command enables only version 2 of CiscoSSH, because version 1 is not supported.
- **Non-default VRFs:** If SSH service is enabled on any of the non-default VRFs that is configured on the router, and if you restart the *ssh_conf_proxy* process, there might be a delay in allowing incoming SSH sessions on that non-default VRF. The session establishment might even timeout in such a scenario. This behavior is due to the delay in programming the LPTS entries for those sessions.
- **Modifying SSH configuration:** Any change to the SSH configuration results in process restart of SSH server process. However, it does not impact the existing SSH, SCP, SFTP, or Netconf sessions.
- **Clearing SSH sessions:** The **clear ssh all** command clears all incoming sessions.
- **Line-feed option:** Adding a line-feed option for Gossh-based clients results in SSH session establishment failure. This is because, the SSH client checks for non-zero window size for session establishment. Whereas CiscoSSH sends window size as 0. The workaround for this issue is to use the option to ignore the window size while initiating an SSH connection from such clients.
- **Virtual IP addresses:** After a process restart of *xlncd* or *ip_smiap*, there might be a delay in restoring the virtual IP addresses.
- **More-specific Routes:** Routes that are more specific than a connected route will not be available through Linux.

For example:

XR routing table:

```
10.0.0.0/24   via 10.0.0.2 (connected route)
10.0.0.192/28 via 20.0.0.1 (static route)
```

The expected behavior is as follows:

Table 35: Expected Behavior of More-specific Routes with CiscoSSH

| Destination IP Range | Cisco IOS XR OS Sends to: | Linux Sends to: | Match (Yes/No) |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 10.0.0.1 - 10.0.0.191 | 10.0.0.2 | 10.0.0.2 | Yes |
| 10.0.0.193 - 10.0.0.206 | 20.0.0.1 | 10.0.0.2 | No |
| 10.0.0.207 - 10.0.0.255 | 10.0.0.2 | 10.0.0.2 | Yes |

- **Verification commands:** During stress test on the router, certain show commands like **show ssh**, **show ssh session details**, and **show ssh rekey** might time out. The console displays the following error message in such cases:

```
"Error: Timed out to obtain information about one or more incoming/outgoing session.
please retry."
```

- **Process restart:**

- You cannot restart the CiscoSSH server process using the **process restart ssh_server** command, because it is a Linux process. Use the **kill** command on the Linux shell to restart the process.
- CiscoSSH has *ssh_conf_proxy* and *ssh_syslog_proxy* processes that are responsible for processing the SSH configuration and logging syslog messages respectively. You can restart these processes using the **process restart** command.
- A restart of *XR-TCP* process does not have any impact on CiscoSSH functionality, because CiscoSSH uses Linux TCP.

- **Debuggability:**

- You can enable 3 levels of debugs for CiscoSSH using the **debug ssh server 1/12/13** command. Similarly, you can use the **debug ssh client 1/12/13** command for CiscoSSH client.
- The SSH server process restarts every time you enable or disable the debugs, because enabling the debugs results in updating the LOGLEVEL in the internal *sshd_config* file.

Syslogs for CiscoSSH

CiscoSSH introduces new syslogs for various SSH session events. The following table gives a comparison of syslogs between CiscoSSH and Cisco IOS XR SSH:

Table 36: Syslogs for CiscoSSH and Cisco IOS XR SSH

| Session Event | Syslogs on CiscoSSH | Syslogs on Cisco IOS XR SSH |
|---------------|---|---|
| Session login | <pre>RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 22 11:06:33.467 IST: ssh_syslog_proxy[1204]: %SECURITY-SSHD_SYSLOG_PFX-6-INFO_GENERAL : sshd[32504]: Accepted authentication/pam for admin from 203.0.113.1 port 62015 ssh2 RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 22 11:06:33.472 IST: ssh_syslog_proxy[1204]: %SECURITY-SSHD_SYSLOG_PFX-6-INFO_GENERAL : sshd[32504]: User child is on pid 32564 RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 22 11:06:33.519 IST: ssh_syslog_proxy[1204]: %SECURITY-SSHD_SYSLOG_PFX-6-INFO_GENERAL : sshd[32564]: Starting session: shell on pts/1 for admin from 203.0.113.1 port 62015 id 0</pre> | <pre>RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 22 11:46:13.475 IST: SSHD_[67274]: %SECURITY-SSHD-6-INFO_SUCCESS : Successfully authenticated user 'root' from '192.0.2.1' on 'vty0'(cipher 'aes128-ctr', mac 'hmac-sha2-256')</pre> |

| Session Event | Syslogs on CiscoSSH | Syslogs on Cisco IOS XR SSH |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| Session logout | <pre>RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 22 11:11:27.394 IST: ssh_syslog_proxy[1204]: %SECURITY-SSHD_SYSLOG_PRX-6-INFO_GENERAL : sshd[32564]: Received disconnect from 203.0.113.1 port 62015:11: disconnected by user RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 22 11:11:27.394 IST: ssh_syslog_proxy[1204]: %SECURITY-SSHD_SYSLOG_PRX-6-INFO_GENERAL : sshd[32564]: Disconnected from user admin 203.0.113.1 port 62015</pre> | <pre>RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 22 11:46:48.439 IST: SSHD_[67274]: %SECURITY-SSHD-6-INFO_USER_LOGOUT : User 'root' from '192.0.2.1' logged out on 'vty0'</pre> |
| Session login failure | <pre>RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 22 19:47:06.211 IST: ssh_syslog_proxy[1204]: %SECURITY-SSHD_SYSLOG_PRX-6-INFO_GENERAL : sshd[31103]: Failed authentication/pam for admin from 203.0.113.1 port 60189 ssh2</pre> | <pre>RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 22 11:47:55.909 IST: SSHD_[67369]: %SECURITY-SSHD-4-INFO_FAILURE : Failed authentication attempt by user 'root' from '192.0.2.1' on 'vty0'</pre> |
| Session rekey | <pre>ssh_syslog_proxy[1204]: %SECURITY-SSHD_SYSLOG_PRX-6-INFO_GENERAL : sshd[24919]: Server initiated time rekey for session=21, session_rekey_count =1</pre> | <pre>RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Sep 22 19:07:45.435 IST: SSHD_[65640]: %SECURITY-SSHD-6-INFO_REKEY : Server initiated time rekey for session 4 , session_rekey_count = 1</pre> |

Netconf access controls

A Netconf access control is a security mechanism that

- blocks Netconf requests on the SSH port (default 22) and allows only on the designated Netconf port (default 830)
- restricts Netconf access based on specified IP addresses using Access Control Lists (ACLs), and
- allows other SSH services such as Secure Copy Protocol (SCP) and Secure File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) to continue functioning.

Table 37: Feature history table

| Feature name | Release information | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Netconf access controls | Release 25.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100, K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100]); Centralized Systems (8600 [ASIC: Q200]); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100])</p> <p>When this feature is enabled, NETCONF sessions will be blocked on the SSH port. However, SCP and SFTP will continue to function on the SSH port.</p> <p>The feature introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>ssh server netconf disable ssh-port</code> <p>YANG Data Models:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New XPaths for <code>Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ssh-cfg.yang</code> (see GitHub, YANG Data Models Navigator) |

Cisco IOS XR router uses Netconf over SSH. By default, SSH uses port 22 and Netconf uses port 830. Netconf requests are permitted on the SSH port by default.

Without this feature enabled, a NETCONF connection can be established over the SSH port even from addresses that are not permitted by the ACLs.

Benefits of Netconf access control

This feature provides these benefits:

- You can block Netconf for specific IP addresses while still allowing SSH access for those addresses.
- You can prevent unauthorized Netconf access on the SSH port.
- You retain access to other SSH services such as SCP and SFTP.
- You enforce Netconf access restrictions without disrupting SSH access.

Best practice for Netconf access control

- Use ACLs to specify IP addresses that you block for Netconf.

- Apply the `ssh server netconf disable ssh-port` to disable Netconf on the SSH port.

Restrictions for Netconf access control

- During the initial TCP handshake and authentication, you cannot identify the service from the SSH protocol. At the channel request stage, the server checks for a Netconf request and then rejects your connection request.
- Because the SSH server does not identify the request type until the channel request phase, it cannot reject a Netconf connection on the SSH port by IP address during the initial connection. If an ACL blocks an IP address on the Netconf port, the connection attempt fails during the TCP handshake, and you cannot connect.
- Netconf access control blocks Netconf only on the SSH port for your device, but it does not block SCP or SFTP for the same IP address.

How Netconf access control works

Summary

Use Netconf access control to configure access to Netconf services through the SSH server and secure your device.

The components involved in the process are:

- **SSH server:** Manages incoming SSH connections and enforces access control.
- **SSH port:** Network port used for SSH and Netconf services.
- **Netconf service:** Provides configuration and management operations using the Netconf protocol.
- **Access Control Lists (ACLs):** These restrict access to Netconf based on IP addresses.
- **Users and clients:** They attempt to access device configuration using Netconf.

Workflow

The SSH server enforces Netconf restrictions on the SSH port using this process:

1. The administrator configures the SSH server to disable Netconf access on the SSH port using the `ssh server netconf disable ssh-port` command.
2. When the server receives a NETCONF request, it verifies that the request is received on a port configured for SSH.
3. After the SSH session is established, the server checks the requested service type.
4. If NETCONF is requested on an SSH port where NETCONF has been disabled through the CLI, the server rejects the request and terminates the session.
5. SSH continues to allow other services for the same IP address, including SCP and SFTP.
6. This behavior runs in XR SSH and CiscoSSH components.

Result

Your configuration restricts Netconf access and allows permitted SSH functions.

Configure Netconf access control

Restrict Netconf access over SSH to enhance device security and prevent unauthorized Netconf sessions.

Netconf is a network management protocol that operates over SSH. You may need to disable Netconf on the SSH port to harden device security or meet specific compliance requirements.

Before you begin

- Ensure you have administrative access to the device.
- Back up the current configuration before you make changes.
- Confirm that disabling Netconf over SSH will not interrupt management tasks if you use Netconf.

Follow these steps to configure Netconf access control:

Procedure

Step 1 Enter configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router#config
```

Step 2 Disable Netconf on the SSH port:

```
Router#ssh server netconf disable ssh-port
```

Note

Use the **ssh server netconf disable ssh-port** configuration for any configured SSH port (default port 22 or any custom port).

Step 3 Commit the configuration.

Example:

```
Router#commit
```

Syslogs for Netconf access control

You can observe these SYSLOGS on the router console:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Nov 20 07:55:09.476 UTC: ssh_syslog_proxy[1221]:
%SECURITY-SSHD_SYSLOG_PRX-3-ERR_GENERAL : sshd[33048]: On ssh port invalid netconf channel
request received

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Nov 20 07:55:09.476 UTC: ssh_syslog_proxy[1221]:
%SECURITY-SSHD_SYSLOG_PRX-6-INFO_GENERAL : sshd[33048]: subsystem request for netconf by
user cafyauto failed, subsystem not found
```

You have disabled Netconf access over SSH port. The device does not accept Netconf management sessions on the SSH port.

Prerequisites for Implementing Secure Shell

The following prerequisites are required to implement Secure Shell:

- You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.
- To run an SSHv2 server, you must have a VRF. This may be the default VRF or a specific VRF. VRF changes are applicable only to the SSH v2 server.
- Configure user authentication for local or remote access. You can configure authentication with or without authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA). For more information, see the *Configuring AAA Services* chapter in this guide.
- AAA authentication and authorization must be configured correctly for Secure Shell File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) to work.

Guidelines and Restrictions for Implementing Secure Shell

The following are some basic SSH guidelines, restrictions, and limitations of the SFTP feature:

- In order for an outside client to connect to the router, the router needs to have an RSA (for SSHv2) or DSA (for SSHv2) or ECDSA (for SSHv2) key pair configured. ECDSA, DSA and RSA keys are not required if you are initiating an SSH client connection from the router to an outside routing device. The same is true for SFTP: ECDSA, DSA and RSA keys are not required because SFTP operates only in client mode.



Note The RSA, DSA and ECDSA keys are auto-generated during the boot if there is no key present.

- If you delete all the default crypto keys (the keys with **the_default** label) on the router, the SSH clients cannot establish sessions with the router. Hence, for clients to successfully establish SSH sessions with the router, ensure that at least one default crypto key is always present on the router. In FIPS mode, it is mandatory to have at least one default crypto key of type RSA or ECDSA.
- For SSH sessions, the router supports key-exchange algorithms (**diffie-hellman-group1-sha1** and **curve25519**) and cipher algorithms (**3des-cbc** and **chacha20-poly1305@openssh.com**) only in non-FIPS mode. The SSH session fails to connect if any of these algorithms is pre-configured prior to enabling FIPS mode though.
- In order for SFTP to work properly, the remote SSH server must enable the SFTP server functionality. For example, the SSHv2 server is configured to handle the SFTP subsystem with a line such as `/etc/ssh2/sshd2_config`:
- **subsystem-sftp /usr/local/sbin/sftp-server**
- The SFTP server is usually included as part of SSH packages from public domain and is turned on by default configuration.

- SFTP is compatible with sftp server version OpenSSH_2.9.9p2 or higher.
- RSA-based user authentication is supported in the SSH, SFTP and SCP servers. The support however, is not extended to the SSH client.
- Execution shell, SFTP, SCP and Netconf are the only applications supported.
- The cipher preference for the SSH server follows the order AES128, AES192, AES256, aes128-gcm, aes256-gcm, and chacha20-poly1305. The server rejects any requests by the client for an unsupported cipher, and the SSH session does not proceed.
- Use of a terminal type other than vt100 is unsupported, and the software generates a warning message in this case.
- Password messages of “none” are unsupported on the SSH client.
- Because the router infrastructure does not provide support for UNIX-like file permissions, files created on the local device lose the original permission information. For files created on the remote file system, the file permission adheres to the umask on the destination host and the modification and last access times are the time of the copy.

How to Implement Secure Shell

To configure SSH, perform the tasks described in the following sections:

Configure SSH



Note For SSHv1 configuration, Step 1 to Step 4 are required. For SSHv2 configuration, these steps are optional.

Perform this task to configure SSH.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **hostname** *hostname*

Example:

```
Router(config)# hostname router1
```

Configures a hostname for your router.

Step 3 **domain name** *domain-name*

Example:

```
Router(config)# domain name cisco.com
```

Defines a default domain name that the software uses to complete unqualified host names.

Step 4 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Step 5 **configure**

Step 6 **ssh server tcp-window-scale** *scale*

Example:

```
Router(config)# ssh server tcp-window-scale 10
```

(Optional) Configures the TCP window scale for increased throughput for SCP or SFTP.

Step 7 **ssh timeout** *seconds*

Example:

```
Router(config)# ssh timeout 60
```

(Optional) Configures the timeout value for user authentication to AAA.

- If the user fails to authenticate itself to AAA within the configured time, the connection is terminated.
- If no value is configured, the default value of 30 seconds is used. The range is from 5 to 120.

Step 8 Do one of the following:

- **ssh server** [**vrf** *vrf-name* [**ipv4 access-list** *ipv4-access-list name*] [**ipv6 access-list** *ipv6-access-list name*]]
- **ssh server v2**

Example:

```
Router(config)# ssh server v2
```

- (Optional) Brings up an SSH server using a specified VRF of up to 32 characters. If no VRF is specified, the default VRF is used. To stop the SSH server from receiving any further connections for the specified VRF, use the **no** form of this command. If no VRF is specified, the default is assumed. Optionally ACLs for IPv4 and IPv6 can be used to restrict access to the server before the port is opened. To stop the SSH server from receiving any further connections for the specified VRF, use the **no** form of this command. If no VRF is specified, the default is assumed.

Note

The SSH server can be configured for multiple VRF usage.

- (Optional) Forces the SSH server to accept only SSHv2 clients if you configure the SSHv2 option by using the **ssh server v2** command. If you choose the **ssh server v2** command, only the SSH v2 client connections are accepted.

Step 9 **ssh {client | server} dscp *dscp-value***

Example:

```
Router(config)# ssh server dscp 63
```

```
Router(config)# ssh client dscp 63
```

(optional) Sets the DSCP value in the outgoing packets. If not configured, 16 is set as the default DSCP value for the packets (for both client and server).

Step 10 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Step 11 **show ssh**

Example:

```
Router# show ssh
```

(Optional) Displays all of the incoming and outgoing SSHv1 and SSHv2 connections to the router.

Step 12 **show ssh session details**

Example:

```
Router# show ssh session details
```

(Optional) Displays a detailed report of the SSHv2 connections to and from the router.

Step 13 **show ssh history**

Example:

```
Router# show ssh history
```

(Optional) Displays the last hundred SSH connections that were terminated.

Step 14 **show ssh history details**

Example:

```
Router# show ssh history details
```

(Optional) Displays the last hundred SSH connections that were terminated with additional details. This command is similar to **show ssh session details** command but also mentions the start and end time of the session.

Step 15 **show tech-support ssh**

Example:

```
Router# show tech-support ssh
```

(Optional) Automatically runs the `show` commands that display system information.



Note The order of priority while doing negotiation for a SSH connection is as follows:

1. ecdsa-nistp-521
2. ecdsa-nistp-384
3. ecdsa-nistp-256
4. rsa
5. dsa

Automatic generation of SSH host-key pairs

An automatic generation of SSH host-key pairs is a security feature that

- creates SSH host-key pairs for supported algorithms (DSA, ECDSA, and RSA) automatically when the router boots,
- eliminates the need for explicit manual key generation after initial setup, and
- ensures SSH clients can connect to the SSH server immediately after bootup with a basic configuration.

Table 38: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release info | Description |
|---------------------------------------|----------------|---|
| SSH key strength: 3072-bit by default | Release 26.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100, K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100]); Centralized Systems (8600 [ASIC:Q200]) ; Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100])</p> <p>This update enhances device security by automatically generating RSA 3072-bit SSH host keys during system boot, instead of RSA 2048-bit keys. 3072-bit aligns with industry best practices and provides improved cryptographic protection, ensuring secure SSH access and compliance with the latest security requirements.</p> |

The automatic generation feature simplifies device provisioning, especially in zero touch provisioning (ZTP) and Golden ISO boot scenarios. Since SSH host-key pairs are present immediately after boot, administrators do not need to perform manual configurations to enable secure connections.

Starting Cisco IOS XR Software Release 26.1.1, the system automatically generates RSA 3072-bit SSH host keys during boot, replacing the previous default of RSA 2048-bit keys. This enhancement strengthens device security by providing improved cryptographic protection and aligns with the current industry best practices. The default RSA 3072-bit SSH host keys are generated automatically requiring no manual intervention from you.

You can choose specific algorithms to use for SSH host-key pairs by configuring the **ssh server algorithms host-key** command in Global Configuration mode. If certain key pairs are not required, use the **crypto key zeroize** command in EXEC mode to remove them. When upgrading from an earlier software version, the system automatically generates host-key pairs only if they are missing, avoiding duplicate key generation. If SSH host-key pairs are not present after bootup, you can manually generate them using the **crypto key generate** command in EXEC mode.



Note In a system upgrade scenario from version 1 to version 2, the system does not generate the SSH host-key pairs automatically if they were already generated in version 1. The host-key pairs are generated automatically only if they were not generated in version 1.

- On routers with automatic generation enabled, SSH host-key pairs for all supported algorithms are created during initial boot, enabling immediate SSH access by clients.
- During ZTP, there are no additional steps required to configure SSH host-key pairs.

Configure the Allowed SSH Host-Key Pair Algorithms

When the SSH client attempts a connection with the SSH server, it sends a list of SSH host-key pair algorithms (in the order of preference) internally in the connection request. The SSH server, in turn, picks the first matching algorithm from this request list. The server establishes a connection only if that host-key pair is already generated in the system, and if it is configured (using the **ssh server algorithms host-key** command) as the allowed algorithm.



Note If this configuration of allowed host-key pairs is not present in the SSH server, then you can consider that the SSH server allows all host-key pairs. In that case, the SSH client can connect with any one of the host-key pairs. Not having this configuration also ensures backward compatibility in system upgrade scenarios.

Configuration Example

You may perform this (optional) task to specify the allowed SSH host-key pair algorithm (in this example, **ecdsa**) from the list of auto-generated host-key pairs on the SSH server:

```
/* Example to select the ecdsa algorithm */
Router(config)#ssh server algorithms host-key ecdsa-nistp521
```

Similarly, you may configure other algorithms.

Running Configuration

```
ssh server algorithms host-key ecdsa-nistp521
!
```

Verify the SSH Host-Key Pair Algorithms



Note With the introduction of the automatic generation of SSH host-key pairs, the output of the **show crypto key mypubkey** command displays key information of all the keys that are auto-generated. Before its introduction, the output of this show command displayed key information of only those keys that you explicitly generated using the **crypto key generate** command.

```
Router#show crypto key mypubkey ecdsa
Mon Nov 19 12:22:51.762 UTC
Key label: the_default
Type      : ECDSA General Curve Nistp256
Degree   : 256
Created  : 10:59:08 UTC Mon Nov 19 2018
Data     :
04AC7533 3ABE7874 43F024C1 9C24CC66 490E83BE 76CEF4E2 51BBEF11 170CDB26
14289D03 6625FC4F 3E7F8F45 0DA730C3 31E960FE CF511A05 2B0AA63E 9C022482
6E

Key label: the_default
Type      : ECDSA General Curve Nistp384
Degree   : 384
Created  : 10:59:08 UTC Mon Nov 19 2018
Data     :
```

```

04B70BAF C096E2CA D848EE72 6562F3CC 9F12FA40 BE09BFE6 AF0CA179 F29F6407
FEE24A43 84C5A5DE D7912208 CB67EE41 58CB9640 05E9421F 2DCDC41C EED31288
6CACC8DD 861DC887 98E535C4 893CB19F 5ED3F6BC 2C90C39B 10EAED57 87E96F78
B6

Key label: the_default
Type      : ECDSA General Curve Nistp521
Degree    : 521
Created   : 10:59:09 UTC Mon Nov 19 2018
Data      :
0400BA39 E3B35E13 810D8AE5 260B8047 84E8087B 5137319A C2865629 8455928F
D3D9CE39 00E097FF 6CA369C3 EE63BA57 A4C49C02 B408F682 C2153B7F AAE53EF8
A2926001 EF113896 5F1DA056 2D62F292 B860FDFB 0314CE72 F87AA2C9 D5DD29F4
DA85AE4D 1CA453AC 412E911A 419E9B43 0A13DAD3 7B7E88E4 7D96794B 369D6247
E3DA7B8A 5E

```

The following example shows the output for **ed25519**:

```

Router#show crypto key mypubkey ed25519
Wed Dec 16 16:12:21.464 IST
Key label: the_default
Type      : ED25519
Size      : 256
Created   : 15:08:28 IST Tue Oct 13 2020
Data      :
 649CC355 40F85479 AE9BE26F B5B59153 78D171B6 F40AA53D B2E48382 BA30E5A9

Router#

```

Related Topics

[Automatic generation of SSH host-key pairs , on page 261](#)

Associated Commands

- `ssh server algorithms host-key`
- `show crypto key mypubkey`

Ed25519 Public-Key Signature Algorithm Support for SSH

Table 39: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|--|
| Ed25519 Public-Key Signature Algorithm Support for SSH | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|---|
| Ed25519 Public-Key Signature Algorithm Support for SSH | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |
| Ed25519 Public-Key Signature Algorithm Support for SSH | Release 7.3.1 | <p>This algorithm is now supported on Cisco IOS XR 64-bit platforms when establishing SSH sessions. It is a modern and secure public-key signature algorithm that provides several benefits, particularly resistance against several side-channel attacks. Prior to this release, DSA, ECDSA, and RSA public-key algorithms were supported.</p> <p>This command is modified for this feature:</p> <p>ssh server algorithms host-key</p> |

This feature introduces the support for Ed25519 public-key algorithm, when establishing SSH sessions, on Cisco IOS XR 64-bit platforms. This algorithm offers better security with faster performance when compared to DSA or ECDSA signature algorithms.

The order of priority of public-key algorithms during SSH negotiation between the client and the server is:

- ecdsa-sha2-nistp256
- ecdsa-sha2-nistp384
- ecdsa-sha2-nistp521
- ssh-ed25519
- ssh-rsa
- ssh-dsa

Restrictions for ED25519 Public Key for SSH

The Ed25519 public key algorithm is not FIPS-certified. That is, if FIPS mode is enabled on the router, the list of public-key algorithms sent during the SSH key negotiation phase does not contain the Ed25519 key. This behavior is applicable only for new SSH connections. Any existing SSH session that has already negotiated Ed25519 public-key algorithm remains intact and continues to execute until the session is disconnected.

Further, if you have configured the router to negotiate only the Ed25519 public-key algorithm (using the **ssh server algorithms host-key** command), and if FIPS mode is also enabled, then the SSH connection to the router fails.

How to Generate Ed25519 Public Key for SSH

To generate Ed25519 public key for SSH, see [Generate Crypto Key for Ed25519 Signature Algorithm, on page 189](#).

You must also specify Ed25519 as the permitted SSH host-key pair algorithm from the list of auto-generated host-key pairs on the SSH server. For details, see [Configure the Allowed SSH Host-Key Pair Algorithms, on page 263](#).

To remove the Ed25519 key from the router, use the **crypto key zeroize ed25519** command in XR EXEC mode.

Configure the SSH Client

Perform this task to configure an SSH client.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **ssh client knownhost device : /filename**

Example:

```
Router(config)# ssh client knownhost slot1:/server_pubkey
```

(Optional) Enables the feature to authenticate and check the server public key (pubkey) at the client end.

Note

The complete path of the filename is required. The colon (:) and slash mark (/) are also required.

Step 3 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.

- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Step 4 `ssh {ipv4-address | hostname} [username user-id | cipher des | source-interface type instance]`

Example:

```
Router# ssh remotehost username user1234
```

Enables an outbound SSH connection.

- To run an SSHv2 server, you must have a VRF. This may be the default or a specific VRF. VRF changes are applicable only to the SSH v2 server.
- The SSH client tries to make an SSHv2 connection to the remote peer. If the remote peer supports only the SSHv1 server, the peer internally spawns an SSHv1 connection to the remote server.
- The **cipher des** option can be used only with an SSHv1 client.
- The SSHv1 client supports only the 3DES encryption algorithm option, which is still available by default for those SSH clients only.
- If the *hostname* argument is used and the host has both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses, the IPv6 address is used.

- If you are using SSHv1 and your SSH connection is being rejected, the reason could be that the RSA key pair might have been zeroed out. Another reason could be that the SSH server to which the user is connecting to using SSHv1 client does not accept SSHv1 connections. Make sure that you have specified a hostname and domain. Then use the **crypto key generate rsa** command to generate an RSA key pair, and then enable the SSH server.

- If you are using SSHv2 and your SSH connection is being rejected, the reason could be that the DSA or RSA or ECDSA key pair might have been zeroed out. Make sure you follow similar steps as mentioned above to generate the required key pairs, and then enable the SSH server.

- When configuring the ECDSA, RSA or DSA key pair, you might encounter the following error messages:

- No hostname specified

You must configure a hostname for the router using the **hostname** command in that case.

- No domain specified

You must configure a host domain for the router using the **domain-name** command in that case.

- The number of allowable SSH connections is limited to the maximum number of virtual terminal lines configured for the router. Each SSH connection uses a vty resource. The default number of VTYs is 5. So, you must configure the number of VTYs in the VTY pool. The default value for the maximum number of SSH sessions is 64.

- For FIPS compliance, the weaker ciphers like 3DES and AES CBC are not supported; only AES-CTR cipher is supported.

- SSH uses either local authentication or remote authentication that is configured through AAA on your router for user authentication. When configuring AAA, you must ensure that the console is not running under AAA by applying a keyword in the global configuration mode to disable AAA on the console.



Note If you are using Putty version 0.63 or higher to connect to the SSH client, set the 'Chokes on PuTTYs SSH2 winadj request' option under SSH > Bugs in your Putty configuration to 'On.' This helps avoid a possible breakdown of the session whenever some long output is sent from IOS XR to the Putty client.

Order of SSH Client Authentication Methods

The default order of authentication methods for SSH clients on Cisco IOS XR routers is as follows:

- On routers running Cisco IOS XR SSH:
 - **public-key, password and keyboard-interactive**
- On routers running CiscoSSH (open source-based SSH):
 - **public-key, keyboard-interactive and password**

How to Set the Order of Authentication Methods for SSH Clients

To set the preferred order of authentication methods for SSH clients on Cisco IOS XR routers, use the **ssh client auth-method** command in the XR Config mode. This command is available from Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.9.2/Release 7.10.1 and later.

Configuration Example

In this example, we set the order of SSH client authentication methods in such a way that public key authentication is negotiated first, followed by keyboard-interactive, and then password-based authentication.

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#ssh client auth-method public-key keyboard-interactive password
Router(config-ssh)#commit
```

Running Configuration

```
Router#show run ssh client auth-methods
Tue Nov 21 17:55:44.688 IST
ssh client auth-methods public-key keyboard-interactive password
Router#
```

Configure Secure Shell: Example

This example shows how to configure SSHv2 by creating a hostname, defining a domain name, enabling the SSH server for local and remote authentication on the router by generating a DSA key pair, bringing up the SSH server, and saving the configuration commands to the running configuration file.

After SSH has been configured, the SFTP feature is available on the router.

```
configure
hostname router1
domain name cisco.com
exit
configure
ssh server
end
```

Multi-channeling in SSH

The multi-channeling (also called multiplexing) feature on the Cisco IOS XR software server allows you to establish multiple channels over the same TCP connection from the SSH clients originating from the same host. Thus, rather than opening a new TCP socket for each SSH connection, all the SSH connections are multiplexed into one TCP connection and a single SSH session. For example, with multiplexing support on your XR software server, on a single SSH connection you can simultaneously open a pseudo terminal, remotely execute a command and transfer a file using any file transfer protocol. Multiplexing offers the following benefits:

- You are required to authenticate only once at the time of creating the session. After that, all the SSH clients associated with a particular session use the same TCP socket to communicate to the server.
- Saves time consumed otherwise wasted in creating a new connection each time.

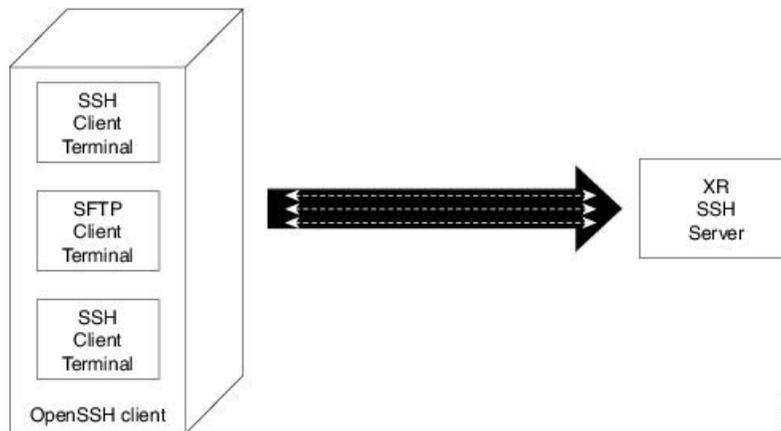
Multiplexing is enabled by default in the Cisco IOS XR software server. If your client supports multiplexing, you must explicitly set up multiplexing on the client for it to be able to send multi-channel requests to the server. You can use OpenSSH, Perl, WinSCP, FileZilla, TTSSH, Cygwin or any other SSH-based tool to set up multiplexing on the client. See [Configure Client for Multiplexing, on page 270](#) provides an example of how you can configure the client for multiplexing using OpenSSH.

Restrictions for Multi-channeling Over SSH

- Do not use client multiplexing for heavy transfer of data as the data transfer speed is limited by the TCP speed limit. Hence, for a heavy data transfer it is advised that you run multiple SSH sessions, as the TCP speed limit is per connection.
- Client multiplexing must not be used for more than 15 concurrent channels per session simultaneously.

Client and Server Interaction Over Multichannel Connection

The figure below provides an illustration of a client-server interaction over a SSH multichannel connection.



As depicted in the illustration,

- The client multiplexes the collection of channels into a single connection. This allows different operations to be performed on different channels simultaneously. The dotted lines indicate the different channels that are open for a single session.
- After receiving a request from the client to open up a channel, the server processes the request. Each request to open up a channel represents the processing of a single service.



Note The Cisco IOX software supports server-side multiplexing only.

Configure Client for Multiplexing

The SSH client opens up one TCP socket for all the connections. In order to do so, the client multiplexes all the connections into one TCP connection. Authentication happens only once at the time of creating the session. After that, all the SSH clients associated with the particular session uses the same TCP socket to communicate to the server. Use the following steps to configure client multiplexing using OpenSSH:

Procedure

- Step 1** Edit the `ssh_config` file.
- Open the `ssh_config` file with your favorite text editor to configure values for session multiplexing. The system-wide SSH configuration file is located under `/etc/ssh/ssh_config`. The user configuration file is located under `~/.ssh/config` or `$HOME/.ssh/config`.
- Step 2** Add entries **ControlMaster auto** and **ControlPath**
- Add the entry `ControlMaster auto` and `ControlPath` to the `ssh_config` file, save it and exit.
- `ControlMaster` determines whether SSH will listen for control connections and what to do about them. Setting the `ControlMaster` to 'auto' creates a primary session automatically but if there is a primary session already available, subsequent sessions are automatically multiplexed.
 - `ControlPath` is the location for the control socket used by the multiplexed sessions. Specifying the `ControlPath` ensures that any time a connection to a particular server uses the same specified primary connection.

Example:

```
Host *
ControlMaster auto
ControlPath ~/.ssh/tmp/%r@%h:%p
```

Step 3

Create a temporary folder.

Create a temporary directory inside the `/.ssh` folder for storing the control sockets.

SSH Configuration Option to Restrict Cipher Public Key and HMAC Algorithm

The Cisco IOS XR software provides a new configuration option to control the key algorithms to be negotiated with the peer while establishing an SSH connection with the router. With this feature, you can enable the insecure SSH algorithms on the SSH server, which are otherwise disabled by default. A new configuration option is also available to restrict the SSH client from choosing the HMAC, or hash-based message authentication codes algorithm while trying to connect to the SSH server on the router.

You can also configure a list of ciphers as the default cipher list, thereby having the flexibility to enable or disable any particular cipher.



Caution Use caution in enabling the insecure SSH algorithms to avoid any possible security attack.

To disable the HMAC algorithm, use the **ssh client disable hmac** command or **ssh server disable hmac** command in XR Config mode.

To enable the required cipher, use the **ssh client enable cipher** command or the **ssh server enable cipher** command in XR Config mode.

The supported encryption algorithms (in the order of preference) are:

1. aes128-ctr
2. aes192-ctr
3. aes256-ctr
4. aes128-gcm@openssh.com
5. aes256-gcm@openssh.com
6. aes128-cbc
7. aes192-cbc
8. aes256-cbc
9. 3des-cbc

In SSH, the CBC-based ciphers are disabled by default. To enable these, you can use the **ssh client enable cipher** command or the **ssh server enable cipher** command with the respective CBC options (aes-cbc or 3des-cbc). All CTR-based and GCM-based ciphers are enabled by default.

Disable HMAC Algorithm

Configuration Example to Disable HMAC Algorithm

```
Router(config)# ssh server disable hmac hmac-sha1
Router(config)#commit
```

```
Router(config)# ssh client disable hmac hmac-sha1
Router(config)#commit
```

Running Configuration

```
ssh server disable hmac hmac-sha1
!
```

```
ssh client disable hmac hmac-sha1
!
```

Related Topics

[SSH Configuration Option to Restrict Cipher Public Key and HMAC Algorithm, on page 271](#)

Associated Commands

- `ssh client disable hmac`
- `ssh server disable hmac`

Enable Cipher Public Key

Configuration Example to Enable Cipher Public Key

To enable all ciphers on the client and the server:

Router 1:

```
Router(config)# ssh client algorithms cipher aes256-cbc aes256-ctr aes192-ctr aes192-cbc
aes128-ctr aes128-cbc aes128-gcm@openssh.com aes256-gcm@openssh.com 3des-cbc
```

Router 2:

```
Router(config)# ssh server algorithms cipher aes256-cbc aes256-ctr aes192-ctr aes192-cbc
aes128-ctr aes128-cbc aes128-gcm@openssh.com aes256-gcm@openssh.com 3des-cbc
```

To enable the CTR cipher on the client and the CBC cipher on the server:

Router 1:

```
Router(config)# ssh client algorithms cipher aes128-ctr aes192-ctr aes256-ctr
```

Router 2:

```
Router(config)# ssh server algorithms cipher aes128-cbc aes256-cbc aes192-cbc 3des-cbc
```

Without any cipher on the client and the server:

Router 1:

```
Router(config)# no ssh client algorithms cipher
```

Router 2:

```
Router(config)# no ssh server algorithms cipher
```

Enable only deprecated algorithms on the client and the server:

Router 1:

```
Router(config)# ssh client algorithms cipher aes128-cbc aes192-cbc aes256-cbc 3des-cbc
```

Router 2:

```
Router(config)# ssh server algorithms cipher aes128-cbc aes192-cbc aes256-cbc 3des-cbc
```

Enable deprecated algorithm (using **enable cipher** command) and enable the CTR cipher (using **algorithms cipher** command) on the client and the server:

Router 1:

```
Router(config)# ssh client enable cipher aes-cbc 3des-cbc
Router(config)# ssh client algorithms cipher aes128-ctr aes192-ctr aes256-ctr
```

Router 2:

```
Router(config)# ssh server enable cipher aes-cbc 3des-cbc
Router(config)# ssh server algorithms cipher aes128-ctr aes192-ctr aes256-ctr
```

Running Configuration

All ciphers enabled on the client and the server:

Router 1:

```
ssh client algorithms cipher aes256-cbc aes256-ctr aes192-ctr aes192-cbc aes128-ctr aes128-cbc
aes128-gcm@openssh.com aes256-gcm@openssh.com 3des-cbc
!
```

Router 2:

```
ssh client algorithms cipher aes256-cbc aes256-ctr aes192-ctr aes192-cbc aes128-ctr aes128-cbc
aes128-gcm@openssh.com aes256-gcm@openssh.com 3des-cbc
!
```

Related Topics

[SSH Configuration Option to Restrict Cipher Public Key and HMAC Algorithm, on page 271](#)

Associated Commands

- `ssh client enable cipher`
- `ssh server enable cipher`
- `ssh client algorithms cipher`
- `ssh server algorithms cipher`

User Configurable Maximum Authentication Attempts for SSH

Table 40: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|--|
| User Configurable Maximum Authentication Attempts for SSH | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| User Configurable Maximum Authentication Attempts for SSH | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|--|
| User Configurable Maximum Authentication Attempts for SSH | Release 7.3.1 | <p>This feature allows you to set a limit on the number of user authentication attempts allowed for SSH connection, using the three authentication methods that are supported by Cisco IOS XR. The limit that you set is an overall limit that covers all the authentication methods together. If the user fails to enter the correct login credentials within the configured number of attempts, the connection is denied and the session is terminated.</p> <p>This command is introduced for this feature:</p> <p>ssh server max-auth-limit</p> |

The three SSH authentication methods that are supported by Cisco IOS XR are public-key (which includes certificate-based authentication), keyboard-interactive, and password authentication. The limit count that you set as part of this feature comes into effect whichever combination of authentication methods you use. The limit ranges from 3 to 20; default being 20 (prior to Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.3.2, the limit range was from 4 to 20).

Restrictions for Configuring Maximum Authentication Attempts for SSH

These restrictions apply to configuring maximum authentication attempts for SSH:

- This feature is available only for Cisco IOS XR routers functioning as SSH server; not for the ones functioning as SSH clients.
- This configuration is not user-specific; the limit remains same for all the users.
- Due to security reasons, the SSH server limits the number of authentication attempts that explicitly uses the password authentication method to a maximum of 3. You cannot change this particular limit of 3 by configuring the maximum authentication attempts limit for SSH.

For example, even if you configure the maximum authentication attempts limit as 5, the number of authentication attempts allowed using the password authentication method still remain as 3.

Configure Maximum Authentication Attempts for SSH

You can use the `ssh server max-auth-limit` command to specify the maximum number of authentication attempts allowed for SSH connection.

Configuration Example

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#ssh server max-auth-limit 5
Router(config)#commit
```

Running Configuration

```
Router#show running-configuration ssh
ssh server max-auth-limit 5
ssh server v2
!
```

Verification

The system displays the following SYSLOG on the router console when maximum authentication attempts is reached:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Oct 6 10:03:58.029 UTC: SSHD_[68125]: %SECURITY-SSHD-3-ERR_GENERAL : Max
authentication tries reached-exiting
```

Associated Commands

- `ssh server max-auth-limit`

X.509v3 Certificate-based Authentication for SSH

Table 41: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|--|
| X.509v3 Certificate-based Authentication for SSH | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| X.509v3 Certificate-based Authentication for SSH | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|---|
| X.509v3 Certificate-based Authentication for SSH | Release 7.3.1 | <p>This feature adds new public-key algorithms that use X.509v3 digital certificates for SSH authentication. These certificates use a chain of signatures by a trusted certification authority to bind a public key to the digital identity of the user who is authenticating with the SSH server. These certificates are tough to falsify and are therefore used for identity management and access control across many applications and networks.</p> <p>Commands introduced for this feature are:</p> <p>ssh server certificate</p> <p>ssh server trustpoint</p> <p>This command is modified for this feature:</p> <p>ssh server algorithms host-key</p> |

This feature support is available for the SSH server for the server authentication and the user authentication. The X.509v3 certificate-based authentication for SSH feature supports the following public-key algorithms:

- **x509v3-ssh-dss**
- **x509v3-ssh-rsa**
- **x509v3-ecdsa-sha2-nistp256**
- **x509v3-ecdsa-sha2-nistp384**
- **x509v3-ecdsa-sha2-nistp521**



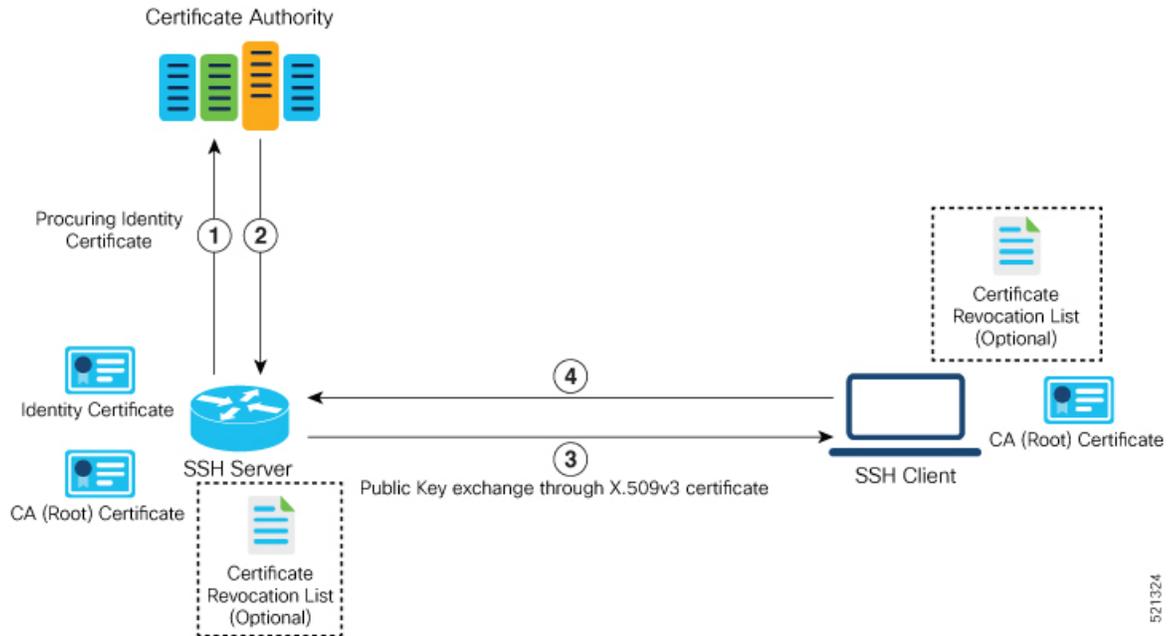
Note While user authentication by using X.509v3 certificate-based authentication for the SSH server is supported using all algorithms listed above, server authentication is supported only with the **x509v3-ssh-rsa** algorithm.

There are two SSH protocols that use public-key cryptography for authentication:

- Transport Layer Protocol (TLP) described in RFC4253—this protocol mandates that you use a digital signature algorithm (called the public-key algorithm) to authenticate the server to the client.
- User Authentication Protocol (UAP) described in RFC4252—this protocol allows the use of a digital signature to authenticate the client to the server (public-key authentication).

For TLP, the Cisco IOS XR SSH server provides its server certificate to the client, and the client verifies the certificate. Similarly, for UAP, the client provides an X.509 certificate to the server. The peer checks the validity and revocation status of the certificate. Based on the result, access is allowed or denied.

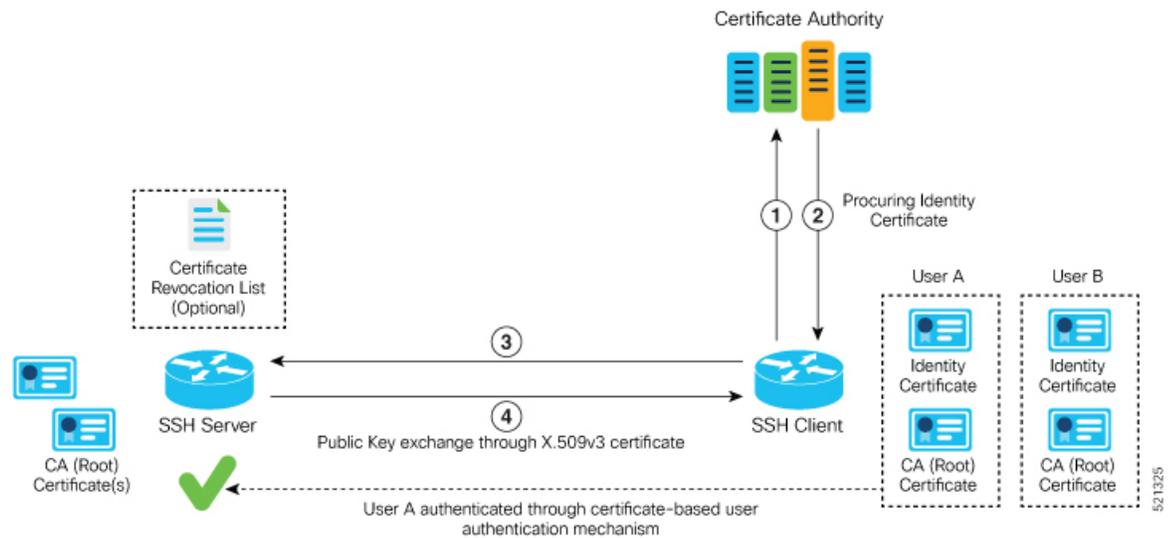
Server Authentication using X.509v3 Certificate



The server authentication process involves these steps:

1. The SSH server procures a valid identity certificate from a well-known certificate authority. This certificate can be obtained manually (through cut-and-paste mechanism) or through protocol implementations such as Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP).
2. The certificate authority provides valid identity certificates and associated root certificates. The requesting device stores these certificates locally.
3. The SSH server presents the certificate to the SSH client for verification.
4. The SSH client validates the certificate and starts the next phase of the SSH connection.

User Authentication using X.509v3 Certificate



The user authentication phase starts after the SSH transport layer is established. At the beginning of this phase, the client sends the user authentication request to the SSH server with required parameters. The user authentication process involves these steps:

1. The SSH client requests a valid identity certificate from a well-known certificate authority.
2. The certificate authority provides valid identity certificates and associated root certificates. The requesting device stores these certificates locally.
3. The SSH client presents the certificate to the SSH server for verification.
4. The SSH server validates the certificate and starts the next phase of the SSH connection.

The certificate-based authentication uses public key as the authentication method. The certificate validation process by the SSH server involves these steps:

- The SSH server retrieves the user authentication parameters, verifies the certificate, and also checks for the certificate revocation list (CRL).
- The SSH server extracts the *username* from the certificate attributes, such as *subject name* or *subject alternate name* (SAN) and presents them to the AAA server for authorization.
- The SSH server then takes the extracted *username* and validates it against the incoming *username* string present in the SSH connection parameter list.

Restrictions for X.509v3 Certificate-based Authentication for SSH

These restrictions apply to the X.509v3 certificate-based authentication feature for SSH:

- Supported only for Cisco IOS XR devices acting as the SSH server; not for the Cisco IOS XR devices acting as the SSH client.
- Supported only for local users because TACACS and RADIUS server do not support public-key authentication. As a result, you must include the **local** option for AAA authentication configuration.



Note Although this feature supports only local authentication, you can enforce remote authorization and accounting using the TACACS server.

- Certificate verification using the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) is currently not supported. The revocation status of certificates is checked using a certificate revocation list (CRL).
- To avoid user authentication failure, the chain length of the user certificate must not exceed the maximum limit of 9.

Configure X.509v3 Certificate-based Authentication for SSH

Perform this task to enable X.509v3 certificate-based server and user authentication for SSH.

Server Authentication:

- Configure the list of host key algorithms—With this configuration, the SSH server decides the list of host keys to be offered to the client. In the absence of this configuration, the SSH server sends all available algorithms to the user as host key algorithms. The SSH server sends these algorithms based on the availability of the key or the certificate.
- Configure the SSH trust point for server authentication—With this configuration, the SSH server uses the given trust point certificate for server authentication. In the absence of this configuration, the SSH server does not send **x509v3-ssh-rsa** as a method for server verification. This configuration is not VRF-specific; it is applicable to SSH running in all VRFs.

The above two tasks are for server authentication and the following ones are for user authentication.

User Authentication:

- Configure the trust points for user authentication—With this configuration, the SSH server uses the given trust point for user authentication. This configuration is not user-specific; the configured trust points are used for all users. In the absence of this configuration, the SSH server does not authenticate using certificates. This configuration is not specific to a VRF; it is applicable to SSH running in all VRFs.

You can configure up to ten user trust points.

- Specify the *username* to be picked up from the certificate—This configuration specifies which field in the certificate is to be considered as the *username*. The **common-name** from the **subject name** or the **user-principle-name(othertype)** from the **subject alternate name**, or both can be configured.
- Specify the maximum number of authentication attempts allowed by the SSH server—The value ranges from 4 to 20. The default value is 20. The server closes the connection if the number of user attempts exceed the configured value.
- AAA authentication configuration—The AAA configuration for public key is the same as that for the regular or keyboard-interactive authentication, except that it mandates local method in the authentication method list.

Configuration Example

In this example, the **x509v3-ssh-rsa** is specified as the allowed host key algorithm to be sent to the client. Similarly, you can configure other algorithms, such as **ecdsa-sha2-nistp521**, **ecdsa-sha2-nistp384**, **ecdsa-sha2-nistp256**, **ssh-rsa**, and **ssh-dsa**.

```
/* Configure the lists of host key algorithms */
Router#configure
Router(config)#ssh server algorithms host-key x509v3-ssh-rsa
Router(config)#commit

/* Configure the SSH trustpoint for server authentication */
Router#configure
Router(config)#ssh server certificate trustpoint host tp1
Router(config)#commit

/* Configure the trustpoints to be used for user authentication */
Router#configure
Router(config)#ssh server trustpoint user tp1
Router(config)#ssh server trustpoint user tp2
Router(config)#commit

/* Specifies the username to be picked up from the certificate.
In this example, it specifies the user common name to be picked up from the subject name
field */
Router#configure
Router(config)#ssh server certificate username common-name
Router(config)#commit

/* Specifies the maximum authentication limit for the SSH server */
Router#configure
Router(config)#ssh server max-auth-limit 5
Router(config)#commit

/* AAA configuration for local authentication with certificate and
remote authorization with TACACS+ or RADIUS */
Router#configure
Router(config)#aaa authentication login default group tacacs+ local
Router(config)#aaa authorization exec default group radius group tacacs+
Router(config)#commit
```

Running Configuration

```
ssh server algorithms host-key x509v3-ssh-rsa
!
ssh server certificate trustpoint host tp1
!
ssh server trustpoint user tp1
ssh server trustpoint user tp2
!
ssh server certificate username common-name
!
ssh server max-auth-limit 5
!
```

Verification of Certificate-based Authentication for SSH

You can use the **show ssh server** command to see various parameters of the SSH server. For certificate-based authentication for SSH, the **Certificate Based** field displays *Yes*. Also, the two new fields, **Host Trustpoint** and **User Trustpoints**, display the respective trust point names.

```
Router#show ssh server
```

```

Wed Feb 19 15:23:38.752 IST
-----
SSH Server Parameters
-----

Current supported versions := v2
                        SSH port := 22
                        SSH vrfs := vrfname:=default(v4-acl:=, v6-acl:=)
                        Netconf Port := 830
                        Netconf Vrfs := vrfname:=default(v4-acl:=, v6-acl:=)

Algorithms
-----
                        Hostkey Algorithms := x509v3-ssh-rsa,
ecdsa-sha2-nistp521,ecdsa-sha2-nistp384,ecdsa-sha2-nistp256,ssh-rsa,ssh-dsa
                        Key-Exchange Algorithms :=
ecdh-sha2-nistp521,ecdh-sha2-nistp384,ecdh-sha2-nistp256,diffie-hellman-group14-sha1
                        Encryption Algorithms :=
aes128-ctr,aes192-ctr,aes256-ctr,aes128-gcm@openssh.com,aes256-gcm@openssh.com
                        Mac Algorithms := hmac-sha2-512,hmac-sha2-256,hmac-sha1

Authetication Method Supported
-----
                        PublicKey := Yes
                        Password := Yes
Keyboard-Interactive := Yes
                        Certificate Based := Yes

Others
-----
                        DSCP := 16
                        Ratelimit := 60
                        Sessionlimit := 100
                        Rekeytime := 60
                        Server rekeyvolume := 1024
                        TCP window scale factor := 1
                        Backup Server := Enabled, vrf:=default, port:=11000
Host Trustpoint := tp1
User Trustpoints := tp1 tp2

```

You can use the **show ssh session details** command to see the chosen algorithm for an SSH session:

```

Router#show ssh session details
Wed Feb 19 15:33:00.405 IST
SSH version : Cisco-2.0

id      key-exchange          pubkey          incipher      outcipher     inmac
outmac
-----
Incoming Sessions
1      ecdh-sha2-nistp256      x509v3-ssh-rsa      aes128-ctr   aes128-ctr   hmac-sha2-256
hmac-sha2-256

```

Similarly, you can use the **show ssh** command to verify the authentication method used. In this example, it shows as *x509-rsa-pubkey*:

```

Router#show ssh
Sun Sep 20 18:14:04.122 UTC
SSH version : Cisco-2.0

```

```

id chan pty location state userid host ver authentication connection
type
-----
Incoming sessions
4 1 vty0 0/RP0/CPU0 SESSION_OPEN 9chainuser 10.105.230.198 v2 x509-rsa-pubkey
Command-Line-Interface

Outgoing sessions

```

SYSLOGS

You can observe relevant SYSLOGS on the router console in various scenarios listed here:

- On successful verification of peer certificate:

```

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Aug 10 15:01:34.793 UTC: locald_DLRSC[133]: %SECURITY-PKI-6-LOG_INFO :
Peer certificate verified successfully

```

- When user certificate CA is not found in the trust point:

```

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Aug 9 22:06:43.714 UTC: locald_DLRSC[260]: %SECURITY-PKI-3-ERR_GENERAL
: issuer not found in trustpoints configured
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Aug 9 22:06:43.714 UTC: locald_DLRSC[260]: %SECURITY-PKI-3-ERR_ERRNO :
Error:='Crypto Engine' detected the 'warning' condition 'Invalid trustpoint or trustpoint
not exist'(0x4214c000), cert verification failed

```

- When there is no CA certificate or host certificate in the trust point:

```

RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Aug 10 00:23:28.053 IST: SSHD_[69552]: %SECURITY-SSHD-4-WARNING_X509 :
could not get the host cert chain, 'sysdb' detected the 'warning' condition 'A SysDB
client tried to access a nonexistent item or list an empty directory', x509 host auth
will not be used
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Aug 10 00:23:30.442 IST: locald_DLRSC[326]: %SECURITY-PKI-3-ERR_ERRNO :
Error:='Crypto Engine' detected the 'warning' condition 'Invalid trustpoint or trustpoint
not exist'(0x4214c000), Failed to get trustpoint name from

```

How to Disable X.509v3 Certificate-based Authentication for SSH

- Server Authentication — You can disable X.509v3 certificate-based server authentication for SSH by using the **ssh server algorithms host-key** command. From the list of auto-generated host-key pairs algorithms on the SSH server, this command configures allowed SSH host-key pair algorithms. Hence, if you have this configuration without specifying the **x509-ssh-rsa** option in the preceding command, it is equivalent to disabling the X.509v3 certificate-based server authentication for the SSH server.
- User Authentication — You can remove the user trust point configuration (**ssh server trustpoint user**) so that the SSH server does not allow the X.509v3 certificate-based authentication.

Failure Modes for X.509v3 Certificate-based Authentication for SSH

If the **ssh server certificate trustpoint host** configuration is missing, or if the configuration is present, but the router certificate is not present under the trust point, then the SSH server does not add **x509-ssh-rsa** to the list of supported host key methods during key exchange.

Also, the user authentication fails with an error message if:

- User certificate is in an incorrect format.

- The chain length of the user certificate is more than the maximum limit of 9.
- Certificate verification fails due to any reason.

Validating X.509v3 Certificate Extensions over Mutual Transport Layer Security (mTLS)

Table 42: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|--|
| Validating X.509v3 Certificate Extensions over Mutual Transport Layer Security (mTLS) | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| Validating X.509v3 Certificate Extensions over Mutual Transport Layer Security (mTLS) | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|---|
| Validating X.509v3 Certificate Extensions over Mutual Transport Layer Security (mTLS) | Release 7.9.1 | With this feature, the router can handle the X.509v3 Certificates Extensions defined in RFC 5280 while validating the client certificate over mTLS. Here, the router acknowledges all extensions in X.509v3 Certificates of the user while validating it. Previously, the router failed to process certification extensions when the severity was critical and resulting in authentication failure. This feature permits users to configure any certificate extensions with different severity in their X.509v3 Certificates. |

Starting with IOS XR Release 7.9.1, you can add any Certificate Extensions available in [RFC 5280](#) to your X.509v3 client certificates validations over Mutual Transport Layer Security (mTLS). While validating such client certificate, the router acknowledges all extensions available in the certificate presented and processes it. With this, the router allows the user to configure any number of extensions with different severity in their X.509v3 client certificates.

Related Topics

- [X.509v3 Certificate-based Authentication for SSH, on page 276](#)

Associated Commands

- **ssh server algorithms hostkey**
- **ssh server certificate username**
- **ssh server max-auth-limit**
- **ssh server trustpoint host**
- **ssh server trustpoint user**
- **show ssh server**
- **show ssh session details**

OpenSSH Certificate based Authentication for Router

Table 43: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|--|
| OpenSSH Certificate based Authentication for Router | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| OpenSSH Certificate based Authentication for Router | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|---|
| OpenSSH Certificate based Authentication for Router | Release 7.5.3 | <p>You can now use OpenSSH certificates to authenticate to the remote routers from a client machine. This feature uses the ssh-keygen utility, a standard SSH component to generate and manage authentication keys, available in OpenSSH to create a CA (Certificate Authority) like infrastructure for logging into the router.</p> <p>In this feature, the certificates that are used to authenticate router and client are both signed by the same CA. This automatically establishes trust between router and client, and eliminates the need to establish trust, while using the client for remote logging to router for the first time.</p> |

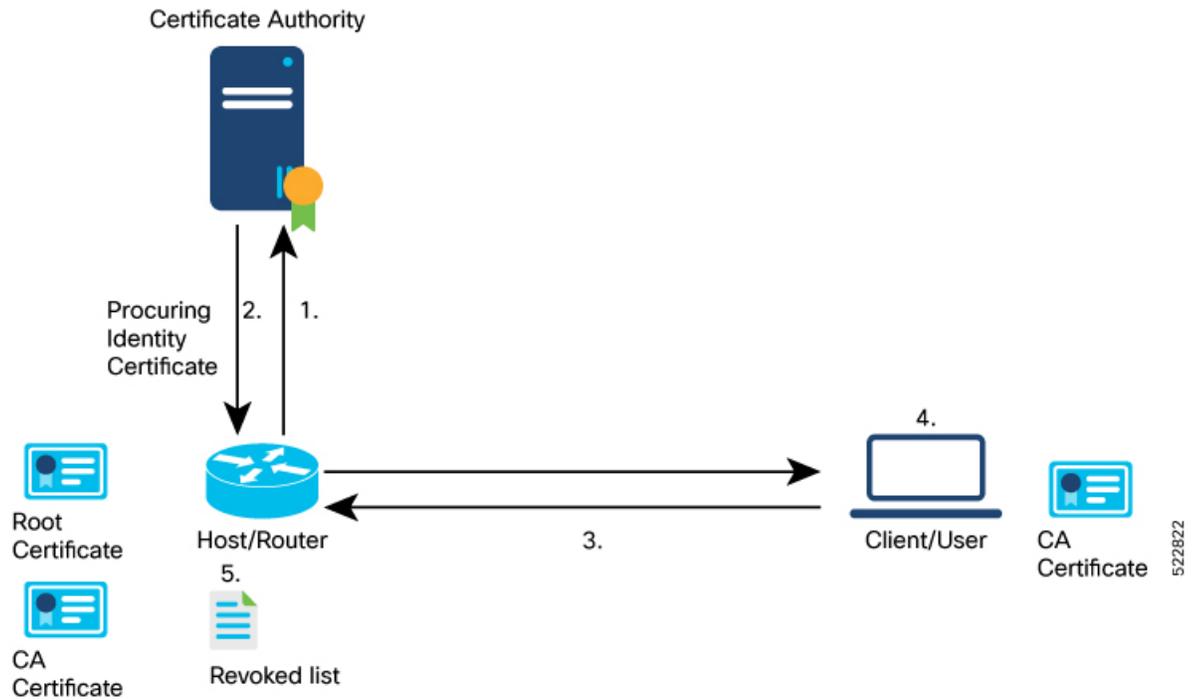
OpenSSH is the open-source implementation of the SSH Protocol. In OpenSSH certificate-based authentication, you can use the ssh-keygen utility to create a certificate signing infrastructure. A digital certificate with public and private key pair, created using the ssh-keygen utility, authenticates the host and the user certificates. The user certificate authenticates the client machine to the router. The client machine is a system that the user utilizes to establish remote access to the router. When a user attempts to log in to the router using the client machine, the client machine presents its certificate to the router. The router checks for the identity and validity of the certificate to decide whether to allow or deny the connection request. The host certificate in the router authenticates the router to the client. Overall, the host and user certificates together establish a two-way secure communication channel.

The OpenSSH based authentication for the router has the following major phases:

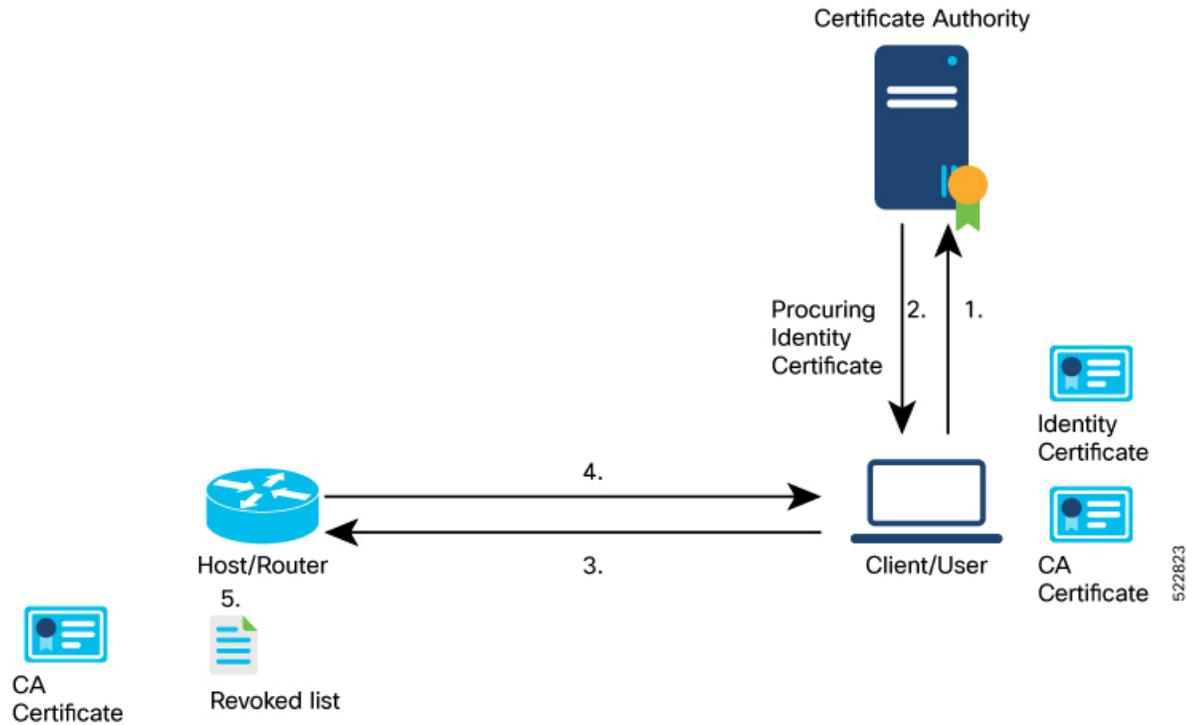
Establishing the trustpoints: In the router, you must create a trustpoint and configure the router to use this trustpoint for the host and user authentication. You can have a same or different trustpoints for these entities. While the router can have only one trustpoint, the user can have up to ten trustpoints.

Creating the CA: Any system with the OpenSSH feature acts like the CA. The ssh-keygen creates the CA certificate and utilizes it to sign the router and user certificate.

Router authentication: You must copy the CA public key in the CA server to the router and ensure to create a CSR (Certificate Signing Request) in the router. The CSR file is further copied to the CA server and signed using the CA certificate. The CA signed certificate is copied back to the router to complete its authentication with CA.



User authentication: You must create a digital certificate for the user using the ssh-keygen utility and sign the public key using the CA certificate. The CA signed user certificate must be copied to the client system using which you would log into the router using the specified user.



Remote access to the router: After the host and user authentication, you can access the router using SSH in the client system that is used to authenticate the user.

Feature Highlights

- OpenSSH certificates use the Certificate Authority (CA) infrastructure to act as a trusted entity while signing the host or user certificates.
- OpenSSH certificates contain a public and private key pair, including identity and validity information. These are signed using a standard SSH public key using the `ssh-keygen` utility.
- The router certificate includes information such as the host public key, public key of the signing CA, type (host), certificate validity, Key ID, serial number of the certificate, and so on.
- The user certificate contains the user's public key, the public key of the signing CA, Key ID, type (user), serial number, certificate validity, principals matched against the login username, and so forth.
- The CA is just another SSH key created using the `ssh-keygen` utility. However, rather than utilizing it for authenticating the router or user directly, it's used to sign and validate the other keys that are used for authenticating the router and the user.
- You can view the router and user certificate properties using the `ssh-keygen`.
- The OpenSSH certificates support the following encryptions:
 - RSA
 - DSA
 - ECDSA
 - ED25519

Prerequisites

- You must have a client machine which has OpenSSH feature with the `ssh-keygen` utility to act as CA.

Configuration Example

The following high-level steps help you set up OpenSSH based Authentication:

1. Create a trustpoint in the router and configure the router to use this trustpoint for the host and user authentication.
2. Creating CA, the CA here is a dedicated system with OpenSSH feature that provides a certificate signing infrastructure using the `ssh-keygen` utility.
3. Host authentication, the host here is the Cisco IOS XR router.
4. User authentication, a user is any entity attempting to access the router. Generally refers to system to access the router CLI remotely. User is also referred to as client.
5. Access the router in the client using the OpenSSH authentication

This section contains the detailed procedure to enable this feature in your router.


```
IBPWpuuuA3LvpZiITaztevQaWYSyK22h3tp3K62IOBX3gUd4Yr+Gvo4PNA26e
21cUE2aVJs16J9MeFITR2NzY1cmZ44KWi6bglkP1E4KBiRsbHCvs4w1aUaO5q
hNj1BdH3/Hha4x root@CAServer
```

- b. [Router EXEC mode] Add the contents of the CA public key to router trustpoint.

```
Router#crypto ca openssh authenticate test
Enter the CA pubkey.
End with a blank line or the word "quit" on a line by itself
ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAADAQABAAQACigl/zhyjuGOBYz5bu+GL7
6HBaROV0pVS4Lx3pfljCjRfKvibPKKkVeX/1E7sZIJ0anU9vYSJZW8zr18z0
6GqzmnJqRRaXa9vfwNmjvNdRwxuBA3Uk/G1sbmcusMXBxoY6z0IEMh1VN0hC
qE4cIFgLxgHpYaaqyl2hISaomTCNhkbD7700t8zbyRj16G0Ps0ggYHWmFLZf
/tbFIBPWpuuuA3LvpZiITaztevQaWYSyK22h3tp3K62IOBX3gUd4Yr+Gvo4P
NA26e21cUE2aVJs16J9MeFITR2NzY1cmZ44KWi6bglkP1E4KBiRsbHCvs4w1
aUaO5qhNj1BdH3/Hha4x root@CAServer
Do you accept this certificate? [yes/no]: yes
```

- c. [Router EXEC mode] Validate the copied CA public key by viewing the OpenSSH certificates in the CA trustpoint configured in the router.

```
Router#show crypto ca openssh certificates
Fri Sep 16 06:59:38.347 UTC

Trustpoint      : test
=====
CA certificate
=====

ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAADAQABAAQACigl/zhyjuGOBYz5bu+GL76HBa
ROV0pVS4Lx3pfljCjRfKvibPKKkVeX/1E7sZIJ0anU9vYSJZW8zr18z06GqzmnJq
RRaXa9vfwNmjvNdRwxuBA3Uk/G1sbmcusMXBxoY6z0IEMh1VN0hCqE4cIFgLxgHp
Yaaqyl2hISaomTCNhkbD7700t8zbyRj16G0Ps0ggYHWmFLZf/tbFIBPWpuuuA3Lv
pZiITaztevQaWYSyK22h3tp3K62IOBX3gUd4Yr+GvvcjdVjwevfo4PNA26e21cUE
2aVJs16J9eFITR2NzY1cmZ44KWi6bglkP1E4KBiRsbHCvs4w1aUaO5qhNj1BdH3/
Hha4x root@CAServer
```

- d. [Router EXEC mode] Generate a CSR for the CA public key in the router.

```
Router#crypto ca openssh enroll test
Fri Sep 16 06:34:41.230 UTC
Display Certificate Request to terminal? [yes/no]: yes
---Hostkey follows---

ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAADAQABAAQACaXqjc45LohfiHJliq8sSpaJmdR
QQJo6bRMhkdxYlpbjEYrwjPTn5SnC1NZYwsTPSHlBYBxQLBHLv80Gbb0v+uJ1T0T
4tAmLgSYPXaHqYIyepCeMKSksKLGz0Pf+oGBMtF3uUuLqCgnFAwjrzDBXJYf+bd/
ieXMwKKNH3YiceLOqe4BAYRU6m+wiuZ8is+bIfy32Eq7gWuPUz8XpXaCt3icpqfrj
7/vm7amKf1GpiheaRJH0Cg4JAmJpAQkuPjx+Y9SZw2yTJP+IKr9tSoSWyiHo2B/Yg
3yERd7M8dQEsvrGy5KI92x+eLP1G15gB9ykePDUpXeaYTu5wtDR/Jd

---End - This line not part of hostkey---
Redisplay enrollment request? [yes/no]: n
```

- e. [Router EXEC mode] Select the hostkey contents of the CSR file and copy the hostkey of the CSR.

- f. [CA server] Create a .pub file in the CA server for the CSR hostkey and paste the copied hostkey contents in this file.

```
[root@CAServer test]# vim host.pub
/* Here we are using the vim text editor to create the host.pub file */
/* You can use any text editor of your choice */
```

- g. [CA server] Execute the following block to sign the CSR file using the CA certificate

```
[root@CAserver test]# ssh-keygen -h -s cacert -I "server" -V +10w -z 10 host.pub
Signed host key host-cert.pub: id "server" serial 10 valid from 2022-09-16T12:26:00
to 2022-11-25T12:27:17
```



Note Use the following command to sign the CSR file using the CA certificate:

```
ssh-keygen -h -s <CACert> -I <IdentityOfCSRSys> -V <CertValidity> -z
<CertSerialNo> <CopiedCSRFile>
```

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| CACert | Specify the filename of the CA Server private key |
| CertValidity | Specify the validity period for the certificate. |
| CertSerialNo | Specify a serial number for the certificate. |
| CopiedCSRFile | Specify the name of the file created to copy the contents of CSR in the router. |

- h. [CA server] Open the signed host certificate and copy the contents.

```
[root@CAserver test]# cat host-cert.pub
ssh-rsa-cert-v01@openssh.com AAAAHHNzaC1yc2EtY2VydC12MDFab3B1bnNza
C5jb20AAAAgZv0OXl42NNK9C4PtLZniRwBk5jbeS8quNhZVKsRpO7UAAAAAQABAAA
BAQCaXqjc45LohfiHJliq8sSpaJmdRQQJo6bRMhkdxYlPbjEYrwjPTn5SnC1NZYwsT
PSHlBYBxQRLBHLv80Gbb0v+uJ1T0T4tAmLgSYpXaHqYIyepCeMKsSKLgZ0Pf+oGBM
tf3uUuLqCgnFAwjrZDBXJYfF+bd/ieXMwKKNH3YiceLOqe4BAYRU6m+wiuZ8is+bIf
y32Eq7gWuPUz8XpxaCt3icpqfrj7/vm7amKf1GpihearJH0Cg4JAmJpAqkuPjx+Y9S
Zw2yTJP+IKr9tSoSWyiHo2B/Yg3yERd7M8dQEsvrGy5KI92x+eLP1G15gB9ykEPDU
pXeaYTu5wtDR/JdAAAAAAAAAAoAAAAACAAAABnNlcnZlcgAAAAAAAAAAAYyQeAAAAAB
jGdNAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAABFwAAAAdzc2gtcnNhAAAAAwEAAQAAAQEaooJf84co7
hjgWM+W7vhi++hwWkTldkVUuC8d6X9Y3I6xZFymzyipFX1/5R07GSCdGp1Pb2EiWVv
M65fM9Ohqs5pyakUWl2vb38DZo7zXUcMbgQN1JPxtbG5nLrDFwV6Gos9CBDIzVtDIQ
qhOHCBCY8YB6WAGqspdoSEmqJkwjYZGw++9DrfM28kY5ehtD7NIIGB1pny2X/7WxSA
TlqbrrgNy76WSIk2s7Xr0GlmEsittod7adyutiDgV94FHEGK/hr6ODzQNunttXFBNm
lSbJeiFTHhSE0djc2NXJmeOCloum4JZD5ROCGyKbGxwr7OMJWlGjuaoTY9QXR9/x4W
uMQAAAQ8AAAAHc3NoLXJzYQAAAQAIywc9o2OWzFq32MnE9IZVVRriItDxAMVE1EvYu
G92JK7wnMjd50M6QDyfkNmGF4ramF90/bVQpL3UYJzVxCSSEodAq6OmlG3zx/MVayT
unMwV2Fq75PpaoZVpyEKx4kLKA6rNU5Tmbht2OfMQKFvIWyxTDmeLFMvntp8R0Yrz4
sG5EP1+4E3WthfzZr42Mq2LQJt6aBeYHZDZSp++j7RpA7+T/6n1aGtAjtdIKprOQuE
lhigCZmdI+kUZDOXjMjlpMjAnV8fdtnnEpYCYzYeD+rSSF7dlDvRtaiFdqrfCXh+uY
jR1E621sP7UEJOWeiBqSDTJxSRdRBNzq9TLmgJH host.pub
```

- i. [Router EXEC mode] Import the signed host certificate to the router.

```
Router# crypto ca openssh import test certificate
/* This command opens the CA trustpoint and you must paste the contents of signed
certificate copied from the CA server */
Fri Sep 16 07:00:27.573 UTC
```

Enter the OpenSSH certificate.
End with a blank line

```
ssh-rsa-cert-v01@openssh.com AAAAHHNzaC1yc2EtY2VydC12MDFab3B1bnNzaC
5jb20AAAAgZv0OXl42NNK9C4PtLZniRwBk5jbeS8quNhZVKsRpO7UAAAAAQABAAA
BAQCaXqjc45LohfiHJliq8sSpaJmdRQQJo6bRMhkdxYlPbjEYrwjPTn5SnC1NZYwsTPSH
lBYBxQRLBHLv80Gbb0v+uJ1T0T4tAmLgSYpXaHqYIyepCeMKsSKLgZ0Pf+oGBMtf3u
```

```

UuLqCgnFAwjrzDBXJYfF+bd/ieXMwKKNH3YiceLQqe4BAYRU6m+wiuZ8is+bIfy32Eq
7gWuPUz8XpxaCt3icpqfrj7/vm7amKf1GpihearJH0Cg4JAmJpAQkuPjx+Y9SZw2yTJ
P+IKr9tSoSWyiHo2B/Yg3yERd7M8dQEsvrGy5KI92x+eLP1G15gB9yKEPDUpxeaYTU
5wtDR/JdAAAAAAAAAAoAAAAcAAAAABnNlcnZlcgAAAAAAAAAAyQeAAAAABjgGdNAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAABFwAAAAAdzc2gtcnNhAAAAAwEAAQAAAQEAooJf84co7hjgWM+W7v
hi++hwWkTldKVUuC8d6X9Y3I6xZFymzyipFX1/5RO7GSCdGp1Pb2EiWVvM65fM9Ohqs
5pyakUW12vb38DZo7zXUcMbgQN1JPxtbG5nLrDFwV6GOs9CBDIZVTdIQqhOHCBCY8YB
6WAGqspdoSEmqJkwjYZGw++9Drfm28ky5ehtD7NIIGB1pny2X/7WxSAT1qbrngNy76W
SIk2s7Xr0GlmEsittod7adyutiDgV94FHeGK/hr6ODzQNunttXFBnmlSbJeiFTHhSE0
djc2NXJmeOCloum4JZD5ROcGykbGxwr7OMJWlGjuaoTY9QXR9/x4WuMQAAAQ8AAAAHc
3NoLXJzYQAAAQAIywc9o2OWzFq32MnE9IZVVRRItdXaMVE1EvYuG92JK7wnMJd50M6
QDyFkNmGF4ramF90/bVQp13UYJzVxCJSEodAq6OmlG3zx/MVayTunMwV2Fq75PpaoZV
pyEKx4kLKA6rNU5Tmbht2OfMQKFvIWyxTDmeLFMvnpt8R0Yrz4sG5EP1+4E3WthfzZr
42Mq2LQJt6aBeYHZDZSp++j7RpA7+T/6nlaGtAjtdIKprOQuElhigCZmdI+kUZDOXjM
JlPmJANv8fdtnnEpYCYzYeD+rSSF7dlDVRtaiFdqrfCXh+uYjR1E621sP7UEJOWeiBq
SDTJxSRdRBNZq9TLmgJH host.pub

```

j. [Router EXEC mode] Verify the host certificate import in the router.

```

Router#show crypto ca openssh certificates
Fri Sep 16 07:00:49.488 UTC

Trustpoint          : test
=====
CA certificate
=====
ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAADAQABAAQACigl/zhyjuGOBYz5bu+GL76HBAroV
0pVS4Lx3pfljCjrFkVibPKKkVeX/1E7sZIJ0anU9vYSJZW8zrl8z06GqzmnJqRRaXa9
vfwNmjvNdRwxuBA3Uk/G1sbmcusMxBXoY6z0IEMh1VN0hCqE4cIFgLxgHpYaaqyl2hI
SaomTCNhkbD7700t8zbyRjl6G0PsOggYHwmlZf/tbFIBPwpuuuA3LvpZiITaztevQa
WYSyK22h3tp3K62IOBX3gUd4Yr+Gvo4PNA26e21cUE2aVJsl6J9MeFITR2NzY1cmZ44
KWibglkPlE4KBiRsbHCvs4wlaUaO5qhNj1BdH3/Hha4x root@CAServer

Router certificate
=====
Type           : Host Certificate
Key ID         : server
Serial        : 10
Valid         : from Fri Sep 16 06:56:00 2022 to Fri Nov 25 06:57:17 2022

```

4. User authentication

a. [Client machine] Generate an SSH key pair in the client system using the `ssh-keygen` utility for the user.

```

[root@userclient test]# ssh-keygen -t rsa
Generating public/private rsa key pair.
Enter file in which to save the key (/root/.ssh/id_rsa): /root/openssh_client/test/user
Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase):
Enter same passphrase again:
Your identification has been saved in /root/openssh_client/test/user.
Your public key has been saved in /root/openssh_client/test/user.pub.
The key fingerprint is:
SHA256:rNmS7P0u6l1pm75Kb4KhMxZThwaJ/AmnA9C//Z1GVEY root@userclient.cisco.com
The key's randomart image is:
+---[RSA 2048]-----+
|++ . . . .E |
| B + . o |
| B . . o |
| + + . . |
| * .S. |
| +.o= .. |
| ++o+o+ |
| =..=++=o |

```

```
| . ++.+XO. |
+----[SHA256]-----+
[root@userclient test]# ls
user user.pub
```

- b. [Client machine] Open the SSH public key file.



Note Copy the public key content for the user certificate.

```
[root@userclient test]# cat user.pub
ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAADAQABAAQCSpUNwiw1Ey0VXQ1Ruh2peRnAP12LSICNe9
H76xyBiCIXFLXHTUZM+W/Pa97pg3fObxaqyNYaeojfwmGeNyPLS9Ha0mqRuLmVCT/lgot5I
Rn1AZhufZz7iz1AdW8DMC//KUnUS/T+cEwGrZ//sbIPTMsQZhhaQVk9xqFp9ghPMxwar3vaHa
t9NL6ThrR+vive9IOY5LKMeRnqrf2GFX3L6gHfcgYv9fQOKxI11WjTA645rQyB+NumVlrG6KI
as/xmBCEFHpChGZ1/GSB/atrKeVEWqzsJkpQHxEtE7hwK8gMrL+ad38mbV2Zz6Cc7KHJFEWaz
sfjFscCP0kzUlgX root@userclient.cisco.com
```

- c. [CA server] Create a .pub file in the CA server for the user certificate public key and paste the public key contents from the previous step in this file.

```
[root@CAServer test]# vim user.pub
/* Here we are using the vim text editor to create the user.pub file */
/* You can use any text editor of your choice */
```

- d. [CA server] Sign the user public key using the CA certificate private key.

```
[root@CAServer test]# ssh-keygen -s cacert -I "user" -V +10w -n testuser -z 20 user.pub

Signed user key user-cert.pub: id "user" serial 20 valid from 2022-09-16T12:42:00 to
2022-11-25T12:43:24
```



Note The command to sign the CSR file using the CA certificate:

```
ssh-keygen -s <CACert> -I <IdentityOfSysReqCert> -V <CertValidity> -n
<Username> -z <CertSerialNo> <CopiedUserCertName>
```



Note In addition to the mandatory fields specified for the user certificate, you can also configure critical options and extensions for the user certificate. For detailed information on the critical options and extensions, refer [ssh-keygen](#).

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| CACert | Specify the filename of the CA Server private key/ |
| IdentityOfSysReqCert | Specify the identity of the certificate as User |
| CertValidity | Specify the validity period for the certificate. |

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| <Username> | Specify the principals that you want to add to the certificate.

Note
During authentication to the router, the principal in the user certificate is matched against the login username and requests with matching principal and username are permitted for further communication.

Note
You can have multiple principals that are associated with the same certificate. The principals must be separated by commas in the IdentityOfSysReqCert field in command to sign the user certificate file using CA certificate. |
| CertSerialNo | Specify a serial number for the certificate. |
| CopiedUserCertName | Specify the name of the file created to copy the contents of the user certificate file in the client machine. |

- e. [CA server] Open the signed user certificate in the CA server and copy the contents.

```
[root@CAServer test]# cat user-cert.pub
ssh-rsa-cert-v01@openssh.com AAAAHHNzaC1yc2EtY2VydC12MDFab3BlbnNzaC5jb20AA
AAg6x1cZnQTKmUO27dHFcUck7UzVCPWFMCep7Ldb41BF6MAAADAQAABAAABAQCspUNwiw1Ey0V
XQ1Ruh2peRnAP12LSICNe9H76xyBiCIXFLXHTUZM+W/Pa97pg3fObxaqyNYaeojfwmGeNyPL
S9Ha0mqRuLmVCT/1got5IRn1AZhufZz7iz1AdW8DMC//KUnUS/T+cEwGrZ//sbIPTMsQzhhaQV
k9xqFp9ghPMxwar3vaHat9NL6ThrR+viue9IOY5LKMeRnqrf2GFX3L6gHfcgYv9fQOKxI11WjT
A645rQyB+NumVlrG6KIas/xmBCEFHpcHgZ1/GSB/atrKeVEWqzsJkpQHxEtE7hwk8gMrL+ad38
mbV2Zz6Cc7KHJFEWaZsfjFscCP0kzU1gXAAAAAAAAABQAAAAABAAABHVzZXIAAAAAAAAAAGMKI
CAAAAAAY4BrFAAAAAAAAAACAAAAFXBlcm1pdC1YMTETzm9yd2FyZGluc2VudWZwAAAAAAAAAAcGvYbWl
0LWFnZW50LWZvcndhcmRpbmcAAAAAAAAAFnBlcm1pdC1wb3J0LWZvcndhcmRpbmcAAAAAAAAAAC
nBlcm1pdC1wdHkAAAAAAAAADnBlcm1pdC1lc2VyLXJjAAAAAAAAAAAAEXAAAAAB3NzaC1yc2E
AAAAADAQAABAAABAQCigl/zhyjuGOBYz5bu+GL76HBaROV0pVS4Lx3pf1jcjrFkVibPKKkVeX/1E
7sZIJ0anU9vYSJZW8zr18z06GqzmnJgRRaXa9vfwNmjvNdRwxuBA3Uk/G1sbmcusMXBXoY6z0I
EMh1VN0hCqE4cIFgLxgHpYAaqyl2hISAomTCNhhkD7700t8zbyRj16G0Ps0ggYHwMfLZf/tbFI
BPWpuuA3LvpZiiTazteVqAWYSyK22h3tp3K62IOBX3gUd4Yr+Gvo4PNA26e21cUE2aVJsl6J9
MeFITR2NzY1cmZ44KWi6bglkPLe4KBiRsbHCvs4wlaUa05qhNj1BdH3/Hha4xAAAABDwAAAAadz
2gtcnNhaAABABKOHeuTo9OMg6K+HjASPRXD7rQgiiOdljKdkpw4FZ1wCODBegQwPQkFYTNHmrH
frQYY72ZINCAjseq+ZSUCkCqJjYXbvY+ZdmRyy76PQvjitgolZjppJqX38nz3uqz/81A/ZuJiF
811sgJF0Loj7XDN9wjF/zBtsxsXPp7R5c775dmmFgZWQHbSWD1NmnPd9vLZMyBwId//+HV/bCF
LjbjI/nr/amLVjcI01iOZxzsh7bcLFBSDZ3Epd6IAqFEe+URqvsCjaaghcVnshvcfdgfaru00
wedsZX53/pEBKhlGacsachFa+S2QuYqTafqnEtkvJoNKVe7UDq/R4kEXM1s9CclIMOficyJm5L
as+ALR4= root@CAServer.cisco.com
```

- f. [CA server] Create a .pub file in the client machine for the CA signed user certificate and past the signed certificate contents in this file.

```
[root@CAServer test]# vim user-cert.pub
/* Here we are using the vim text editor to create the user-cert.pub file */
/* You can use any text editor of your choice */
```

- g. [Client machine] View the user certificate in the client machine.

```
[root@userclient test]# ssh-keygen -lf user-cert.pub
user-cert.pub:
    Type: ssh-rsa-cert-v01@openssh.com user certificate
    Public key: RSA-CERT SHA256:rNmS7P0u6l1pm75Kb4KhMxZThwaJ/AMnA9C//Z1GVEY
    Signing CA: RSA SHA256:/B2b8V7jKXwGphf75fkO74U/mpuHgDHmvF4okexdKhY
    Key ID: "user"
    Serial: 20
    Valid: from 2022-09-16T12:44:00 to 2022-11-25T12:45:51
    Principals:
        testuser
    Critical Options: (none)
    Extensions:
        permit-X11-forwarding
        permit-agent-forwarding
        permit-port-forwarding
        permit-pty
        permit-user-rc
```

- h. [Client machine] Open the known hosts file in the client system and add the public key of the CA to this file.



Note Add the CA public key to the known hosts file in the following format:

```
@cert-authority <hostname> <CA Public Key>
```

```
cat testuser@192.0.2.2 /root/.ssh/known_hosts
@cert-authority ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAADAQABAAQACig1/zhyjuGOBYz5bu
+GL76HBaROV0pVS4Lx3pf1jcjrFkVibPKKkVeX/1E7sZIJ0anU9vYSJZW8zrl8z06GqzmnJq
RRaXa9vfwNmjvNdrwxuBA3Uk/G1sbmcusMXBxOY6z0IEMh1VN0hCqE4cIFgLxgHpYAAqyl2h
ISaomTCNhkbD770Ot8zbyRjl6G0Ps0ggYHWmfLZf/tbFIBPWpuuuA3LvpZiITazteVQaWYSy
K22h3tp3K62IOBX3gUd4Yr+Gvo4PNA26e21cUE2aVJs16J9MeFITR2NzY1cmZ44Kwi6bglkP
1E4KBiRsbHCvs4wlaUa05qhNj1BdH3/Hha4x root@CAServer.cisco.com
```

- i. [Router Config mode] Configure the username in the router

```
Router# config
Router(config)# username testuser
Router(config-un)# group root-lr
Router(config-un)# commit
```

5. [Client machine] Access the router in the client using the OpenSSH certificate.

```
[root@userclient test]# ssh -o CertificateFile=user-cert.pub -i user testuser@192.0.2.2
-o StrictHostKeyChecking=yes
Router#
```



Note The command to access the router in the client machine remotely:

```
ssh -o CertificateFile=<CA_Signed_User_Certificate_Name> -i
<User_Certificate_Private_Key> <Username >@<Router_IP> -o
StrictHostKeyChecking=yes
```

Certificate-based user authentication using TACACS+ server

Table 44: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|---|
| Certificate-based user authentication using TACACS+ server | Release 7.5.4 | <p>This feature enables the router login for users in the remote TACACS+ server using the certificate-based authentication methods. Here, the router authenticates a user using the OpenSSH certificates and authorizes access according to the configurations available for that user in the external TACACS+ server. This feature provides an option to configure the users in a centralized TACACS+ server and use them across multiple routers in a network. Thus, it helps you overcome the hassles of configuring users in each router individually while authenticating users based on certificates.</p> <p>This feature introduces the aaa enable-cert-authentication command.</p> |

In certificate-based authentication methods, the router permits a login by matching the OpenSSH user certificate with the user configurations available locally in the router database. It leads to the need to configure multiple user profiles across all the individual routers in a network when using certificate-based authentication methods. In turn, it locally creates a configuration overhead for the network administrators.

With this feature, you can configure the users in a centralized TACACS+ server and instruct the router to allow authentication to these users through the certificate using the **aaa enable-cert-authentication** command. On enabling this feature, when the router receives a certificate-based authentication request, the router validates the user certificate using the host certificate. Once validation is successful, the router further queries the external TACACS+ server to check if the user requesting access is a TACACS+ user. The router uses the functionality of the **aaa authorization exec** command to make this query to the external TACACS+ server. If there is a match between the user profiles in the external TACACS+ server and the user requesting access, then the TACACS+ server processes the authorization. And the TACACS+ server sends the user group associated with this user to the router. Else, the router checks its local database depending on the authorization configuration, and further permits or denies the authentication for such a request.



Note The Router supports certificate-based authentication for users profiles in the external TACACS+ server.

Restrictions

- Certificate based authentication for users in an external TACACS+ server is supported only in OpenSSH implementation.

Prerequisites

- Enable certificate-based authentication for the Router. For more information, see [OpenSSH Certificate based Authentication for Router, on page 286](#).
- Configure the user profiles in the external TACACS+ Server.
- Configure the TACACS+ Server or TACACS+ Server Groups. For more information, see [Configure TACACS+ Server, on page 102](#) and [Configure TACACS+ Server Groups, on page 110](#).
- Configure user authorization using the TACACS+. For more information, see [aaa authorization exec](#).

Configuration Example

This section contains the detailed procedure to enable the Certificate based authentication for users in an external TACACS+ server in your router:

Configuration

```
Router#config

Router(config)#aaa enable-cert-authentication
/* Enables certificate based authentication for users in external TACACS+ Server */

Router(config)#aaa authorization exec default group tacacs+ local
/* Enables authorization for user list in TACACS+ and router database */

Router(config)#commit
```

Running Configuration

```
Router:ios#show running-config
...
aaa enable-cert-authentication
aaa authorization exec default group tacacs+ local
!
```

Public Key-Based Authentication of SSH Clients

Table 45: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|---|
| Public Key-Based Authentication of SSH Clients on Cisco IOS XR Routers | Release 25.1.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|---|
| Public Key-Based Authentication of SSH Clients on Cisco IOS XR Routers | Release 24.4.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 8212-48FH-M• 8711-32FH-M• 88-LC1-36EH• 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E• 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|---|
| Public Key-Based Authentication of SSH Clients on Cisco IOS XR Routers | Release 7.10.1 | <p>You are now assured of cryptographic strength even as you avail of automated password-less login while establishing SSH connections with the server. With the password and keyboard-interactive authentication, Cisco IOS XR routers configured as SSH clients now support public key-based authentication. In this authentication method, passwords need not be sent over the network; hence, it provides an additional layer of security and aids in automation processes. This feature is available only for users locally configured on the router; not those configured on remote servers.</p> <p>Previous releases supported SSH public key-based authentication only for Cisco IOS XR routers configured as SSH servers.</p> <p>The feature introduces these changes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CLI: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • crypto key generate authentication-ssh rsa • crypto key zeroize authentication-ssh rsa • show crypto key mypubkey authentication-ssh rsa • Yang Data Models: <p>New Xpaths for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cisco-IOS-XR-crypto-act.yang • Cisco-IOS-XR-crypto-cepki-new-oper.yang <p>(see GitHub, YANG Data Models Navigator)</p> |

Cisco IOS XR routers configured as SSH clients supported only password authentication and keyboard-interactive authentication for establishing SSH connection with the SSH server. Whereas those IOS XR routers that are configured as SSH servers supported public key-based user authentication as well. From Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.10.1 and later, you can use public-key based user authentication for Cisco IOS XR routers configured as SSH clients as well. This feature thereby allows you to use password-less authentication for secure file transfer and copy operations using SFTP and SCP protocols.

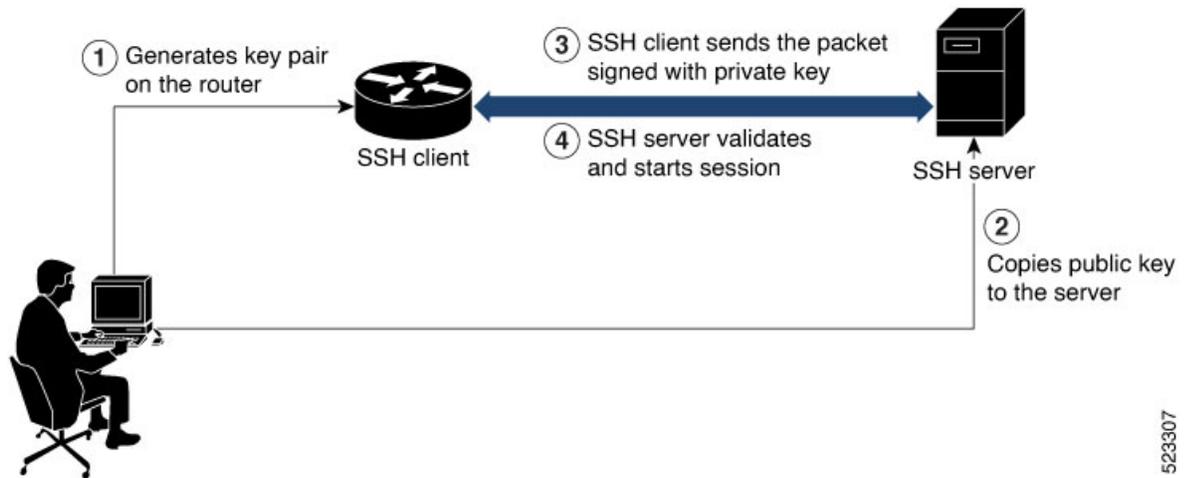
Remote AAA servers such as RADIUS and TACACS+ servers do not support public-key based authentication. Hence this functionality is available only for users who are configured locally on the router and not for users who are configured remotely.

How Does it Work

Public key encryption algorithm works with two keys—a public key and a private key. These keys form a key pair that is specific to a user. They are cryptographically related. The public key is used to encrypt the data and the private key is used to decrypt the data. The data encrypted by the SSH server that holds the public key can then only be read by the entity who holds the corresponding private key.

This image shows the work flow of public key-based authentication of SSH clients.

Figure 11: Public Key-Based Authentication of SSH Clients: Work Flow



You can generate the key pair on the router that is configured as the SSH client. Once it is generated, copy the public key to the SSH server that the user wants to connect to. When the user tries to log in to the server, the SSH client sends a connection request to the SSH server. The SSH server allows access only to users who can confirm that they have the corresponding private key. For this, the SSH server uses the public key of the user to issue a challenge that can be rightly answered by the SSH client using the corresponding private key. The SSH client thus automatically authenticates the user who is logging in to the server using the unique copy of the private key. This process thereby establishes a secure SSH connection to the server in a way that does not require the user to enter the password each time.

Enable Public Key-Based Authentication of SSH Client

Guidelines

These guidelines apply to enabling public key-based SSH authentication on Cisco IOS XR routers that are configured as SSH clients.

- Supports only RSA key.
- Remote AAA servers such as RADIUS and TACACS+ servers do not support public key-based authentication. Hence this functionality is available only for users who are configured locally on the router and not for users who are configured remotely.
- A user with root privileges has permission to create and delete keys for other users.

- If authentication keys are not created, then the SSH client does not proceed with public key-based authentication.
- If user adds the incorrect public key in the SSH server, then the user authentication fails.

Configuration Example

Establishing SSH connection using public key-based authentication on SSH client involves these high-level tasks:

1. Generate RSA key pair on the router that is configured as the SSH client.

Use the **crypto key generate authentication-ssh rsa** command to generate the RSA key pair:

```
Router#crypto key generate authentication-ssh rsa
Wed Dec 21 10:02:57.684 UTC
The name for the keys will be: cisco
  Choose the size of the key modulus in the range of 512 to 4096. Choosing a key modulus
  greater than 512 may take a few minutes.

How many bits in the modulus [2048]:
Generating RSA keys ...
Done w/ crypto generate keypair
[OK]

Router#
```

2. View the details of the generated key.

Use the **show crypto key mypubkey authentication-ssh rsa** command to view the details of the RSA key. The key value starts with *ssh-rsa* in this output.

```
Router#show crypto key mypubkey authentication-ssh rsa
Wed Dec 21 10:24:34.226 UTC
Key label: cisco
Type      : RSA Authentication
Size      : 2048
Created   : 10:02:59 UTC Wed Dec 21 2022
Data      :
 30820122 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 01050003 82010F00 3082010A 02820101
00A292B0 E45ACBB9 47B9EDA8 47E4664E 58FC3EA5 CE0F6B7A 3C6B7A73 537E6CEB
.
.
FF6BAF95 D9617CF6 65C058CC 7C6C22A9 9E48CC43 FDF0EB7 ABAD77 55A274DB
15020301 0001

OpenSSH Format:
ssh-rsa
AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAADAQABAAQACiKrDkWsU5R7ntqEfkZk5Y/.../2uv1dlhfPZlwfjMfGwiqZ5IzEP9/w63q63rd1WidNsV

Router#
```

3. Copy the RSA public key from the SSH client to the SSH server.

You can do this either by logging in to the remote SSH server with your established user credentials, or have a system administrator on the remote system add the key on the SSH server.

If the SSH server is a Cisco IOS XR router, then you can use the **crypto key import authentication rsa** command on the router prompt of the server to import the key from the SSH client. You will then be prompted to enter the public key.

If the SSH server is a Linux server, then you must add the public key to the `~/.ssh/authorized_keys` file of the respective user account in that server. This file contains a list of all authorized public keys on that server.

4. The user configured on the SSH client can now log in to the remote SSH server (209.165.200.225 in this example) without providing the user account password.

```
Router#ssh user1@209.165.200.225
```

This process establishes a successful SSH connection between the client and the server using public key-based authentication.

How to Delete the SSH Public Keys

Use the **crypto key zeroize authentication-ssh rsa username** command to delete the RSA keys.

```
Router#crypto key zeroize authentication-ssh rsa username user1
```

Public key-based Authentication to SSH Server on Routers

Table 46: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|--|
| Multiple Public Keys per User for Public Key-based Authentication | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |

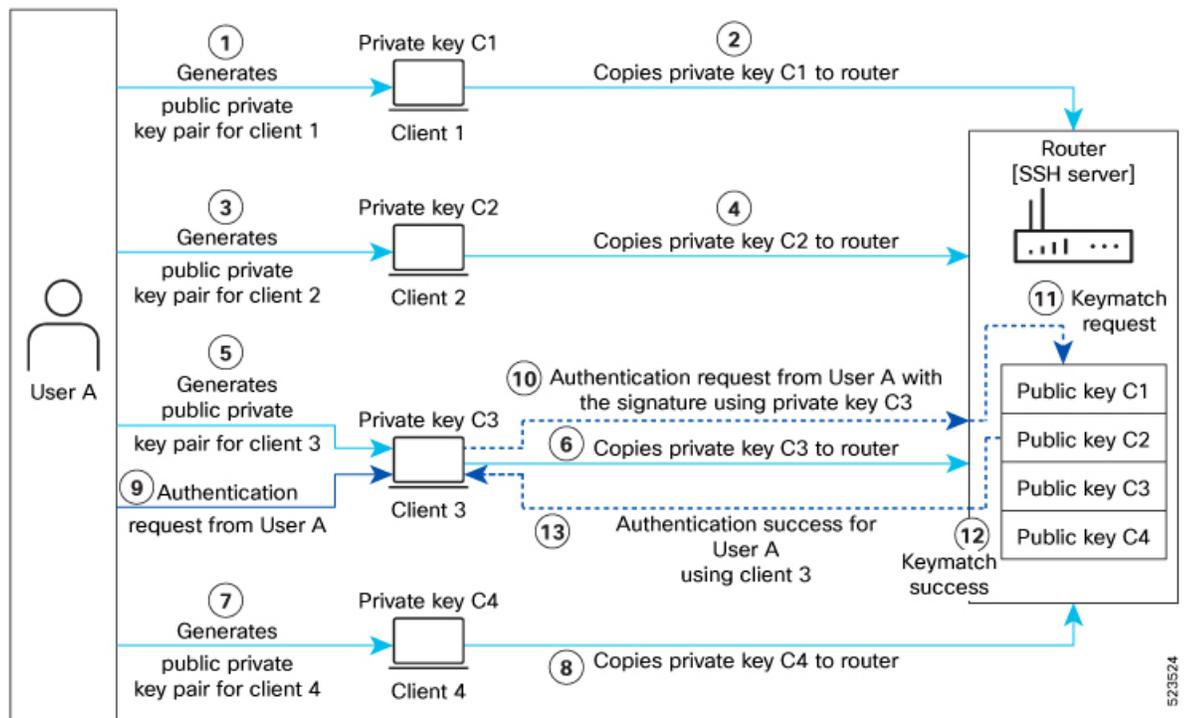
| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|--|
| Multiple Public Keys per User for Public Key-based Authentication | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 8212-48FH-M• 8711-32FH-M• 88-LC1-36EH• 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E• 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|---|
| Multiple Public Keys per User for Public Key-based Authentication | Release 7.11.1 | <p>We provide greater flexibility to access secure routers by allowing four public keys to be used for authentication. With the ability to associate multiple public keys with your user account on the router, we've also simplified the authentication process by eliminating the need to create unique users for each SSH client device.</p> <p>The feature introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The second, third, and fourth keywords are introduced in the crypto key import authentication rsa command. • The second, third, and fourth keywords are introduced in the crypto key zeroize authentication rsa command. • The second, third, and fourth keywords are introduced in the keystring command. <p>YANG Data Models:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>Cisco-IOS-XR-crypto-act</code> • <code>Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ssh-cfg</code> <p>(See GitHub, YANG Data Models Navigator)</p> |

Public key-based authentication provides password-less authentication to the routers. In this method, the user authentication relies on a cryptographic key pair: a public key and a private key. The user generates a key pair in the client device using utilities such as `ssh-keygen`. The public key is imported and stored in the router(SSH server), while the private key is in the user device(SSH client). While attempting public key-based authentication from the client, the user presents a signature created using the private key to the router. The router verifies the authenticity of that signature using the public key associated with that user in its database. The authentication is successful when the signature matches the public key and user access is permitted. Otherwise, the authentication fails, and the router denies the user access. With public key-based authentication, the routers offer a more secure authentication method than traditional password-based authentication because it is less vulnerable to brute force attacks and password theft.

From Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.11.1, the routers support up to four public keys per user for public key-based authentication to the routers. Previously, the users could have a single key pair. This constraint restricts an individual user in the router from having multiple systems to access the routers. Also, it necessitates creating a unique user in the router for each device to be an authorized SSH client to the router. However, the multiple public keys per user for public key-based authentication feature overcome these restrictions by allowing up to four public keys per user. As a result, the users can employ any corresponding private key to access the router.

Figure 12: Multiple Public Keys per User for Public Key-based Authentication



You can generate the key pair on each of the SSH clients. You must then copy the public keys to the router. When the user tries to log in to the router, the SSH client sends a connection request with a signature created using the private key. The router then checks the authenticity of the request by matching it against the public keys associated with that user in its database. Suppose one of the multiple public keys associated with that user matches the signature; the router authenticates such user, confirming that the user has the corresponding private key. This process thereby establishes a secure SSH connection to the router.

Guidelines and Restrictions for Public key-based authentication to Routers

- You can add public keys by importing the public key file or directly adding the public keystring to the router.
- The maximum number of public keys supported per user is four.
- The router supports importing or adding only one public key at a time. Even though the router supports up to four keys per user, you can only import or add them to the router one after the other and not simultaneously.
- To import the public key files to the router, use the `crypto key import authentication rsa` command.

- The router supports importing public keys in the following formats:
 - RSA
 - Base 64
 - PEM PKCS1
 - PEM PKCS8
- To delete the public key files in the router, use the [crypto key zeroize authentication rsa](#) command.
- You can import the public keys using the [crypto key import authentication rsa](#) command in the XR Config mode and XR EXEC mode. However, use the same operation mode to import and delete the public keys. That is, if you import the public keys in the XR Config mode, delete such keys in XR Config mode only. Similarly, if you import the public keys in the XR EXEC mode, delete such keys in XR EXEC mode only.
- You can use SSH configurations to add or delete a public key in the router.
- The router supports only the RSA key format while using SSH configurations to add a public key for public key-based authentication to the router.

Configure Public key-based Authentication to Routers

This section details different methods of enabling flexible public key-based authentication and importing public keys to the router:

Configurations

Using public-key import:

1. [Router] Create a user in the router:

```
Router# config
Router(config)# username testuser1
Router(config)# commit
```
2. [Client] Generate RSA key pairs on the SSH clients.
3. [Router] Copy the public keys from the clients to the router.



Note You can skip step 3 while using the tftp filepath in step 4. For more details, [crypto key import authentication rsa](#) command.

4. [Router] Import public keys to the router:

```
Router# configure
Router(config)# crypto key import authentication rsa username testuser1
disk0:/id_rsa_key1.pub
Router(config)# crypto key import authentication rsa username testuser1 second
disk0:/id_rsa_key2.pub
Router(config)# crypto key import authentication rsa username testuser1 third
disk0:/id_rsa_key3.pub
Router(config)# crypto key import authentication rsa username testuser1 fourth
```



```
47B40FB2 B5C10DBB 1205AD30 7E146698 2A6179AD 8F1B030D 5146C097 3A2FB3E2
19820DA5 2132E7C7 1B7281C4 8427DF76 60E39E3A 70126DAD 108B7805 34B45915
853956AA 301CCF4B 78F06D75 D7D90320 BE667F1D 1A479713 FD020301 0001
```

```
Key label: testuser1thirdkey
Type      : RSA General purpose
Size      : 768
Created   : 16:27:57 IST Wed Sep 20 2023
Data      :
307C300D 06092A86 4886F70D 01010105 00036B00 30680261 00E0DDF9 53C81AE1
35CE15E1 C7A9916F 4AED7887 65AC1E4E 48F420E4 2A56079E FD38D069 C97FC0F7
B6D8663D C7D6FC46 1CD27EA6 AC71D36C 40E35349 0A78DA64 465B7C8B B63E8627
BF074AF4 EC37AC0C 200AFAF3 C67E8E9B AE931964 8DF86CD9 E5020301 0001
```

```
Key label: testuser1fourthkey
Type      : RSA General purpose
Size      : 768
Created   : 16:27:57 IST Wed Sep 20 2023
Data      :
307C300D 06092A86 4886F70D 01010105 00036B00 30680261 00E0DDF9 53C81AE1
35CE15E1 C7A9916F 4AED7887 65AC1E4E 48F420E4 2A56079E FD38D069 C97FC0F7
B6D8663D C7D6FC46 1CD27EA6 AC71D36C 40E35349 0A78DA64 465B7C8B B63E8627
BF074AF4 EC37AC0C 200AFAF3 C67E8E9B AE931964 8DF86CD9 E5020301 0001
```

SSH configurations:

```
Router# show ssh
SSH version : Cisco-2.0
```

| id | chan | pty | location | state | userid | host | ver |
|-------------------|------|------|-----------------------------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|-----|
| | | | authentication connection type | | | | |
| Incoming sessions | | | | | | | |
| 26 | 1 | vty1 | 0/RP0/CPU0 | SESSION_OPEN | testuser1 | 192.0.2.1 | v2 |
| | | | rsa-pubkey Command-Line-Interface | | | | |
| 27 | 1 | vty2 | 0/RP0/CPU0 | SESSION_OPEN | testuser1 | 192.0.2.2 | v2 |
| | | | rsa-pubkey Command-Line-Interface | | | | |
| 28 | 1 | vty3 | 0/RP0/CPU0 | SESSION_OPEN | testuser1 | 192.0.2.3 | v2 |
| | | | rsa-pubkey Command-Line-Interface | | | | |
| 29 | 1 | vty4 | 0/RP0/CPU0 | SESSION_OPEN | testuser1 | 192.0.2.4 | v2 |
| | | | rsa-pubkey Command-Line-Interface | | | | |
| Outgoing sessions | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | 0/RP0/CPU0 | SESSION_OPEN | testuser3 | 192.0.2.6 | v2 |
| | | | password Command-Line-Interface | | | | |

Delete Public Keys in the Routers

This section details different methods to delete public keys in the router:

```
Router# configure
Router(config)# crypto key zeroize authentication rsa all
Thu Sep 21 21:45:23.260 IST
Do you really want to remove all these keys ?? [yes/no]: yes
Router# commit
/* Deleting public keys for the user logged in to the router */
```

```
Router# configure
Router(config)# crypto key zeroize authentication rsa username testuser all
Thu Sep 21 21:45:23.260 IST
Do you really want to remove all these keys ?? [yes/no]: yes
Router# commit
/* Deleting public keys for any user in the router */
```

```

Router# configure
Router(config)# no ssh server username testuser
Router# commit
/* Deleting all SSH configurations for a user in the router */

Router# configure
Router(config)# no ssh server username testuser keystring third
Router# commit
/* Deleting a specific public-key for a user using SSH configurations in the router */

```

Multi-Factor Authentication for SSH

Table 47: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Multi-Factor Authentication for SSH | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| Multi-Factor Authentication for SSH | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |
| Multi-Factor Authentication for SSH | Release 24.1.1 | <p>You can now deploy robust authentication mechanisms for SSH connections to your routers and reduce security risks due to compromised or weak passwords. We now support multi-factor authentication (MFA)—a secure access management solution that verifies the identity of a user using multiple verification factors—for SSH login on Cisco IOS XR routers. These verification factors include a combination of login credentials such as username and password and a token, a cryptographic device, or a mobile phone with MFA application installed.</p> <p>No new commands or data models were introduced or modified as part of this feature.</p> |

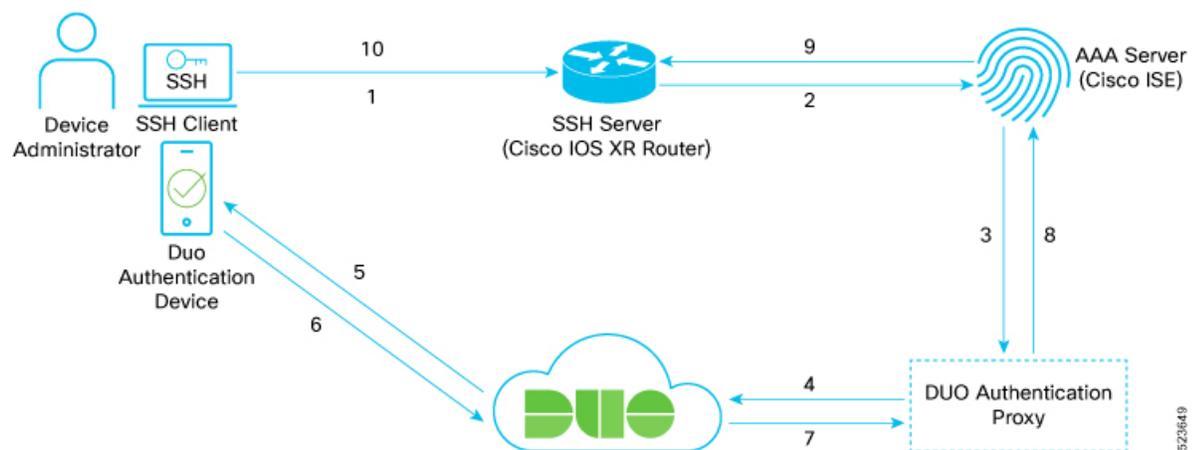
Multi-factor authentication is a multi-step authentication process that requires users to enter two or more verification factors to gain access to a system. These verification factors include something you know—such as a username and a password, and something you have—such as a token, a cryptographic authentication device, or a mobile phone with MFA application installed. MFA thereby enables stronger authentication mechanism and reduces security risk to the network devices arising due to compromised or weak passwords.

To achieve MFA for SSH, the SSH server as well as the client must support keyboard-interactive authentication method. The default order of SSH client authentication methods to support MFA in Cisco IOS XR routers is public-key, keyboard-interactive, and password-based authentication. You can change this default order as per your requirement using the `ssh client auth-method` command.

Multi-Factor Authentication Workflow

This is a sample topology to demonstrate the MFA workflow to establish SSH connection on a Cisco IOS XR router. In this example we have considered Cisco IOS XR router as the SSH server, Cisco ISE as the AAA server, and Cisco DUO authentication proxy and cloud services for MFA.

Figure 13: Multi-Factor Authentication Set-up for SSH Connection: Sample Topology



Key Components

The key components in this sample Duo MFA topology for SSH include:

- SSH client—from where the admin user initiates SSH connection to the SSH server.
- SSH server—which is the network device or router to which SSH connection is to be established.
- Cisco identity services engine (ISE)—that acts as the RADIUS or TACACS+ Server for AAA.
- DUO authentication proxy—is an on-premises software service that receives authentication requests from your local devices and applications through RADIUS or LDAP, optionally performs primary authentication against your existing LDAP directory or RADIUS authentication server, and then contacts Duo to perform secondary authentication.
- DUO cloud service—Cisco cloud-based security platform that provides secure access to any device or application.
- DUO authentication device—such as a mobile phone which has the Duo application installed.

The detailed workflow of Duo MFA for SSH is as follows:

1. The admin user initiates an SSH connection to the SSH server (Cisco IOS XR router, in this case) using the login credentials of the users that are already configured on ISE.
2. The router forwards the request to the TACACS+ AAA server (Cisco ISE, in this case).
3. The Cisco ISE sends the authentication request to Duo authentication proxy. The proxy forwards the request back to ISE for the 1st factor authentication. ISE informs the authentication proxy if the local authentication was successful.
4. Upon successful ISE authentication, the authentication proxy sends an authentication request to Duo cloud for 2nd factor authentication.
5. Duo cloud sends a *PUSH* notification to the DUO authentication device of the admin user.
6. The admin user approves the *PUSH* notification.
7. The Duo cloud informs the authentication proxy of the successful *PUSH* notification.
8. The authentication proxy informs ISE of a successful authentication.
9. The ISE authorizes the admin user.
10. The admin user successfully establishes an SSH connection with the router.

Set Up Multi-Factor Authentication for SSH

This section describes how to set up a sample topology for establishing SSH connection with Cisco IOS XR router using Duo MFA.

Prerequisites

- The Cisco IOS XR router installed with Cisco IOS XR Software Release 24.1.1 or later, that acts as the server to the SSH client, and as the client to the ISE server. The router must be already configured for AAA with ISE.
- Cisco identity services engine (ISE) server that acts as the RADIUS or TACACS+ AAA server.
- Duo MFA proxy application must be installed on either Windows or on Linux machine. For details, see <https://duo.com/docs/authproxy-reference>.
- DUO application must be installed on the DUO authentication device.

The procedure to set up MFA for SSH involves these high-level tasks:

- Configure Duo System
- Configure Duo Authentication Proxy
- Configure ISE
- Configure RADIUS Server Attributes on the Router
- Verify Duo MFA Set-up

Configure Duo System for MFA

Configuring Duo system for MFA involves these key steps:

1. Create a Duo account in <https://duo.com/>
2. Perform these Duo system configurations (for details, see the *First Steps* listed in <https://duo.com/docs/radius>):
 - Login to your Duo account and click on **Applications**.
 - Search for **Cisco ISE server** and click on **Protect This Application**.
 - In a notepad copy and paste your **Integration Key**, **Secret Key**, and **API Hostname**.
3. Add Duo mobile device:
Select **Dashboard** > **Users** > *username* > **Add Phone**
4. Activate Duo mobile:
Select **Dashboard** > **2FA Devices** > *phone-number* > **Activate Duo Mobile**

Configure Duo Authentication Proxy for MFA

Configuring Duo authentication proxy for MFA involves these key steps (For more details, see <https://duo.com/docs/authproxy-reference>)

1. [Download and install](#) the latest Duo authentication proxy on your Windows or Linux machine.
In this example, we have installed the primary authentication proxy on a Windows 2016 machine and the secondary proxy on an Ubuntu server.
2. [Configure the proxy](#) for your primary authenticator.
Edit the Duo authentication proxy configuration file, `authproxy.cfg`, located in the `conf` subdirectory of the proxy installation path in the server using a text editor. You can add multiple ISE servers as RADIUS clients and multiple router subnets/IP addresses as part of the router.
3. [Start the proxy server\(s\)](#) and check the proxy logs for any configuration or connectivity error.



Note For installation on Windows, ensure sure that the Windows firewall is configured to allow connections for the authentication proxy.

Configure ISE for MFA

Configuring ISE for MFA involves these key steps (for more details, see [Configure Duo Two Factor Authentication for ISE Management Access](#))

1. Integrate ISE with Duo authentication proxy:
 - a. Add a new RADIUS token server:
Administration > **Identity Management** > **External Identity Sources** > **RADIUS Token**, and click **Add**
Ensure that the **Shared Secret** matches the one that you already defined in the *Configure Duo Authentication Proxy* task.
For details, see step1 listed under [ISE Configuration](#).

- b. Set the authentication method for the identity source:

Navigate to **Administration > System > Admin Access > Admin Access > Authentication Method**, and select previously configured RADIUS token server (for example, **RADIUS:DUO**) as the **Identity Source**.

For details, see Step 2 listed under [ISE Configuration](#).

2. Create device admin policies:

- a. Create a policy set:

Navigate to **Work Centers > Device Administration > Device Admin Policy Sets**.

In this example, we created a policy set that matches on both protocols (RADIUS and TACACS+) with the **Allowed Protocols** set to **Default Device Admin**.

- b. Set the following policies inside the policy set:

- **Authentication Policy:** In this example, we have set a default rule to check the Identity Source Sequence that we defined in the steps above which contains the RADIUS Token Servers (Duo Authentication Proxies) and Active Directory.
- **Authorization Policy:** In this example, we have set a rule that checks if the authenticated user belongs either to the **Domain Users** or **NS-ISE-IOS-Admins** groups that we have configured in active directory (AD). If the user belongs to one of these groups, then the system returns the pre-configured **Command Sets** and **Shell Profile**.

3. Add and onboard users in Duo:

You can configure Duo to automatically sync with your AD or manually add the user in Duo (for details, see [Enroll user with Duo](#)).

Configure RADIUS Server Attributes for MFA

This topic describes how to configure RADIUS server attributes for MFA on the Cisco IOS XR router (for more details, see [configure-your-radius-client\(s\)](#)).

Set the IP address of the RADIUS server to the IP address of your authentication proxy, the RADIUS server port to 1812, and the RADIUS secret to the appropriate secret that you configured in the *radius_server_auto* section in the *authproxy.cfg* file.

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#radius-server host 209.165.200.225auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
Router(config-radius-host)#key test@1234
Router(config-radius-host)#commit
```

Verify MFA Set-up for SSH Connection

Once you complete the Duo MFA configurations, follow these steps to verify the set-up:

- Initiate an SSH connection from the SSH client router that is already added in the ISE, using the **ssh** command.
- Use the AD credentials for the admin user to log in.

- Upon successful authentication, confirm that the user received a **Duo Push/Passcode** notification on the Duo authentication device based on what is set in the Duo authentication proxy configuration file, authproxy.cfg.
- After approving the **Duo Push** or entering the correct Passcode, the admin user must be authenticated and authorized to access the router through the SSH connection.
- The live logs of RADIUS in the ISE server must show authentication requests against the Duo authentication proxies.
- Check the authproxy log file in your authentication proxy for any errors or issues.

Selective Authentication Methods for SSH Server

Table 48: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|---|
| Selective Authentication Methods for SSH Server | Release 25.1.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| Selective Authentication Methods for SSH Server | Release 24.4.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|--|
| Selective Authentication Methods for SSH Server | Release 7.8.1 | <p>You now have the flexibility to choose the preferred SSH server authentication methods on the router. These methods include password authentication, keyboard-interactive authentication, and public-key authentication. This feature allows you to selectively disable these authentication methods. By allowing the SSH clients to connect to the server only through these permitted authentication methods, this functionality brings in additional security for router access through SSH. Before this release, by default, the SSH server allowed all these authentication methods for establishing SSH connections.</p> <p>The feature introduces these changes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CLI: New disable auth-methods command • YANG Data Model: New XPaths for <code>Cisco-IOS-XR-crypto-ssh-cfg.yang</code> Cisco native model (see GitHub) |

By default, the SSH server on the Cisco IOS XR routers allowed various authentication methods such as password authentication, keyboard-interactive authentication, and public-key authentication (including certificate-based authentication) for the SSH connections on the router. The SSH clients could use any of these authentication methods while attempting a connection to the SSH server on the router. From Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.8.1, you can selectively disable these authentication methods, and allow connection attempts from the SSH client only through the remaining authentication methods. If the SSH client tries to establish a connection to the server using nonpermitted authentication methods (the ones that are disabled), then the login attempt fails.

Disable SSH Server Authentication Methods

Use the **disable auth-methods** command in `ssh server` configuration mode to disable the specific authentication method for the SSH server.

Public-key authentication includes certificate-based authentication as well. Hence, disabling public-key authentication automatically disables the certificate-based authentication.

Configuration Example

This example shows how to disable the keyboard-interactive authentication method for the SSH server on the router using CLI. Similarly, you can disable other authentication methods.

```
Router#configure
Router(config)# ssh server
Router(config-ssh)# disable auth-methods keyboard-interactive
Router(config-ssh)# commit
```

Running Configuration

```
!
ssh server
```

```
disable auth-methods keyboard-interactive
!
```

Verification

Use the **show ssh server** command to see the list of authentication methods that the SSH server on the router supports. In this example, the keyboard-interactive method is disabled and the SSH server allows all other authentication methods.

```
Router#show ssh server

Wed Feb 23 10:38:37.716 UTC
Authentication Method Supported
-----
                PublicKey := Yes
                Password := Yes
Keyboard-Interactive := No
                Certificate Based := Yes
```

SSH Port Forwarding

Table 49: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| SSH Port Forwarding with CiscoSSH | Release 25.1.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| SSH Port Forwarding with CiscoSSH | Release 24.4.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)

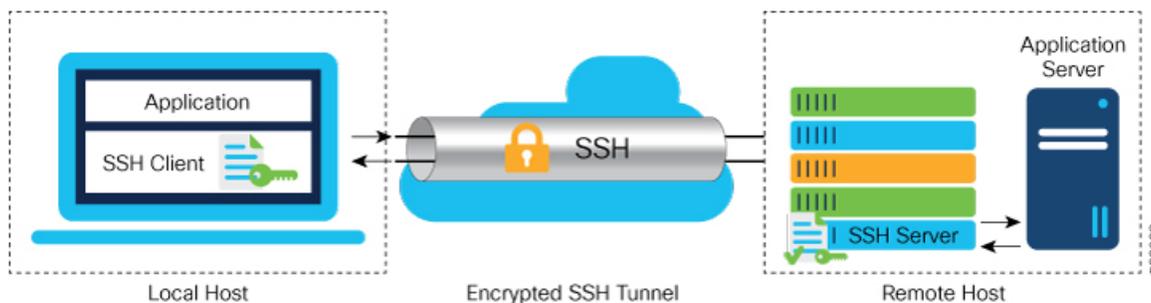
*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|---|
| SSH Port Forwarding with CiscoSSH | Release 7.3.2 | This release introduces SSH port forwarding with CiscoSSH, an OpenSSH-based implementation of SSH. CiscoSSH replaces Cisco IOS XR SSH, which is the older SSH implementation that existed prior to this release. |
| SSH Port Forwarding with Cisco IOS XR SSH | Release 7.3.15 | With this feature enabled, the SSH client on a local host forwards the traffic coming on a given port to the specified host and port on a remote server, through an encrypted SSH channel. Legacy applications that do not otherwise support data encryption can leverage this functionality to ensure network security and confidentiality to the traffic that is sent to remote application servers.

This feature introduces the ssh server port-forwarding local command. |

SSH port forwarding or SSH tunneling is a method of forwarding the otherwise insecure TCP/IP connections from the SSH client to server, or the other way around, through a secure SSH channel. Since the traffic is directed to flow through an encrypted SSH connection, it is tough to snoop or intercept this traffic while in transit. This SSH tunneling provides network security and confidentiality to the data traffic, and hence legacy applications that do not otherwise support encryption can mainly benefit out of this feature. You can also use this feature to implement VPN and to access intranet services across firewalls.

Figure 14: SSH Port Forwarding



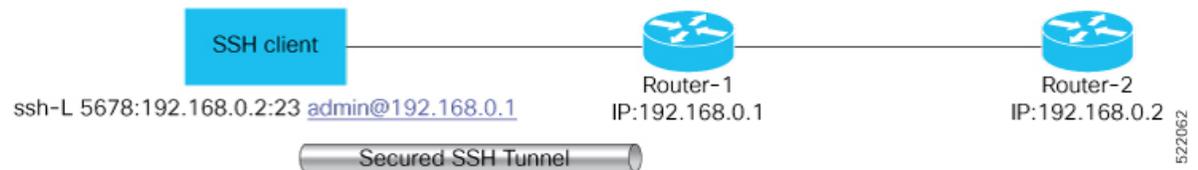
Consider an application on the SSH client residing on a local host, trying to connect to an application server residing on a remote host. The remote host can either be a single router where both the SSH server and application server reside, or, it can host the SSH server on one router and application server on a different device, like in case of a data center. With port forwarding or tunneling enabled, the application on the SSH client connects to a port on the local host that the SSH client listens to. The SSH client then forwards the data traffic of the application to the SSH server over an encrypted tunnel. The SSH server then connects to the actual application server that is either residing on the same router or on the same data center as the SSH server.

The entire communication of the application is thus secured, without having to modify the application or the work flow of the end user.

The SSH port forwarding feature is disabled, by default. You can enable the feature by using the **ssh server port-forwarding local** command in the XR Config mode.

How Does SSH Port Forwarding Work?

Figure 15: Sample Topology for SSH Port Forwarding



Consider a scenario where port forwarding is enabled on the SSH server running on Router-1, in this topology. An SSH client running on a local host tries to create a secure tunnel to the SSH server, for a local application to eventually reach the remote application server running on Router-2.

The client tries to establish an SSH connection to Router-1 using the following command:

```
ssh -L local-port:remote-server-hostname:remote-port username@sshserver-hostname
```

where,

local-port is the local port number of the host where the SSH client and the application reside. Port 5678, in this example.

remote-server-hostname:remote-port is the TCP/IP host name and port number of the remote application server where the recipient (SSH server) must connect the channel from the SSH client to. 192.168.0.2 and port 23, in this example.

sshserver-hostname is the domain name or IP address of the SSH server that receives the SSH client request. It must be the SSH IP address or domain name to access the router that hosts the SSH server. That is, 192.168.0.1 of Router-1, in this example.

For example,

```
ssh -L 5678:192.168.0.2:23 admin@192.168.0.1
```

When the SSH server receives a TCP/IP packet from the SSH client, it accepts the packet and opens a socket to the remote server and port specified in that packet. Once the connection between SSH client and server is established, the SSH server connects that communication channel to the newly created socket. From then onwards, SSH server forwards all the incoming data from the client on that channel to that socket. This type of connection is known as port-forwarded local connection. When the client closes the connection, the SSH server closes the socket and the forwarded channel.

How to Enable SSH Port Forwarding

Guidelines for Enabling SSH Port Forwarding Feature

- The Cisco IOS XR software supports SSH port forwarding only on SSH server; not on SSH client. Hence, to utilize this feature, the SSH client running at the end host must already have the support for SSH port forwarding or tunneling.

- The application server must be reachable on the same VRF where the current SSH connection between the server and the client is established.
- Port numbers need not match for SSH port forwarding to work. You can map any port on the SSH server to any port on the client.
- If the SSH client tries to do port forwarding without the feature being enabled on the SSH server, the port forwarding fails, and displays an error message on the console. Similarly the port-forwarded channel closes in case there is any connectivity issue or if the server receives an SSH packet from the client in an improper format.

Configuration Example

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#ssh server port-forwarding local
Router(config)#commit
```

Running Configuration

```
Router#show running-configuration

ssh server port-forwarding local
!
```

Verification

Use the **show ssh** command to see the details of the SSH sessions. The **connection type** field shows as **port-forwarded-local** for the port-forwarded session.

```
Router#show ssh

Wed Oct 14 11:22:05.575 UTC
SSH version : Cisco-2.0

id chan pty location state userid host ver authentication connection
type
-----
Incoming sessions
15 1 XXX 0/RP0/CPU0 SESSION_OPEN admin 192.168.122.1 v2 password
port-forwarded-local

Outgoing sessions

Router#
```

Use the **show ssh server** command to see the details of the SSH server. The **Port Forwarding** column shows as **local** for the port-forwarded session. Whereas, for a regular SSH session, the field displays as **disabled**.

```
Router#show ssh server
Tue Sep 7 17:43:22.483 IST
-----
SSH Server Parameters
-----

Current supported versions := v2
                        SSH port := 22
                        SSH vrfs := vrfname:=default(v4-acl:=, v6-acl:=)
```

```

Netconf Port := 830
Netconf Vrfs := vrfname:=default(v4-acl:=, v6-acl:=)

Algorithms
-----
Hostkey Algorithms :=
x509v3-ssh-rsa,ecdsa-sha2-nistp521,ecdsa-sha2-nistp384,ecdsa-sha2-nistp256,rsa-sha2-512,rsa-sha2-256,ssh-rsa,ssh-dsa,ssh-ed25519

Key-Exchange Algorithms :=
ecdh-sha2-nistp521,ecdh-sha2-nistp384,ecdh-sha2-nistp256,diffie-hellman-group14-sha1
Encryption Algorithms :=
aes128-ctr,aes192-ctr,aes256-ctr,aes128-gcm@openssh.com,aes256-gcm@openssh.com
Mac Algorithms := hmac-sha2-512,hmac-sha2-256,hmac-sha1

Authentication Method Supported
-----
PublicKey := Yes
Password := Yes
Keyboard-Interactive := Yes
Certificate Based := Yes

Others
-----
DSCP := 0
Ratelimit := 600
Sessionlimit := 110
Rekeytime := 30
Server rekeyvolume := 1024
TCP window scale factor := 1
Backup Server := Disabled
Host Trustpoint :=
User Trustpoint := tes,test,x509user
Port Forwarding := local
Max Authentication Limit := 16
Certificate username := Common name(CN) User principle name(UPN)
Router#

```

Syslogs for SSH Port Forwarding Feature

The router console displays the following syslogs at various SSH session establishment events.

- When SSH port forwarding session is successfully established:

```

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Aug 24 13:10:15.933 IST: SSHD_[66632]:
%SECURITY-SSHD-6-PORT_FWD_INFO_GENERAL : Port Forwarding, Target:=10.105.236.155,
Port:=22, Originator:=127.0.0.1,Port:=41590, Vrf:=0x60000000, Connection forwarded

```

- If SSH client tries to establish a port forwarding session without SSH port forwarding feature being enabled on the SSH server:

```

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Aug 24 13:20:31.572 IST: SSHD_[65883]: %SECURITY-SSHD-3-PORT_FWD_ERR_GENERAL
: Port Forwarding, Port forwarding is not enabled

```

Associated Command

- **ssh server port-forwarding local**

DSCP Marking for SSH Packets

Table 50: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|--|
| DSCP Marking from TCP Connection Phase for SSH Packets | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| DSCP Marking from TCP Connection Phase for SSH Packets | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|--|
| DSCP Marking from TCP Connection Phase for SSH Packets | Release 24.1.1 | <p>We now prevent SSH client packet drops in the TCP connection (initial handshake) phase as they travel across transit routers in the network. This is because you can mark the DSCP values for SSH client packets in the TCP connection phase, which overrides the transit routers' policies to filter and drop packets with no DSCP value marked. Using a new command, you can also set the DSCP value from the TCP connection phase for SSH server packets.</p> <p>The feature introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>ssh server set-dscp-connection-phase</code> <p>YANG Data Model:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New XPath, <code>set-dscp-connection-phase</code>, for <code>Cisco-IOS-XR-crypto-ssh-cfg.yang</code> (see GitHub, YANG Data Models Navigator) |

CiscoSSH is based on OpenSSH version 8.0 in which the DSCP marking of the SSH packets is done only after the authentication phase of session establishment. Hence, the SSH packets originating from the CiscoSSH routers did not have the DSCP value set in the initial handshake or the TCP connection phase. This led to SSH packet drops during the TCP connection phase if routers in the transit network have specific rules or filters to drop packets with zero or incorrect DSCP value.

From OpenSSH version 8.5 and later, the DSCP marking of SSH client packets is done from the TCP connection phase itself. Cisco IOS XR Software Release 24.1.1 brings in this behavior change for CiscoSSH. Whereas there is no change in behavior of the marking for SSH server packets. The CiscoSSH routers that function as SSH servers continue to mark the DSCP value for the packets only after the authentication phase. You can use the `ssh server set-dscp-connection-phase` command to set the DSCP value for the SSH server packets from the TCP connection phase.

Set DSCP Marking for SSH Packets from TCP Connection Phase

To set the DSCP marking for SSH server packets from TCP connection phase, use the `ssh server set-dscp-connection-phase` command in XR Config mode.



Note Although the `ssh server set-dscp-connection-phase` command is available on routers with CiscoSSH and routers with Cisco IOS XR SSH, this configuration is relevant only on routers with CiscoSSH.

Configuration Example

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#ssh server set-dscp-connection-phase
Router(config-ssh)#commit
```

Running Configuration

```
Router#show run ssh
!
ssh server set-dscp-connection-phase
!
```

SSH server timeouts

Unused connection timeout for SSH sessions

An unused connection timeout is a secure shell (SSH) configuration setting that

- terminates SSH connections with no active channels after a specified period
- prevents accumulation of stale connections, and
- protects routers from reaching SSH session limits due to inactive sessions.

An SSH connection is a secure communication session that

- establishes an encrypted link between a client and a server
- enables authentication and data exchange, and
- serves as the foundation for creating multiple SSH channels.

Table 51: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|---|
| Unused connection timeout for SSH sessions | Release 25.3.1 | <p>You can prevent session limit exhaustion and maintain optimal system performance by automatically disconnecting SSH connections with no active channels. The feature introduces a configurable timeout for unused SSH connections, ensuring stale sessions do not occupy resources on your routers. The router monitors each SSH connection and terminates it when all channels remain closed and SSH clients do not create new channels within the configured timeout period.</p> <p>The feature introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ssh server timeout <p>YANG Data Models:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>Cisco-IOS-XR-crypto-ssh-cfg.yang</code> data model was modified. • <code>Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ssh-cfg.yang</code> data model was modified. <p>(see GitHub)</p> |

SSH connections form the basis for secure management and file transfer sessions in Cisco IOS XR routers. These connections persist after successful authentication and host one or more SSH channels for various operations. When all channels within a connection close and no new channels open, the unused connection timeout begins counting down.

The unused connection timeout functionality addresses issues where client automation scripts fail to properly close SSH connections, causing stale connections that remain active indefinitely and consume session resources.

Set unused connection timeout for SSH sessions

Follow this procedure to enable automatic disconnection of unused SSH connections on your routers to enhance device security and resource management.

Procedure

Step 1 Configure connection timeout for the unused SSH sessions on your router.

Example:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#ssh server timeout connection 600
Router(config)#commit
```

The timeout begins counting down when all channels within a connection close and no new channels open.

Step 2 Verify the unused connection timeout configuration on the router.

Example:

```
Router#show run ssh
Thu Jul 3 09:45:41.201 UTC
ssh server v2
ssh server timeout
  connection 600
!
ssh server netconf vrf default
Router#
```

```
Router#show ssh server
Mon Aug 11 13:37:15.363 IST
-----
SSH Server Parameters
-----

Current supported versions := v2
      SSH port := 22
      SSH vrfs := vrfname:=default(v4-acl:=, v6-acl:=)
      Netconf Port := 830
      Netconf Vrfs := vrfname:=default(v4-acl:=, v6-acl:=)
      Netconf on SSH-port:= True (Netconf requests allowed on SSH port)

Algorithms
-----
      Hostkey Algorithms :=
x509v3-ssh-rsa,ssh-rsa-cert-v01@openssh.com,ssh-ed25519-cert-v01@openssh.com,ecdsa-sha2-nistp521-cert-v01@openssh.com,
ecdsa-sha2-nistp256-cert-v01@openssh.com,ecdsa-sha2-nistp256,ecdsa-sha2-nistp384,ecdsa-sha2-nistp521,ssh-ed25519,rsa-sha2-512,rsa-sha2-256,ssh-rsa,ssh-dss

      Key-Exchange Algorithms :=
ecdh-sha2-nistp521,ecdh-sha2-nistp384,ecdh-sha2-nistp256,diffie-hellman-group14-sha1,curve25519-sha256,
diffie-hellman-group14-sha256,diffie-hellman-group16-sha512,curve25519-sha256@libssh.org

      Encryption Algorithms :=
aes128-ctr,aes192-ctr,aes256-ctr,aes128-gcm@openssh.com,aes256-gcm@openssh.com,chacha20-poly1305@openssh.com

      Mac Algorithms := hmac-sha2-512,hmac-sha2-256

Authentication Method Supported
-----
      PublicKey := Yes
      Password := Yes
      Keyboard-Interactive := Yes
      Certificate Based := Yes

Others
-----
      DSCP := 48
```

```

        Ratelimit      := 6000
        Sessionlimit   := 110
        Rekeytime      := 60
        Server rekeyvolume := 1024
    TCP window scale factor := 1
        Backup Server  := Disabled
        Host Trustpoint :=
        User Trustpoint :=
        Port Forwarding := Disabled
    Max Authentication Limit := 20
        Certificate username := Common name (CN)
        OpenSSH Host Trustpoint :=
        OpenSSH User Trustpoint :=
        OpenSSH HIBA enabled := No
        OpenSSH HIBA role :=
        HIBA version := 1
    Punt Rx SSH pkts to NetIO := False
        Channel Timeout := 300
        Connection Timeout := 600

```

Step 3 Check the SSH session details on the router to confirm that the unused SSH session disconnects after the specified period of inactivity.

Example:

This sample command output shows that there is an active channel and the connection timeout has not yet triggered.

```

Router#show ssh
Mon Aug 11 08:10:39.133 UTC
SSH version : Cisco-2.0

id      chan pty      location      state      userid  host      ver authentication
connection type
-----
Incoming sessions
2       0 vty0      0/RP0/CPU0   SESSION_OPEN  cisco    198.51.100.1 v2 password
Command-Line-Interface

```

Outgoing sessions

The connection timeout triggers when there is no active channel. The **connection type** field then displays blank.

```

Router#show ssh
Mon Aug 11 08:10:47.675 UTC
SSH version : Cisco-2.0

id      chan pty      location      state      userid  host      ver authentication
connection type
-----
Incoming sessions
2       0 XXXXX  0/RP0/CPU0   SESSION_OPEN  cisco    198.51.100.1 v2 password

```

Outgoing sessions

Router#

This is the sample output when the connection timeout expires and entire connection closes.

```

Router#show ssh
Mon Aug 11 08:10:53.097 UTC
SSH version : Cisco-2.0

id      chan pty      location      state      userid  host      ver authentication

```

```

connection type
-----
Incoming sessions
Outgoing sessions
Router

```

Step 4 Check the system logs on the router console that indicates the termination of the inactive SSH sessions.

Example:

```

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Aug 11 08:10:51.557 UTC: ssh_syslog_proxy[1215]: %SECURITY-SSHD_SYSLOG_PRX-6-INFO_GENERAL
: sshd[42522]: terminating inactive connection from user user1 198.51.100.1 port 25372

```

The router automatically disconnects unused SSH connections after the configured connection timeout period.

Channel timeout for SSH sessions

A channel timeout is a secure shell (SSH) configuration setting that

- closes an SSH channel if it remains idle for a specific duration
- applies to all types of channels, including Shell, SFTP, and Netconf, and
- ensures unused channels are closed promptly.

An SSH channel is a virtual communication path within an SSH connection that

- allows concurrent operations such as shell access or file transfer
- operates independently within its parent SSH connection, and
- can be opened and closed without affecting the overall connection.

SSH channels allow multiple management or file operations to run concurrently over a single SSH connection on the router.

Table 52: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Channel timeout for SSH sessions | Release 25.3.1 | <p>You can improve resource efficiency and minimize potential security risks by automatically closing idle SSH channels on the routers after a specific period of inactivity. The feature introduces a configurable timeout for SSH channels which ensures that unused channels do not persist while the parent SSH connection remains active. The router monitors each SSH channel and closes any channel where no data is sent or received within the configured timeout period.</p> <p>The feature introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ssh server timeout <p>YANG Data Models:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cisco-IOS-XR-crypto-ssh-cfg.yang data model was modified. • Cisco-IOS-XR-um-ssh-cfg.yang data model was modified. <p>(see GitHub)</p> |

The SSH client opens one or more SSH channels such as Shell, SFTP, and so on, within the SSH connection as needed. The channel timeout begins counting down after a specific period of inactivity.

Channel timeouts help enforce resource efficiency by closing idle channels, while the parent SSH connection remains active.

Set channel timeout for SSH sessions

Follow this procedure to enable automatic disconnection of idle SSH channels belonging to active SSH sessions on your routers to enhance device security and resource management.

Procedure

Step 1 Configure channel timeout for the SSH channels on your router.

Example:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#ssh server timeout channel 300
Router(config)#commit
```

The timer expires when the SSH channel remains idle for the specified timeout period.

Step 2 Verify the SSH channel timeout configuration on the router by running these commands.

Example:

```
Router#show run ssh
Thu Jul 3 09:45:41.201 UTC
ssh server v2
ssh server timeout
  channel 300
  connection 600
!
ssh server netconf vrf default
Router#
```

```
Router#show ssh server
```

See the sample command output [here](#).

Step 3 Check the SSH session details on the router to confirm if the idle SSH channel closes after the specified period of inactivity.

Example:

Before timer expiry:

```
Router#show ssh
Thu Jul 3 09:46:29.807 UTC
SSH version : Cisco-2.0
```

| id | chan | pty | location | state | userid | host | ver | authentication |
|-------------------|------|------------------------|------------|--------------|--------|--------------|-----|----------------|
| | | connection | type | | | | | |
| ----- | | | | | | | | |
| Incoming sessions | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | 0 | vtty0 | 0/RP0/CPU0 | SESSION_OPEN | user1 | 198.51.100.1 | v2 | password |
| | | Command-Line-Interface | | | | | | |
| Outgoing sessions | | | | | | | | |
| Router# | | | | | | | | |

After timer expiry:

```
Router#show ssh
Thu Jul 3 09:51:33.818 UTC
SSH version : Cisco-2.0
```

| id | chan | pty | location | state | userid | host | ver | authentication |
|-------------------|------|------------|------------|--------------|--------|--------------|-----|----------------|
| | | connection | type | | | | | |
| ----- | | | | | | | | |
| Incoming sessions | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | 0 | XXXXX | 0/RP0/CPU0 | SESSION_OPEN | user1 | 198.51.100.1 | v2 | password |
| Outgoing sessions | | | | | | | | |
| Router# | | | | | | | | |

In this example, the **pty** field displays XXXXX and the **connection type** field displays blank after the timer expires.

Step 4 Check the system logs on the router console that indicates the closure of the idle SSH channels.

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Jul  3 09:46:32.002 UTC: ssh_syslog_proxy[1222]:  
%SECURITY-SSHD_SYSLOG_PRX-6-INFO_GENERAL : sshd[39648]: Closing channel 0 of user user1 198.51.100.1  
port 34454 after 300 seconds of inactivity
```

The router automatically closes inactive SSH channels after the configured channel timeout period.



CHAPTER 12

Configuring FIPS Mode

The Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140-2 is an U.S. and Canadian government certification standard that defines requirements that the cryptographic modules must follow. The FIPS specifies best practices for implementing cryptographic algorithms, handling key material and data buffers, and working with the operating system.

In Cisco IOS XR software, these applications are verified for FIPS compliance:

- Secure Shell (SSH)
- Secure Socket Layer (SSL)
- Transport Layer Security (TLS)
- Internet Protocol Security (IPSec) for Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3)
- Simple Network Management Protocol version 3 (SNMPv3)
- AAA Password Security



Note Any process that uses any of the following cryptographic algorithms is considered non-FIPS compliant:

- Rivest Cipher 4 (RC4)
- Message Digest (MD5)
- Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Code (HMAC) MD5
- Data Encryption Standard (DES)

The Cisco Common Cryptographic Module (C3M) provides cryptographic services to a wide range of the networking and collaboration products of Cisco. This module provides FIPS-validated cryptographic algorithms for services such as RTP, SSH, TLS, 802.1x, and so on. The C3M provides cryptographic primitives and functions for the users to develop any protocol.

By integrating with C3M, the Cisco IOS-XR software is compliant with the FIPS 140-2 standards and can operate in FIPS mode, level 1 compliance.

- [Prerequisites for Configuring FIPS, on page 334](#)
- [How to Configure FIPS, on page 334](#)

Prerequisites for Configuring FIPS

You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command.

If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.

Guidelines for Enabling FIPS Mode

From Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.2.1 and later, you must follow these guidelines while enabling FIPS mode:

- You must configure the session with a FIPS-approved cryptographic algorithm. A session configured with non-approved cryptographic algorithm for FIPS (such as **MD5** and **HMAC-MD5**) does not work. This is applicable for OSPF, BGP, RSVP, ISIS, or any application using key chain with non-approved cryptographic algorithm, and only for FIPS mode (that is, when **crypto fips-mode** is configured).
- If you are using any **HMAC-SHA** algorithm for a session, then you must ensure that the configured *key-string* has a minimum length of 14 characters. Otherwise, the session goes down. This is applicable only for FIPS mode.
- If you try to execute the telnet configuration on a system where the FIPS mode is already enabled, then the system rejects the telnet configuration.
- If telnet configuration already exists on the system, and if FIPS mode is enabled later, then the system rejects the telnet connection. But, it does not affect the telnet configuration as such.
- It is recommended to configure the **crypto fips-mode** command first, followed by the commands related to FIPS in a separate commit. The list of commands related to FIPS with non-approved cryptographic algorithms are:
 - **key chain** *key-chain-name* **key** *key-id* **cryptographic-algorithm** **MD5**
 - **key chain** *key-chain-name* **key** *key-id* **cryptographic-algorithm** **HMAC-MD5**
 - **router ospfv3 1 authentication ipsec spi 256 md5** *test-md5-value*
 - **router ospfv3 1 encryption ipsec spi 256 esp des** *test-des-value*
 - **router ospfv3 1 encryption ipsec spi 256 esp des** *test-des-value* **authentication md5** *test-md5-value*
 - **snmp-server user** *user1* *user-grp1* **v3 auth md5 priv des56**
 - **ssh server algorithms key-exchange** **diffie-hellman-group1-sha1**
 - **telnet vrf default ipv4 server max-servers** *100*

How to Configure FIPS

Perform these tasks to configure FIPS.

Enable FIPS mode

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
Enters global configuration mode.
```

Step 2 **crypto fips-mode**

Example:

```
Router(config)#crypto fips-mode
Enters FIPS configuration mode.
```

Note

Stop new incoming SSH sessions while configuring or unconfiguring **crypto fips-mode**. Restart the router upon configuration.

Step 3 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Step 4 **show logging**

Example:

```
Router#show logging
Syslog logging: enabled (0 messages dropped, 0 flushes, 0 overruns)
  Console logging: level debugging, 60 messages logged
  Monitor logging: level debugging, 0 messages logged
  Trap logging: level informational, 0 messages logged
  Buffer logging: level debugging, 3 messages logged

Log Buffer (9000000 bytes):
<output omitted>

Log Buffer (307200 bytes):

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:Apr 16 12:48:17.736 : cepki[433]: The configuration setting for FIPS mode has been
modified. The system must be reloaded to finalize this configuration change. Please refer to the IOS
XR System Security Configuration Guide, Federal Information Process Standard(FIPS) Overview section
when modifying the FIPS mode setting.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:Apr 16 12:48:17.951 : config[65757]: %MGBL-CONFIG-6-DB_COMMIT :
```

```
Configuration committed by user 'lab'. Use 'show configuration commit changes 1000000002' to view
the changes.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:Apr 16 12:48:23.988 : config[65757]: %MGBL-SYS-5-CONFIG_I : Configured from console
by lab
```

```
....
....
....
```

Displays the contents of logging buffers.

Note

Use the **show logging | i fips** command to filter FIPS specific logging messages.

Step 5 reload location all

Example:

```
Router#reload location all
```

Reloads a node or all nodes on a single chassis or multishelf system.

Configure FIPS-compliant Keys

Perform these steps to configure the FIPS-compliant keys:



Note The crypto keys are auto-generated at the time of router boot up. You need to perform these steps to generate the keys only if the keys are missing under some scenarios.



Note From Cisco IOS XR Release 7.3.2 onwards, you can generate and delete key-pairs from XR Config mode. For more details, see [Public key-pairs, on page 191](#) in the chapter *Implementing Certification Authority Interoperability*.

Before you begin

Refer the configuration steps in the [Enable FIPS mode, on page 335](#) section for enabling the FIPS mode.

Procedure

Step 1 crypto key generate rsa [usage-keys | general-keys] key label

Example:

```
Router#crypto key generate rsa general-keys rsakeypair
```

Generate a RSA key pair. Ensure that all the key pairs meet the FIPS requirements. The RSA key sizes allowed under FIPS mode are 2048, 3072 and 4096.

The option **usage-keys** generates separate RSA key pairs for signing and encryption. The option **general-keys** generates a general-purpose RSA key pair for signing and encryption.

To delete the RSA key pair, use the **crypto key zeroize rsa** *keypair-label* command.

Step 2 **crypto key generate dsa**

Example:

```
Router#crypto key generate dsa
```

Generate a DSA key pair if required. Ensure that all the key pairs meet the FIPS requirements. The DSA key size allowed under FIPS mode is 2048.

To delete the DSA key pair, use the **crypto key zeroize dsa** *keypair-label* command.

Step 3 **crypto key generate ecdsa**

Example:

```
Router#crypto key generate ecdsa
```

Generate a ECDSA key pair if required. Ensure that all the key pairs meet the FIPS requirements. The ECDSA key sizes allowed under FIPS mode are **nistp256**, **nistp384** and **nistp512**.

To delete the DSA key pair, use the **crypto key zeroize ecdsa** *keypair-label* command.

Step 4 **show crypto key mypubkey rsa**

Example:

```
Router# show crypto key mypubkey rsa
Fri Mar 27 14:00:20.954 IST
Key label: system-root-key
Type : RSA General purpose
Size : 2048
Created : 01:13:10 IST Thu Feb 06 2020
Data :
30820122 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 01050003 82010F00 3082010A 02820101
00A93DE0 1E485EE3 0E7F0964 C48361D1 B6014BE7 A303D8D6 F7790E92 88E69C4B
B97B7A9C D1B277E3 1569093C 82BD3258 7F67FB49 94860ECD 34498F1F 59B45757
F32C8E8F 7CEE23EC C36A43D1 9F85C0D9 B96A14DD DD3BBD4C A1FB0888 EED210A7
39D9A403 7ACE0F6E 39107226 CA621AD8 6E8102CA 9761B86F D33F2871 9DD16559
AFCB4729 EFCEDBAF 83DF76E4 9A439844 EE3B1180 4022F575 99E11A2C E25BB23D
9DD74C81 4E5C1345 D9E3CC79 1B98B1AA 6C06F004 22B901EC 36C099FE 10DE2622
EB7CE618 9A555769 12D94C90 D9BEE5EA A664E7F6 4DF8D8D4 FE7EAB07 1EF4FEAB
22D9E55F 62BA66A0 72153CEC 81F2639F B5F2B5C5 25E10364 19387C6B E8DB8990
11020301 0001
Key label: system-enroll-key
Type : RSA General purpose
Size : 2048
Created : 01:13:16 IST Thu Feb 06 2020
Data :
30820122 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 01050003 82010F00 3082010A 02820101
009DBC14 C83604E4 EB3D3CF8 5BA7FDDB 80F7E85B 427332D8 BBF80148 F0A9C281
49F87D5C 0CEBA532 EBE797C5 7F174C69 0735D13A 493670CB 63B04A12 4BCA7134
EE0031E9 047CAA1E 802030C5 6071E8C2 F8ECE002 CC3B54E7 5FD24E5C 61B7B7B0
68FA2EFA 0B83799F 77AE4621 435D9DFD 1D713108 37B614D3 255020F9 09CD32E8
82B07CD7 01A53896 6DD92B5D 5119597C 98D394E9 DBD1ABAF 6DE949FE 4A8BF1E7
851EB3F4 60B1114A 1456723E 063E50C4 2D410906 BDB7590B F1D58480 F3FA911A
6C9CD02A 58E68D04 E94C098F 0F0E81DB 76B40C55 64603499 2AC0547A D652412A
BCBBF69F 76B351EE 9B2DF79D E490C0F6 92D1BB97 B905F33B FAB53C20 DDE2BB22
C7020301 0001
```

Displays the existing RSA key pairs.

You can also view the RSA keys in the running configuration. The keys in the following example are in OpenSSL format.

Note

Only those keys that are generated in the `config` mode are visible in the running configuration.

```
Router(config)#crypto key generate rsa test
Router(config)#commit
Thu May 12 08:37:59.894 UTC
Router(config)#end
Router#show running-config
Thu May 12 08:38:04.244 UTC
Building configuration...
!! IOS XR Configuration 7.3.4
!! Last configuration change at Thu May 12 08:37:59 2022 by cisco
!
username cisco
  group root-lr
  group cisco-support
  secret 10
$6$8zR0nTbkA7Aln...$0Kn.YxNNmhlcXo9cEvEwLGAff.rEOTycjsizI/TLBz9WoQX.rmxVwkNgTKAnROUGPtBVlQ/Ndew8gEREXJ7mIO
!
call-home
  service active
  contact smart-licensing
  profile CiscoTAC-1
  active
  destination transport-method http
!
!
interface MgmtEth0/RSP0/CPU0/0
  shutdown
!
crypto key generate rsa test general-keys 2048 | -----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
MIIBIDANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ0AMIIBCACQAEAgixFnlD/AADc16eV38A
AIIlXZ5XfwAAcJb6eId/AAAA7du+AAAAAI6Qs47BQLhIVQAAAAAAAAAAWQDQVn8A
ANYKXp5XfwAAKAAAAAAAAAACaNcWeV38AANYKXp5XfwAAmJXFnlD/AADc16eV38A
AJolXZ5XfwAAA03bvgAAAABVAAAAAAAAAABBEANBfwAA3Ipenld/AAAgAAAAAAAA
AI8lXZ5XfwAA3Ipenld/AACPJcWeV38AAHhZANBfwAAA03bvgAAAADUTNDpQMwP
UUUAAAAAAAAAAkBCa0FZ/AADc16eV38AABgAAAAAAAAAiSXFnlD/AADc16eV38A
AAIBAA==
-----END PUBLIC KEY-----
|
end
```

Step 5 show crypto key mypubkey dsa

Example:

```
Router#show crypto key mypubkey dsa
```

Displays the existing DSA key pairs.

You can also view the DSA key in the running configuration. The keys in the following example are in OpenSSL format:

Note

Only those keys that are generated in the `config` mode are visible in the running configuration.

```
Router(config)#crypto key generate dsa
Router(config)#commit
Thu May 12 08:39:32.093 UTC
Router(config)#end
Router#show running-config
Thu May 12 08:39:37.557 UTC
```

```

Building configuration...
!! IOS XR Configuration 7.3.4
!! Last configuration change at Thu May 12 08:39:32 2022 by cisco
!
username cisco
  group root-lr
  group cisco-support
  secret 10
$6$8zR0nTbkA7Aln...$0Kn.YxNNmhlcXo9cEvEwLGAFf.rEOTycjsizI/TLBz9WoQX.rmxVwkNgTKAnROUGPtBVlQ/Ndew8gEREXJ7mI0
!
call-home
  service active
  contact smart-licensing
  profile CiscoTAC-1
  active
  destination transport-method http
!
!
interface MgmtEth0/RSP0/CPU0/0
  shutdown
!
crypto key generate dsa 1024 | -----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
MIIBcTCB8AYHKoZIzjgEATCB5AKBgQCPJcWeV38AANyKXp5XfwAAjyXFnlD/AADI
CQDQVn8AAAdt274AAAAA2hu9QE4nZs1lAAAAAAAAADAXANBwfwAA3Ipenld/AAAg
AAAAAAAAAIIlxZ5XfwAA3Ipenld/AACCJcWeV38AACTah6B+cCkKA03bvgAAADc
gpej73WrUwIUSD4A0FZ/AAQAAAAEAAAAAAAAACSAEAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAB
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAYJtQfFd/AAAAAAAAAAAAACgzANBwfwAAAO3bvgAAAC2
3xsW4KjylwN8AAJ5EAAAABAAAH9W0AA+SAAAAAA7du+AAAAAFUAAAAAAAAAAoDEA
0FZ/AAAV8DieV38AACAAAAAAAAAAAAAHvE4nld/AAAV8DieV38AAB7xOJ5XfwAAAAA
AAAAAAAA7du+AAAAAJEOuuQWSrUHVQAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA==
-----END PUBLIC KEY-----
|
crypto key generate rsa test general-keys 2048 | -----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
MIIBIDANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ0AMIIBCACQAEAgixFnld/AADcil6eV38A
AIIlxZ5XfwAAcJb6e1d/AAAA7du+AAAAAI6Qs47BQLhIVQAAAAAAAAAAWQDQVn8A
ANyKXp5XfwAAKAAAAAAAAACaNCwV38AANyKXp5XfwAAmjXFnlD/AADcil6eV38A
AJolxZ5XfwAAAO3bvgAAABVAAAAAAAAABBEANBwfwAA3Ipenld/AAgAAAAAAAA
AI8lxZ5XfwAA3Ipenld/AACPJcWeV38AAHhZANBwfwAAAO3bvgAAADUTNDpQMwP
UUUAAAAAAAAAAkBCA0FZ/AADcil6eV38AABgAAAAAAAAAiSXFnlD/AADcil6eV38A
AAIBAA==
-----END PUBLIC KEY-----
|
end!

```

Configure FIPS-compliant Key Chain

Perform these steps to configure the FIPS-compliant key chain:

Before you begin

Refer the configuration steps in the [Enable FIPS mode, on page 335](#) section for enabling the FIPS mode.

Procedure

Step 1 configure

Example:

```
Router#configure
```

Enters the global configuration mode.

Step 2 **key chain** *key-chain-name***Example:**

```
Router(config)#key chain mykeychain
```

Creates a key chain.

Step 3 **key** *key-id***Example:**

```
Router(config-mykeychain)#key 1
```

Creates a key in the key chain.

Step 4 **cryptographic-algorithm** {**HMAC-SHA1-20** | **SHA-1**}**Example:**

```
Router(config-mykeychain-1)#cryptographic-algorithm HMAC-SHA1-20
```

Configures the cryptographic algorithm for the key chain. Ensure that the key chain configuration always uses SHA-1 as the hash or keyed hash message authentication code (hmac) algorithm.

Step 5 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Configure FIPS-compliant Certificates

Perform these steps to configure the FIPS-compliant certificates:

Before you begin

Refer the configuration steps in the [Enable FIPS mode, on page 335](#) section for enabling the FIPS mode.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure****Example:**

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 `crypto ca trustpoint ca-name key label`

Example:

```
Router(config)#crypto ca trustpoint msiox rsakeypair
```

Configures the trustpoint by utilizing the desired RSA keys.

Ensure that the certificates meet the FIPS requirements for key length and signature hash or encryption type.

Note

The minimum key length for RSA or DSA key is 1024 bits. The required hash algorithm is SHA-1-20.

Step 3 Use the `commit` or `end` command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Step 4 `show crypto ca certificates`

Example:

```
Router#show crypto ca certificates
```

Displays the information about the certificate

What to do next

For more information about certification authority and requesting router certificates, see the *Implementing Certification Authority* chapter in this guide.

Configure FIPS-compliant OSPFv3

Perform these steps to configure the FIPS-compliant OSPFv3:

Before you begin

Refer the configuration steps in the [Enable FIPS mode, on page 335](#) section for enabling the FIPS mode.

Procedure

Step 1 `configure`

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **router ospfv3** *process name***Example:**

```
Router(config)#router ospfv3 ospfname
```

Configures the OSPFv3 process.

Step 3 **area** *id***Example:**

```
Router(config-ospfv3)#area 1
```

Configures the OSPFv3 area ID. The ID can either be a decimal value or an IP address.

Step 4 **authentication**{ **disable** | **ipsec spi** *spi-value* **sha1** [**clear** | **password**] *password*}**Example:**

```
Router(config-ospfv3-ar)#authentication ipsec spi 256 sha1 password pal
```

Enables authentication for OSPFv3. Note that the OSPFv3 configuration supports only SHA-1 for authentication.

Note

IPSec is supported only for Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3).

Step 5 **exit****Example:**

```
Router(config-ospfv3-ar)#exit
```

Exits OSPFv3 area configuration and enters the OSPFv3 configuration mode.

Step 6 **encryption**{ **disable** | {**ipsec spi** *spi-value* **esp** {**3des** | **aes** [**192** | **256**] [**clear** | **password**] *encrypt-password*} [**authentication** **sha1** [**clear** | **password**] *auth-password*] } }**Example:**

```
Router(config-ospfv3)#encryption ipsec spi 256 esp 3des password pwd
```

Encrypts and authenticates the OSPFv3 packets. Ensure that the OSPFv3 configuration uses the following for encryption in the configuration.

- 3DES: Specifies the triple DES algorithm.
- AES: Specifies the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) algorithm.

Ensure that SHA1 is chosen if the authentication option is specified.

Step 7 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.

- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Configure FIPS-compliant SNMPv3 Server

Perform these steps to configure the FIPS-compliant SNMPv3 server:

Before you begin

Refer the configuration steps in the [Enable FIPS mode, on page 335](#) section for enabling the FIPS mode.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
Router#configure
```

Enters the global configuration mode.

Step 2 **snmp-server user** *username groupname* {v3 [**auth sha** {clear | encrypted} *auth-password* [priv {3des | aes { 128 | 192 | 256} } {clear | encrypted} *priv-password*]] } [SDROwner | SystemOwner] *access-list-name*

Example:

```
Router(config)#snmp-server user user1 g v3 auth sha clear pass priv aes 128 clear privp
```

Configures the SNMPv3 server.

Step 3 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
- **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
- **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.

Configure FIPS-compliant SSH Client and Server

Perform these steps to configure the FIPS-compliant SSH Client and the Server:

Before you begin

Refer the configuration steps in the [Enable FIPS mode, on page 335](#) section for enabling the FIPS mode.

Procedure

Step 1 `ssh {ipv4-address | ipv6-address} cipher aes {128-CTR | 192-CTR | 256-CTR} username username`

Example:

```
Router#ssh 192.0.2.1 cipher aes 128-CTR username user1
```

Starts an SSH session to the server using the FIPS-approved ciphers. Ensure that the SSH client is configured only with the FIPS-approved ciphers. AES(Advanced Encryption Standard)-CTR (Counter mode) is the FIPS-compliant cipher algorithm with key lengths of 128, 192 and 256 bits.

Step 2 `configure`

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 3 `ssh server v2`

Example:

```
Router(config)#ssh server v2
```

Configures the SSH server.

The supported key exchange algorithms are:

- diffie-hellman-group14-sha1
- ecdh-sha2-nistp256
- ecdh-sha2-nistp384
- ecdh-sha2-nistp521

The supported cipher algorithms are:

- aes128-ctr
- aes192-ctr
- aes256-ctr
- aes128-gcm
- aes256-gcm

The supported HMAC algorithms are:

- hmac-sha2-512
- hmac-sha2-256
- hmac-sha1

Step 4 Use the **commit** or **end** command.

commit —Saves the configuration changes and remains within the configuration session.

end —Prompts user to take one of these actions:

- **Yes** — Saves configuration changes and exits the configuration session.
 - **No** —Exits the configuration session without committing the configuration changes.
 - **Cancel** —Remains in the configuration session, without committing the configuration changes.
-



CHAPTER 13

Implementing Secure Logging

This chapter describes the implementation of secure logging over Transport Layer Security (TLS). TLS, the successor of Secure Socket Layer (SSL), is an encryption protocol designed for data security over networks.

Table 53: Feature History Table

| Release | Modification |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| Release 7.0.12 | This feature was introduced. |

- [System Logging over Transport Layer Security \(TLS\), on page 347](#)
- [Restrictions for Syslogs over TLS, on page 349](#)
- [Configuring Syslogs over TLS, on page 349](#)
- [Security template framework for TLS applications, on page 351](#)
- [TLS RFC 5289 compliance for security template, on page 360](#)

System Logging over Transport Layer Security (TLS)

System Log (syslog) messages indicate the health of the device and provide valuable information about any problems encountered. By default, the syslog process sends messages to the console terminal.

Due to limited size of the logging buffer in a router, these syslog messages get overwritten in a short time. Moreover, the logging buffer doesn't retain syslogs across router reboots. To avoid these issues, you can configure the router to send syslog messages to an external syslog server for storage.



Note For more information on configuring system logging, see *Implementing System Logging* chapter in the *System Monitoring Configuration Guide for Cisco 8000 Series Routers*

Traditionally, routers transfer syslogs to an external syslog server using User Datagram Protocol (UDP), which is an insecure way of transferring logs. To guarantee secure transport of syslogs, the Cisco 8000 Series Router supports Secure Logging based on RFC 5425 (Transport Layer Security Transport Mapping for Syslog). With this feature, the router sends syslogs to a remote server, over a trusted channel which implements the secure Transport Layer Security (TLS) encryption protocol.

TLS ensures secure transport of syslogs by:

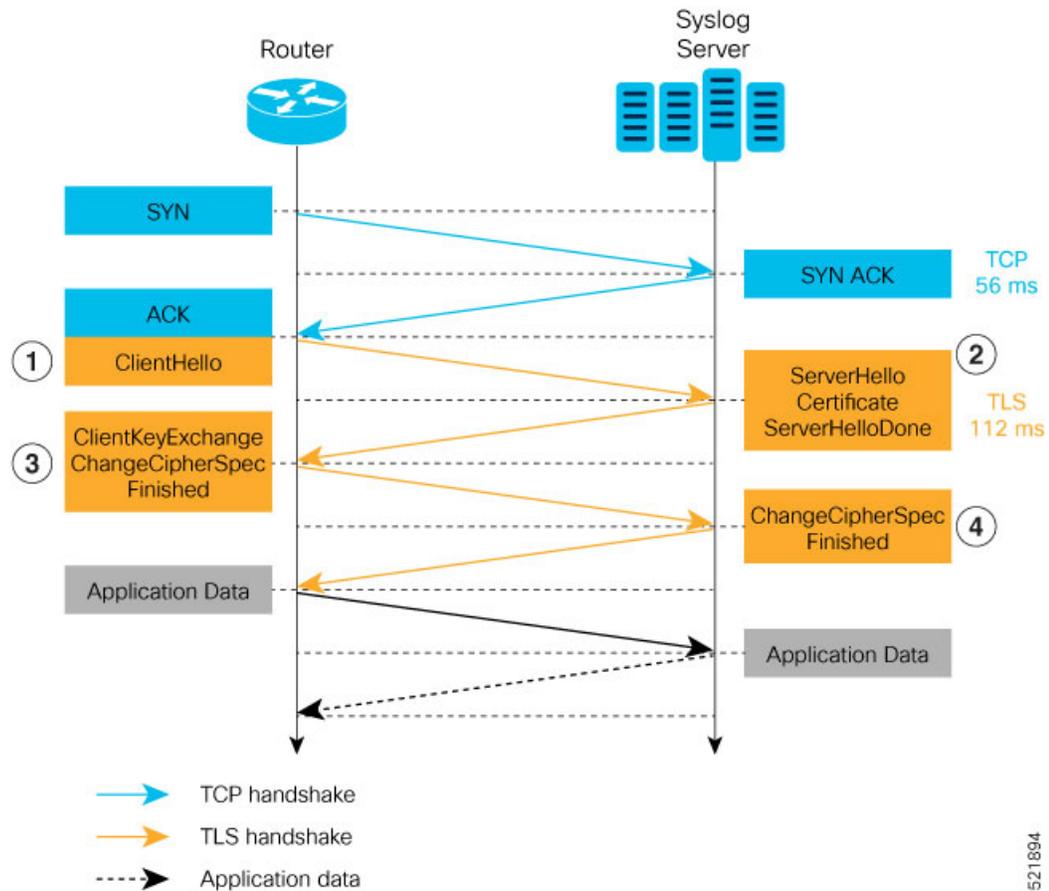
- Authenticating the server and client

- Encrypting the syslog data transferred
- Verifying the integrity of data

The router is the TLS client and remote syslog server is the TLS server. TLS runs over Transmission Control Protocol (TCP). So, the client must complete the TCP handshake with the server before starting TLS handshake.

Sequence of TLS Handshake

Figure 16: TLS Handshake



To establish the TLS session, the following interactions take place between the router and the syslog server after TCP handshake is complete:

1. The router sends Client Hello message to the server to begin TLS handshake.
2. The server shares its TLS certificate, which contains its public key, with the router to establish a secure connection.
3. The router confirms the server certificate with the Certification Authority and checks the validity of the TLS certificate. Then, the router sends a Change Cipher Spec message to the server to indicate that messages sent are encrypted using the negotiated key and algorithm.
4. The server decrypts the message using its private key. And then, sends back a Change Cipher Spec message encrypted with the session key to complete the TLS handshake and establish the session.

For more information on configuring Certification Authority interoperability, refer *Implementing Certification Authority Interoperability* chapter in this guide.

Restrictions for Syslogs over TLS

The following restrictions apply for sending syslogs to a remote syslog server over TLS:

- While configuring the settings for the syslog server on the router, specify only one server identifier, either the hostname or the ipv4/v6 address.
- In the TLS certificate of the syslog server, if Subject Alternative Name (SAN) field matches the configured server hostname but Common Name (CN) field doesn't match the configured server hostname, TLS session setup fails.

Configuring Syslogs over TLS

The following steps show how to configure syslog over TLS:

1. Configure the trust-point for establishing the TLS channel as shown:

```
Router#conf t
Router(config)#crypto ca trustpoint tp
Router(config-trustp)#subject-name CN=new
Router(config-trustp)#enrollment terminal
Router(config-trustp)#rsa-keypair k1
Router(config-trustp)#commit
```



Note You can either use the command **enrollment url SCEP-url** or the command **enrollment terminal** for configuring trustpoint certification authority (CA) enrollment. For more information, see *Implementing Certification Authority Interoperability* chapter in this guide.

2. Configure the settings to access the remote syslog server. You can use either the IPv4/v6 address of the server or the server hostname for this configuration. Based on the configured **severity**, the router sends syslogs to the server. Logging severity options include **alerts, critical, debugging, emergencies, errors, informational, notifications and warnings**. For more information about logging severity levels, see the topic *Syslog Message Severity Levels* in *Implementing System Logging* chapter in *System Monitoring Configuration Guide for Cisco 8000 Series Routers*.

This example shows you how to configure syslog server settings with the IPv4 address.

```
Router(config)#logging tls-server TEST
Router(config-logging-tls-peer)#severity debugging
Router(config-logging-tls-peer)#trustpoint tp
Router(config-logging-tls-peer)#address ipv4 10.105.230.83
Router(config-logging-tls-peer)#commit
```

Alternately, you can configure the syslog server settings with server hostname instead of the IPv4/v6 address.

```
Router(config)#logging tls-server TEST
Router(config-logging-tls-peer)#severity debugging
Router(config-logging-tls-peer)#trustpoint tp
```


When the TLS channel between the router and syslog server comes up, the router displays the following syslog messages on the console:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0: syslogd[148]: %SECURITY-XR_SSL-6-CERT_VERIFY_INFO : SSL Certificate
verification: Peer certificate verified successfully
RP/0/RP0/CPU0: syslogd[148]: %OS-SYSLOG-5-LOG_NOTICE : Secure Logging: Successfully
established TLS session , server :10.105.230.83
```

Security template framework for TLS applications

A security template is a configuration bundle that:

- centralizes and standardizes security policy configuration for TLS-enabled applications,
- encapsulates certificate authentication policies, TLS protocol controls, and compliance mode settings, and
- acts as a reusable, named source of truth that multiple applications can reference instead of embedding security settings locally.

Security templates simplify management by letting applications reference a named template, avoiding duplicated or inconsistent security settings.

Table 54: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|--|
| Security template framework for TLS enabled applications | Release 25.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100, K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100]); Centralized Systems (8600 [ASIC: Q200]); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100])</p> <p>Security templates reduce misconfiguration risks and operational overhead by centralizing and standardizing security policy configuration for TLS-enabled applications. A security template bundles certificate authentication policy, TLS controls, and compliance mode settings. It acts as a single source of truth that applications reference, avoiding local embedding of security settings. This template defines how certificates are handled and controls various aspects of the TLS handshake.</p> <p>The feature introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • security-template |

The security template infrastructure centralizes and standardizes the configuration of certificate-based authentication and TLS settings for applications. It provides a reusable, named configuration bundle—called a security template—which can be referenced by multiple applications to enforce consistent security policies and reduce operational overhead.

Security templates reduce operational overhead and misconfiguration risk by enabling administrators to manage security as reusable templates. They support features such as:

- Version and cipher suite control for TLS,
- Selection of elliptic curve groups and digital signature algorithms,
- Integration with certificate onboarding methods such as SCEP, file-based, and Certz profiles,
- Change notification and automatic configuration updates for registered applications.

Key Terminologies

- **Certificate authentication policy:** A set of rules specifying how certificates are used for authenticating servers or clients, including trust anchor selection and certificate validation settings.
- **Common Criteria (CC) mode:** An enhanced security mode that enforces stricter compliance-focused behavior.
- **Certz profile:** A profile providing identity certificates, private keys, and CA bundles from a centralized certificate management service. For more information, see [github](#).

Benefits of Security template framework

Security template framework offers these benefits:

- **Centralized Security Management:** It allows you to create and manage security templates that apply to multiple applications.
- **Flexibility:** The template supports configurations like Common Criteria (CC) mode and certificate authentication policies. It also allows for future expansion with additional security policies.
- **Simplified Configuration:** Centralized security templates reduce the complexity of managing application-specific settings.
- **Consistency and Compliance:** The uniform application of policies ensures adherence to organizational and regulatory standards.
- **Extensibility:** The system easily adapts to future security needs. It accommodates additional fields and configurations.
- **Operational Efficiency:** Automated notifications minimize errors and enable faster updates.

Use cases

Examples of use cases for the security template framework include:

- Managing TLS settings for Syslog.
- Supporting web-scale environments with numerous root CAs and custom certificate validation needs.
- Enforcing advanced crypto policies per application. For example, specific elliptic curves and signature algorithms.

Restriction for security template

Currently, only syslog messages sent over TLS can utilize security templates.

Configuration guidelines for security template framework

Consider these best practices and guidelines to ensure scalable, consistent, and secure management of TLS and certificate configurations for all supported applications.

- Ensure that you centralize security policy configuration for TLS-enabled applications using security templates. This standardizes certificate authentication, TLS controls, and compliance settings across services, reducing operational overhead and misconfiguration risk.
- Use a unique name for each security template and apply it as the single source of truth for applications, instead of embedding security settings locally.
- Enable Common Criteria (CC) mode for enhanced compliance where required.
- Configure certificate authentication policies to specify identity certificates and peer trust anchors as required. Prefer sourcing certificates from a Certz profile when available, as it takes precedence over individual trustpoints.
- When both a standalone trustpoint and a security template are configured under syslog server, the trustpoint specified within the security template overrides the standalone trustpoint.
- Register applications to receive and handle security template update notifications so that changes are applied dynamically and consistently.

How security template framework works

As organizations scale their network infrastructure and deploy more TLS-enabled applications, managing security settings like certificate authorities, protocol versions, cipher suites, and compliance requirements becomes complex. A centralized security template framework addresses operational inefficiencies, compliance challenges, and risk of misconfiguration by providing reusable, consistent policy bundles.

Summary

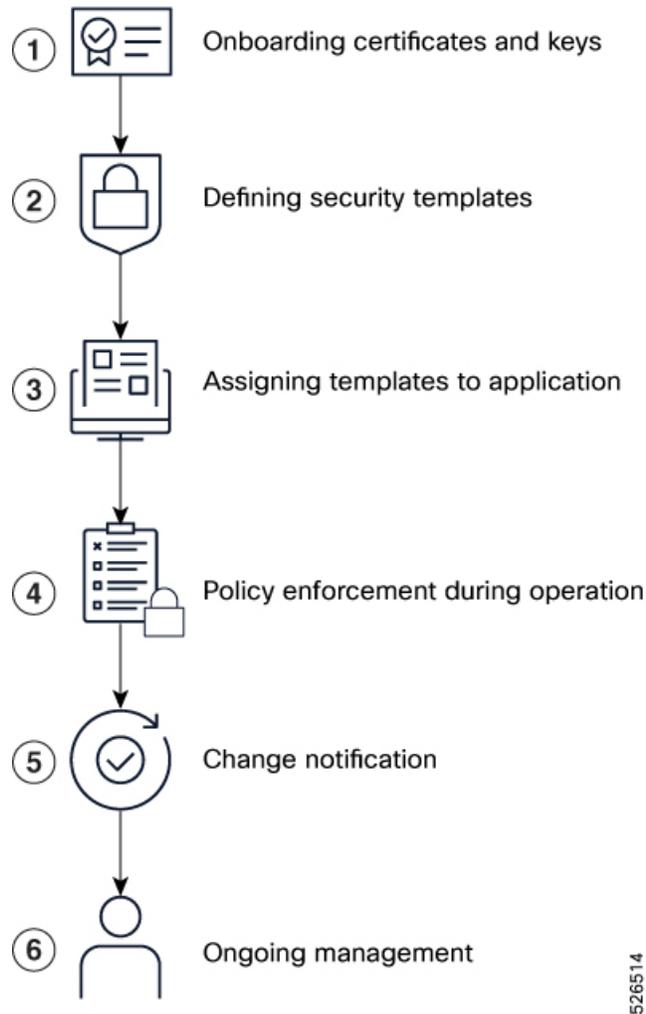
Security templates in Cisco IOS XR centralize and standardize the configuration and enforcement of TLS and certificate-based security settings across multiple applications. This approach streamlines management, reduces misconfiguration risk, and ensures consistent policy application.

The key components involved in the process are:

- **Security template infrastructure:** Central repository and logic that manages security templates and their application to different XR services.
- **Applications like Syslog:** Consume and enforce security settings by referencing named security templates.
- **Trustpoints and Certz profiles:** Provide certificate and key material for authentication and trust validation.
- **Notification and change management mechanism:** Ensures applications are updated when security templates change.

Workflow

Figure 17: Visual representation of security template process



The process involves the following stages:

1. **Onboarding certificates and keys:** Trustpoints are configured using various onboarding methods (e.g., SCEP, file import) to manage CA certificates, identity certificates, and keys. Certz profiles may also be set up for advanced lifecycle management.
2. **Defining security templates:** An administrator creates a named security template using CLI, specifying settings such as TLS versions, cipher suites, certificate authentication policy, trust anchors, identity sources, and compliance modes.
3. **Assigning templates to applications:** Applications are configured to reference a specific security template rather than embedding their own security settings.
4. **Application registration and initialization:** Each application registers with the security template infrastructure, providing a callback for configuration change notifications and initializing its SSL/TLS context using library APIs.

5. **Policy enforcement during operation:** Applications use the security template's parameters for certificate validation, TLS negotiation, and compliance enforcement during secure communications.
6. **Change notification and dynamic updates:** When a security template or associated certificate material changes, the infrastructure notifies all registered applications, which can then re-initialize their sessions or contexts to apply the new configuration.
7. **Ongoing management:** Administrators can update templates, rotate certificates, and audit compliance centrally, with changes automatically propagated to all consuming applications.

Result

This process enables centralized, consistent, and scalable management of security policies across Cisco IOS XR applications, reducing operational overhead, minimizing misconfiguration risk, supporting rapid adaptation to regulatory requirements, and facilitating secure, compliant communications in large-scale deployments.

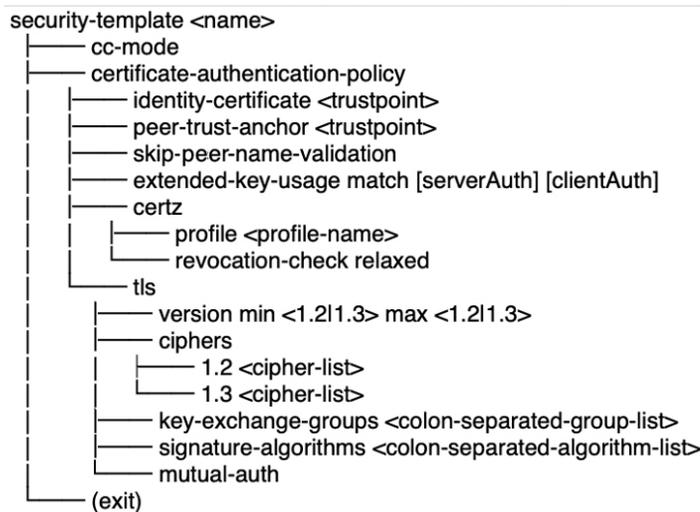
Configure security template

Centralize and standardize the configuration and management of security policies, certificate authentication, and TLS controls for applications running on Cisco routers.

Use a security template to enforce consistent certificate policies, TLS settings, and compliance controls across multiple services and applications, reducing operational overhead and misconfiguration risk.

Configuration concepts and definitions

Figure 18: CLI Structure



Before creating and configuring a security template, you must understand the core concepts and the supported features.

- **Security Template Mode:** You define a template with a unique name.
- **Common Criteria (CC) Mode:** You enable stricter, compliance-focused behavior.
- **Certificate Authentication Policy:** This policy configures how the system handles certificates:

- **Identity Certificate:** This specifies the trustpoint for the leaf certificate and its chain. The system uses this when a server or client (for mutual TLS or mTLS) must present a certificate chain.
- **Peer Trust Anchor:** This trustpoint validates server or client certificates. If you configure both a peer identity and a peer trust anchor, the peer trust anchor takes precedence for validating the incoming certificate.
- **Skip peer name Validation:** This disables hostname verification against the certificate's DNS Subject Alternative Name (SAN) or subject Common Name (CN). Applications typically use this only in lab, testing, or controlled environments.
- **Extended Key Usage Match:** This enforces validation of `serverAuth` and `clientAuth` extensions in certificates. It prevents certificates from misuse outside their authorized purpose.
- **Certz Profile:** This specifies the Certz profile to source the identity certificate, private key, and Certificate Authority (CA) bundle from a gNSI Certz profile. This option takes precedence over trustpoints if configured.
- **Certz Revocation Method Relaxed:** Enabling this option prevents session authentication failure if the Certificate Revocation List (CRL) bundle misses a CRL for any certificate in the verified chain.
- **TLS Settings:** These settings control TLS protocol behavior:
 - **Version Range Control:** You configure the minimum and maximum TLS versions that the system can negotiate (e.g., minimum TLS 1.2, maximum TLS 1.3). This ensures compliance with security policies and prevents downgrade attacks.
 - **Cipher Suites per TLS Version:** You define the allowed set of ciphers for each TLS version (e.g., AES-GCM). This provides fine-grained control to disable weak ciphers.
 - **Key Exchange Groups for Negotiation:** You define the elliptic curves or finite field groups (e.g., `x25519`, `secp256r1`, `ffdhe3072`) used during the TLS key exchange process. This ensures the use of modern and secure Diffie–Hellman parameters.
 - **Signature Algorithms Allow-list:** You specify the permitted digital signature algorithms (e.g., `rsa_pss_rsae_sha256`, `ecdsa_secp256r1_sha256`) for TLS handshakes. This prevents the use of deprecated options.
 - **Mutual-auth:** This enables mutual TLS (mTLS).

Before you begin

- Have necessary trustpoints and/or Certz profiles configured for certificate management.
- Confirm the application supports integration with security templates.

Follow these steps to configure a security template for TLS-enabled applications:

Procedure

Step 1 Enter security template mode by defining a unique template name.

Example:

```
Router(config)# security-template template1
```

Step 2 (Optional) Enable Common Criteria (CC) mode if enhanced compliance is required.

Example:

```
Router(config-security-template)# cc-mode
```

Step 3 Enter certificate authentication policy mode to configure certificate-based settings.

- Specify the identity certificate trustpoint for leaf certificate and chain.
- Specify the peer trust anchor trustpoint for validating incoming certificates.
- (Optional) Skip peer name validation if using in lab or controlled environments.
- (Optional) Enforce extended key usage matching for serverAuth and/or clientAuth.
- (Optional) Specify a Certz profile to source certificates and keys.

Example:

```
Router(config-security-template)# certificate-authentication-policy
Router(config-certificate-authentication-polic)# peer-trust-anchor trustpoint1
Router(config-certificate-authentication-polic)# identity-certificate CA2
Router(config-certificate-authentication-polic)# extended-key-usage match serverAuth
Router(config-certificate-authentication-polic)# skip-peer-name-validation
Router(config-certificate-authentication-polic)# certz-profile certz1
```

Step 4 Enter TLS configuration mode to set protocol and cryptographic parameters.

- Define the minimum and maximum TLS versions allowed (e.g., min 1.2, max 1.3)
- Specify allowed cipher suites for each TLS version as needed.
- Set permitted key exchange groups (elliptic curves or Diffie-Hellman groups).
- Specify allowed signature algorithms for TLS handshakes.
- (Optional) Enable mutual authentication (mTLS) if required.

Example:

```
Router(config-certificate-authentication-polic)# tls
Router(config-tls)# ciphers 1.2 AES256-GCM-SHA384:ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256 1.3
TLS_AES_256_GCM_SHA384:TLS_AES_128_GCM_SHA256
Router(config-tls)# version min 1.2 max 1.3
Router(config-tls)# key-exchange-groups P-256:P-384:X25519
Router(config-tls)# signature-algorithms
rsa_pss_rsae_sha256:rsa_pss_rsae_sha384:rsa_pss_rsae_sha512:rsa_pkcs1_sha256:rsa_pkcs1_sha384:rsa_pkcs1_sha512
```

Example:

Configuration Example:

```
Router(config)# security-template template1
Router(config-security-template)# cc-mode
Router(config-security-template)# certificate-authentication-policy
Router(config-certificate-authentication-polic)# tls
Router(config-tls)# ciphers 1.2 ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256 1.3 TLS_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
Router(config-tls)# version min 1.2 max 1.3
Router(config-tls)# key-exchange-groups P-256:P-384:X25519
Router(config-tls)# signature-algorithms rsa_pss_rsae_sha256:ecdsa_secp256r1_sha256
Router(config-tls)# !
```

```
Router(config-certificate-authentication-polic)# peer-trust-anchor trustpoint1
Router(config-certificate-authentication-polic)# identity-certificate trustpoint2
Router(config-certificate-authentication-polic)# extended-key-usage match serverAuth
Router(config-certificate-authentication-polic)# skip-peer-name-validation
Router(config-certificate-authentication-polic)# !
```

Step 5 View running configuration.

Example:

```
Router(config-security-template)# sh run security-template templatel

security-template templatel
cc-mode
certificate-authentication-policy
  tls
    ciphers 1.2 ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256 1.3 TLS_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
    version min 1.2 max 1.3
    key-exchange-groups P-256:P-384:X25519
    signature-algorithms rsa_pss_rsae_sha256:ecdsa_secp256r1_sha256
  !
  peer-trust-anchor trustpoint1
  identity-certificate trustpoint2
  extended-key-usage match serverAuth clientAuth
  skip-peer-name-validation
!
!
```

Step 6 Apply the configured security template to desired applications (e.g., syslog, HTTP client) by referencing the template name in their configuration.

Example:

```
Router(config)# logging tls-server TEST
Router(config-logging-tls-peer)# severity debugging
Router(config-logging-tls-peer)# trustpoint tp
Router(config-logging-tls-peer)# address ipv4 10.105.230.83
Router(config-logging-tls-peer)# security-template templatel
```

Note

When both a standalone trustpoint and a security template are configured under syslog server, the trustpoint specified within the security template overrides the standalone trustpoint.

Step 7 View running configuration.

Example:

```
Router(config-security-template)# sh run logging tls-server TEST

logging tls-server TEST
severity debugging
address ipv4 10.105.230.83
security-template templatel
!
```

Step 8 Register the application with the security template infrastructure to receive change notifications and apply updates dynamically.

The security template enforces unified security policies and TLS parameters across all referenced applications. Applications receive and respond to configuration changes automatically, maintaining compliance and reducing risk.

What to do next

- Monitor application logs and debug output for correct application of the security template.
- For certificate rotation or policy updates, update the security template as needed; registered applications will receive notifications and can adapt dynamically.

TLS RFC 5289 compliance for security template

TLS RFC 5289 compliance is a security feature that:

- supports Common Criteria (CC) mode,
- specifies new cipher suites, and
- provides stronger Elliptic Curve Cryptography (ECC) algorithms.

Table 55: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|---|
| TLS RFC 5289 compliance for security template framework | Release 25.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100, K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100]); Centralized Systems (8600 [ASIC: Q200]); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100])</p> <p>The security template framework is based on RFC 5289, which specifies new cipher suites for the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol.</p> <p>This feature supports Common Criteria (CC) mode which is an enhanced security mode that enforces stricter compliance-focused behavior. It enhances TLS security by introducing stronger Elliptic Curve Cryptography (ECC) algorithms.</p> |

The security template framework for TLS enabled applications uses [RFC 5289](#) compliance. The RFC moves away from HMAC-SHA1, utilizing SHA-256 and SHA-384 for message authentication codes. For more information on security template framework, see [Security template framework for TLS applications](#).



CHAPTER 14

Implementing MAC Authentication Bypass

This chapter describes the implementation of MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB).

IEEE 802.1X authentication configuration on the router helps to prevent unauthorized end devices from gaining access to the network. However, not all end devices support 802.1X. Hence, we introduce port controlling functionality on these routers using MAC authentication bypass (MAB)—a feature that grants network access to devices based on their MAC addresses, regardless of their 802.1X capability or credentials.

For details of commands related to MAB, see the *802.1X and Port Control Commands* chapter in the *System Security Command Reference for Cisco 8000 Series Routers*.

- [MAC Authentication Bypass, on page 361](#)

MAC Authentication Bypass

Table 56: Feature History Table

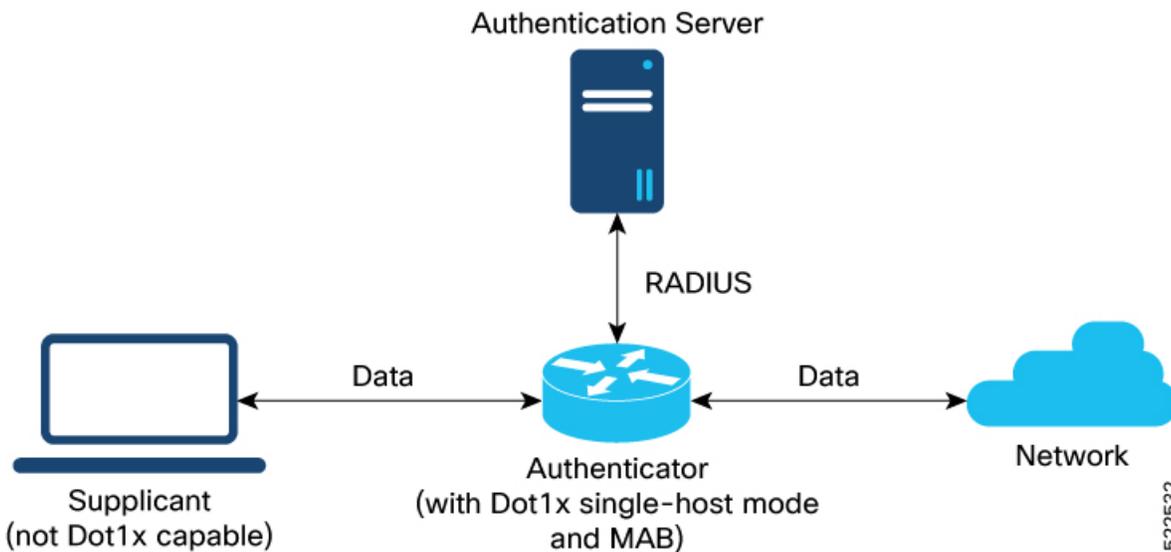
| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Multi-auth MAC Authentication Bypass | Release 25.1.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 8712-MOD-M• 8011-4G24Y4H-I |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Multi-auth MAC Authentication Bypass | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |
| Multi-auth MAC Authentication Bypass | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: Q100, Q200]) (*select variants only)</p> <p>You can enhance network flexibility by enabling multiple hosts on a single port using MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB). The router now supports up to two clients per port by expanding its MAC learning capability from one to two. It authenticates each MAC address individually, allowing multi-domain authentication and enabling independent management of two endpoints. This feature simplifies network management and increases the connectivity options for devices per port.</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8201-SYS • 8101-32FH |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---------------------------|---------------------|--|
| MAC Authentication Bypass | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 8712-MOD-M• 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| MAC Authentication Bypass | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 8212-48FH-M• 8711-32FH-M• 88-LC1-36EH• 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E• 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| MAC Authentication Bypass | Release 7.3.4
Release 7.5.2 | <p>Based on the MAC address of the end device or the client connected to the router port, this feature enables port control functionality for your router. This functionality provides controlled access to network services for end devices that do not support other authentication methods such as IEEE 802.1X port-based authentication.</p> <p>The MAB support is only for the single-host mode.</p> <p>This feature introduces these commands and options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • mab option in the dot1x profile command • mab-retry-time option in the authenticator command • clear mab • show mab |



With MAC authentication bypass (MAB) functionality, the router (authenticator) uses the MAC address of the end device or the client (also called as supplicant) as an authenticating parameter for providing network access. With MAB enabled, when the router receives an incoming data packet from the client that is connected to the router port, it learns the source MAC address and sends it to the external RADIUS server (authentication server) for authentication. The RADIUS authentication server maintains a database of MAC addresses for

devices that require access to the network. Based on the authentication result, the router allows or drops the data packets from that client. If the RADIUS server returns a success (*Access-Accept*) message, it indicates that the MAC address is authenticated and the client is authorized to send traffic through that port. The router then programs that MAC address on the port to which the client is connected. The router allows the traffic from the client to be forwarded to the network. Similarly, if the RADIUS server returns a failure (*Access-Reject*) message, it indicates that the MAC address is unauthenticated. And hence the router drops further data packets from that client. Thus, the MAB feature brings in port control functionality for Cisco 8000 Series Routers and provides end devices a controlled access to network services.

Starting with Cisco IOS-XR Release 24.4.1, MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB) can now have multiple hosts by allowing MAC addresses on a single port, each authenticated separately. The router achieves this functionality by increasing the maximum limit on MAC learning capability from 1 to 2 clients. With this new ability, when **multi-auth** mode is configured under MAB, the router continues MAC -learning on a port after authenticating a client using MAB, until the second client authentication is begun. With this you can use MAB for multi-domain authentication by allowing two endpoints to be authenticated and managed separately on the same port.

Authentication Failure Scenarios with MAB

This table lists various authentication failure scenarios and the expected feature behavior with MAB:

Table 57: Authentication Failure Scenarios with MAB

| Authentication Failure Scenarios | Expected MAB Feature Behavior |
|--|--|
| RADIUS server rejects the authentication request | The router: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • deletes the client programming on the port, provided the client was previously authenticated. • clears the client session upon the expiry of the quietWhile timer, which is set to 60 seconds. • switches the port back to MAC learning mode to relearn a new MAC address. |

| Authentication Failure Scenarios | Expected MAB Feature Behavior |
|--|--|
| RADIUS server is not reachable during authentication process | <p>With server dead action auth-retry command configured:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The router retains the programming of the client that was already authenticated. Else, the router deletes it. • Router retries the authentication process with the RADIUS server at an interval of 60 seconds until the server becomes available. You can configure this interval using the authenticator timer mab-retry-time command. • The router does not attempt to learn any new MAC address on the port. • To clear the client session and its programming on the router, you must use the clear mab session command. • The router puts the port back in MAC learning mode to relearn a new MAC address. <p>Similarly, for an unauthenticated client, if the authentication does not happen after the retries, the router deletes the client context and puts the port back in MAC learning mode.</p> <p>Without server dead action auth-retry command configuration:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The router deletes the programming of the client that was already authenticated and retries authentication (as mentioned earlier). • If the client is still not authenticated, the router automatically clears the client session. • The router puts the port back in MAC learning mode to relearn a new MAC address. |

Restrictions for MAB

The restrictions apply to the MAB feature:

- With MAB, user authentication can only be done using a remote AAA server; not using the local AAA server on the router.
- MAB feature works only as a standalone feature; not as a fallback mechanism for any other type of authentication failures.
- The Centralized Systems does not support MAB.

Configure MAC Authentication Bypass

Prerequisites

- Configure the remote RADIUS server (using the **radius-server** command), and authentication method with the RADIUS server (using the **aaa authentication dot1x** command) in
- Configure the 802.1X profile (using the **dot1x profile** command in XR Config mode)

- Configure the authenticator (using the **authenticator** command in dot1x profile configuration sub mode) with respective parameters such as:
 - Re-authentication time—**reauth-time**
 - Host mode—as **single-host** or **multi-auth**
 - Retry action for server-unreachable scenarios—**auth-retry** or **auth-fail**

See the *MACSec Using EAP-TLS Authentication* chapter for these configuration details.

See *Running Configuration* section for examples.

To configure MAB, use the **mab** command in dot1x profile configuration sub mode.

Configuration Example for MAB

Enable MAB:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#dot1x profile test_mab
Router(dot1xx-test_mab)#mab
Router(dot1xx-test_mab)#commit
```

Configure the authenticator retry time for MAB clients:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#dot1x profile test_mab
Router(dot1xx-test_mab)#authenticator
Router(dot1xx-test_mab-auth)#timer mab-retry-time 60
Router(dot1xx-test_mab-auth)#commit
```

Attach the dot1x profile to the corresponding interface or port on the router.

```
Router(config)#interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0
Router(config-intf)#dot1x profile test_mab
Router(config-intf)#commit
```

Running Configuration

```
Router# show running-configuration

!
radius-server host <ip-address> auth-port <auth-port-num> acct-port <acct-port-num>
  key 7 <key>
!
aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0
  dot1x profile test_mab
!

dot1x profile test_mab
  mab
  authenticator
    timer reauth-time 60
    timer mab-retry-time 60
    host-mode single-host
    server dead action auth-retry
!
```

```
!
end
```

Verify MAB Configuration

You can use these **show** commands to verify your MAB configuration:

- To check the MAB summary:

```
Router#show mab summary
Fri Apr 1 16:37:32.340 IST

NODE: node0_0_CPU0
=====
Interface-Name      Client              Status
=====
Gi0/0/0/0           1122.3344.5566     Authorized
Router#
```

- To verify the detailed MAB status:

```
Router#show mab detail
Fri Apr 1 16:37:37.140 IST

NODE: node0_0_CPU0

MAB info for GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0
-----
InterfaceName       : Gi0/0/0/0
InterfaceHandle     : 0x00000060
HostMode            : single-host
PortControl         : Enabled
PuntState           : Stop Success
PuntSummary         : Punt disabled
Client:
  MAC Address       : 1122.3344.5566
  Status            : Authorized
  SM State          : Terminate
  ReauthTimeout     : 60s, Remaining 0 day(s), 00:00:46
  RetryTimeout      : 60s, timer not started yet
  AuthMethod        : PAP (remote)
  LastAuthTime      : 2022 Apr 01 16:37:23.634
  ProgrammingStatus : Add Success
Router#
```

- To verify the MAB interface summary:

```
Router#show mab interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/0
Fri Apr 1 16:38:27.715 IST
=====
Interface-Name      Client              Status
=====
Gi0/0/0/0           1122.3344.5566     Authorized
Router#
```

- To verify the MAB interface details:

```
Router#show mab interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/0 detail
Fri Apr 1 16:38:31.543 IST
MAB info for GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0
-----
InterfaceName       : Gi0/0/0/0
```

```

InterfaceHandle      : 0x00000060
HostMode             : single-host
PortControl        : Enabled
PuntState            : Stop Success
PuntSummary          : Punt disabled
Client:
  MAC Address        : 1122.3344.5566
  Status              : Authorized
  SM State            : Terminate
  ReauthTimeout      : 60s, Remaining 0 day(s), 00:00:51
  RetryTimeout       : 60s, timer not started yet
  AuthMethod         : PAP (remote)
  LastAuthTime       : 2022 Apr 01 16:38:23.640
  ProgrammingStatus  : Add Success
Router#

```

- To verify the MAB interface statistics:

```

Router#show mab statistics interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/0
Fri Apr 1 16:41:23.011 IST
InterfaceName       : GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0
-----
MAC Learning:
  RxTotal           : 0
  RxNoSrcMac        : 0
  RxNoIdb           : 0
Port Control:
  EnableSuccess    : 1
  EnableFail        : 0
  UpdateSuccess     : 0
  UpdateFail        : 0
  PuntStartSuccess  : 0
  PuntStartFail     : 0
  PuntStopSuccess   : 1
  PuntStopFail      : 0
  AddClientSuccess  : 1
  AddClientFail     : 0
  RemoveClientSuccess : 0
  RemoveClientFail  : 0
Client:
  MAC Address       : 1122.3344.5566
Authentication:
  Success           : 1406
  Fail              : 0
  Timeout           : 0
  AAA Unreachable   : 0
Router#

```

System Logs for MAB

The router displays the following system logs on the console in various MAB scenarios:

- When the dot1x profile is applied on the port, with MAB feature enabled:

Success case:

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-PORT_CONTROL_ENABLE_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/1/0 : Port Control Enabled with
Single-Host mode
```

Failure case:

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-PORT_CONTROL_ENABLE_FAILURE : Hu0/0/1/0 : Failed to enable port-control
```

- When the dot1x profile is removed from the interface:

Success case:

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-PORT_CONTROL_DISABLE_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/1/0 : Port Control Disabled
```

Failure case:

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-PORT_CONTROL_DISABLE_FAILURE : Hu0/0/1/0 : Failed to disable port-control
```

- As part of MAB client authentication process:

Success case:

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-MAB_AUTH_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/1/0 : Authentication successful for client
<mac-address>
```

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-PORT_CONTROL_ADD_CLIENT_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/1/0 : Port Access Enabled For Client
<mac-address>
```

Failure case:

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-MAB_AUTH_FAIL : Hu0/0/1/0 : Authentication failed for client <mac-address>
```

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-PORT_CONTROL_REMOVE_CLIENT_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/1/0 : Port Access Disabled For
Client <mac-address>
```

- When the authentication server is unreachable:

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-MAB_AAA_UNREACHABLE : Hu0/0/1/0 : AAA server unreachable for client
027E.15F2.CAE7, Retrying Authentication
```



CHAPTER 15

Cisco MASA Service

Table 58: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|-------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Extend Device Ownership | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| Extend Device Ownership | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|-------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Extend Device Ownership | Release 7.10.1 | Your router can now run in a dual-ownership mode wherein you can securely migrate the operating system from Cisco IOS XR to third-party software such as SONiC. You can only install the signed SONiC image authorized by Cisco using an ownership voucher (OV) and authenticated variables (AV) on the router. This authorization prevents tampering with the software using unauthorized third-party images. |
| Cisco MASA Service | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| Cisco MASA Service | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--------------------|---------------------|--|
| Cisco MASA Service | IOS XR 7.8.1 | <p>The Cisco Manufacturer Authorized Signing Authority (MASA) service creates ownership vouchers (OVs) for a Cisco IOS XR router. These OVs along with the owner certificate (OC) certify that the router belongs to a given customer.</p> <p>Use cases where OVs and OCs are required include secure ZTP workflows and securely booting up your device on a 5G cell site over a third-party ethernet service.</p> <p>You can use the MASA service to download, and view logging and audit of OVs for the routers you own.</p> <p>This service also enables Cisco's Account teams to assign the serial number of a device to customers and view details of the logging, verification, and audit of OVs.</p> |

Key Terms and Concepts

Authentication Flow: The purpose of the Authentication flow is to identify and authenticate the router when it boots up. During this flow, the router also checks if the network can be trusted. The router does this by:

- validating the OV it received during the bootstrapping process and
- verifying the signature on the onboarding information with the owner certificate it received during the bootstrapping process.

The workflow involves the router booting to dynamically obtain the OV from MASA via the customer's staging or management servers

MASA Service: There are many services that require the ownership of the router to be authenticated, so it can be trusted by the network. MASA is a service run by Cisco to create and log OVs that are then used to validate the ownership of the router.

Owner Certificate: The OC is an X.509 certificate [RFC5280] that is used to identify an *owner*, for example, an organization. The OC can be signed by any certificate authority (CA).

The OC is used by a router to verify the CA signature using the public key that is also in the owner certificate.

The OC structure must contain the owner certificate itself, as well as all intermediate certificates leading to the "pinned-domain-cert" (PDC) certificate specified in the ownership voucher.

Ownership Voucher: The ownership voucher (OV) [RFC8366] is used to securely identify the router's owner, as known to the manufacturer. The ownership voucher is signed by the device's manufacturer.

The OV is used to verify that the owner certificate has a chain of trust leading to the trusted certificate (PDC) included in the ownership voucher.

pinned-domain-cert: The PDC field present in the OV typically pins a domain certificate, such as the certificate of a domain CA.

- [Why Do I Need Cisco MASA?, on page 374](#)
- [Use Cases for Ownership Vouchers, on page 374](#)
- [Authentication Flow, on page 375](#)
- [Interacting with the MASA Server, on page 376](#)
- [Workflow to Provision a Router Using Ownership Voucher, on page 384](#)

Why Do I Need Cisco MASA?

The Cisco MASA service securely authorizes ownership of a router so that the router can then establish a secure connection to the router owner's (your) network infrastructure.

The establishment of the ownership of the router is achieved through an [authentication workflow](#) that on successful completion generates an ownership voucher (OV). The primary purpose of the OV is to securely convey a certificate—the "pinned-domain-cert" (PDC), that the router can then use to authenticate subsequent interactions with the network, for example, secure bootstrapping. Establishing ownership is important to the bootstrapping mechanisms so that the router can authenticate the network that is trying to take control of it.

Use Cases for Ownership Vouchers

The following use cases show examples where ownership vouchers apply:

- **Secure Zero Touch Provisioning (ZTP) Bootstrapping**

Secure ZTP requires the ability to securely bootstrap a router over an untrusted network. This requires the ability of MASA to provide an OV to the router. The OV is used to authenticate the router to ensure connectivity of the router to the network.

For more information on Secure ZTP, see the Secure Zero Touch Provisioning chapter in the *System Setup and Software Installation Guide for NCS 540 Series Routers*.



Note MASA can help generate OVs for Cisco Routers only.

- **Application Hosting on XR**

Cisco IOS XR's Application Hosting (App Hosting) capability provides an IOS XR container on the router. This allows an application that augments XR features to be deployed. These applications can fall in one of the following categories:

- Customer Apps—developed by Cisco's customers and cannot be signed by Cisco.
- Partner Apps—developed by partners and are signed by Cisco.
- Cisco App—developed by Cisco and signed by Cisco.

You can use MASA in conjunction with the Golden ISO Tool (gisobuild.py) to provide the OV's to enable secure workflows for onboarding third party RPMs on router running Cisco IOS XR.

For more information, see the *Application Hosting Guide for Cisco 8000 Series Routers*.

• Extend Device Ownership

Use the extended ownership voucher to move the state of Cisco Trusted Platform Module (TPM) and platform keys to allow customized control on the router. With this voucher, you can securely transfer the control of the Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) database ownership from Cisco generic mode to an extended mode, owned by both Cisco and the Customer to securely install third-party images.

For more information about configuring the extended device ownership to migrate from Cisco IOS XR to SONiC software, see the *Migrate from Cisco IOS XR to SONiC on Cisco 8000 Series Routers*.

• Deploy Router Using BootZ

Bootz is a secure zero-touch provisioning solution for data centers that automates the setup of network devices while ensuring robust security. It enables devices to connect and authenticate with the Bootz server, safeguarding the onboarding process against unauthorized access and cyber threats, streamlining remote device configuration without compromising safety.

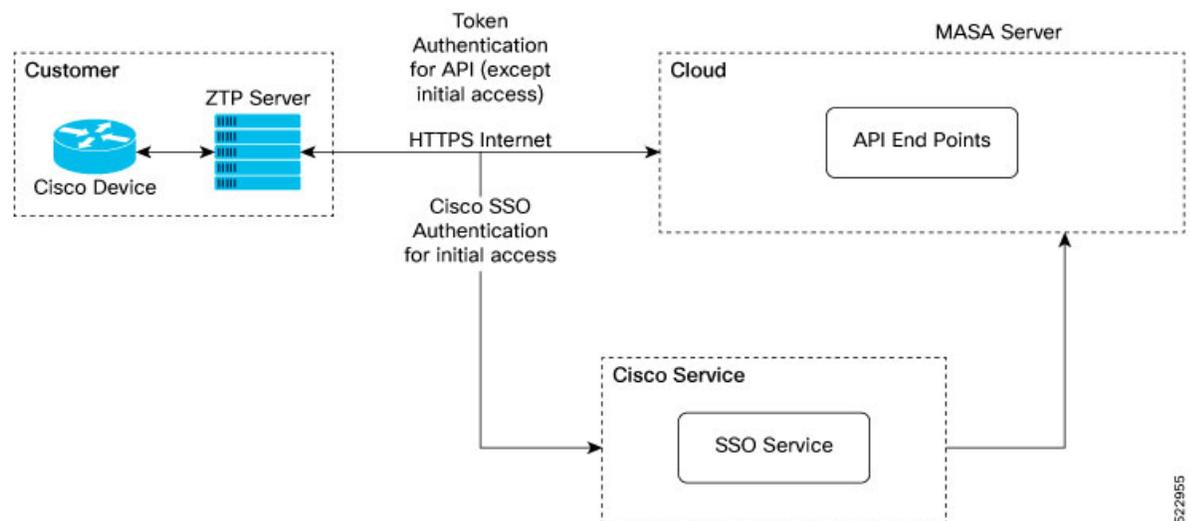
Bootz uses a MASA to issue OV's that authenticate network devices during zero-touch provisioning.

For more information on BootZ, see the Deploying Router Using Bootz Protocol chapter in the *System Setup and Software Installation Guide for Cisco 8000 Series Routers*.

Authentication Flow

The following figure is a high-level overview of different components involved in the authentication flow.

Figure 19: Components of the Authentication Flow

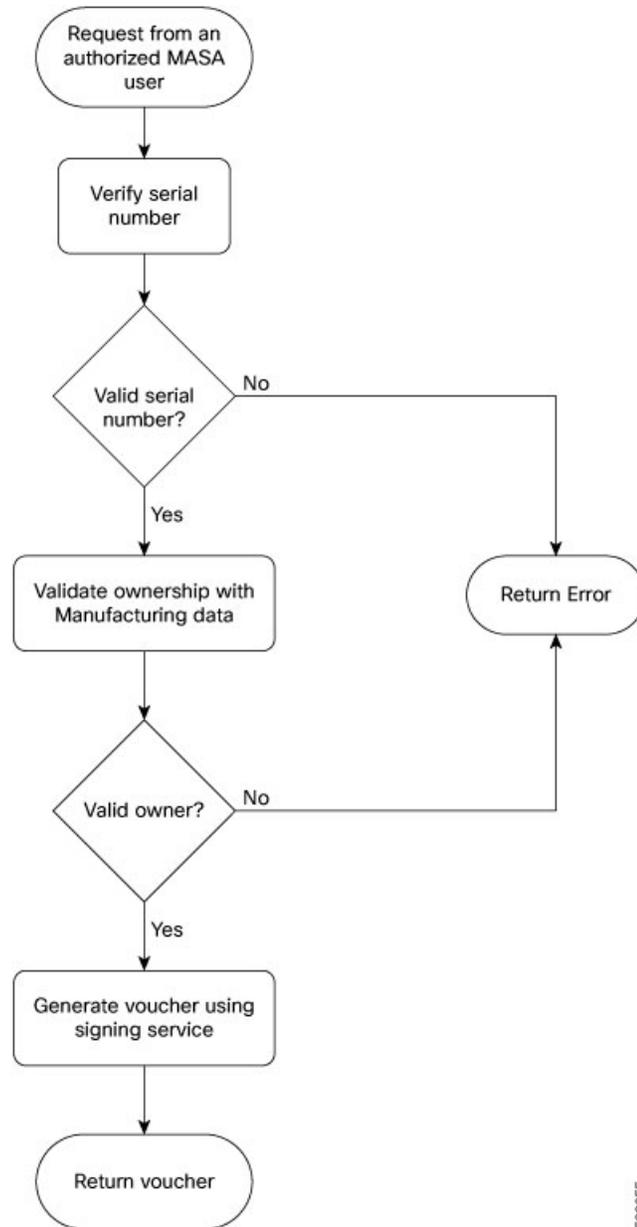


You can interact with the MASA Server web application through the ZTP Server to request, manage, and download the OV's for your routers.

The Zero Touch Provisioning (ZTP) server is to be used to make a REST API call to the MASA Server.

The MASA Server authenticates the user, and on successful validation, generates the OVs. The following figure illustrates the typical workflow to obtain the OVs.

Figure 20: Workflow to Obtain Ownership Vouchers



Interacting with the MASA Server

There are two ways to interact with the MASA server:

- through Web Application

- through REST API calls

Entities

The following entities interact with the MASA Server:

- **Organization**—A group in MASA specific to a Cisco customer. Data and access for each Organization is available to members of that group only.
- **Admin**—One or more initially-designated member(s) of an Organization who can invite other members into that organization in MASA, set access restrictions, and adjust other organization level settings.
- **User**—Any non-admin member of an organization who can interact with MASA. A user must be invited into an organization by the Admin
 - By default, new users have view-only access.
 - The Admin assigns permissions to request, download, or archive ownership vouchers

Prerequisites for Interacting with MASA Server

1. You must be an authorized MASA User

- You must have a Cisco account and an active invitation to access MASA for the first time.



Note Contact the Cisco Technical Assistance team or your Account team to get a Cisco account.

- Initial authentication requires *Cisco Single Sign On* to the MASA web application (masa.cisco.com).

For subsequent authentication, you can generate access keys called *tokens*. Tokens serve as an alternative authentication mechanism that can be passed along in the header of API calls.



Note To generate access keys for the first time, on masa.cisco.com, go to **Settings** → **Tokens**. For subsequent sessions, use API calls to manage existing tokens or create new ones as long as an unexpired token is still available.

The following is an example of using a token in a header of a REST API call.

```
'Authorization: Bearer
637c98ddcc58c75f679a94d7f244777be05c6600923c4549bc5669b26e04f2bc
gAAAAABjfRr9hqndFqbuqes9OvcfgucApgxprmm9qoVmUIdYES-_AzIU7yue-10dazZ3Rrk6vJHYD2Je7Z-IOD1Zc7kYSuBTX0
6GcQvF2e3nSM-_F9Bo1tjxAHcXkoMgbqS4APFGi16LiWRyP2b1_0rZO-EaTKFLE1dTLfMamovPDkZZ5vbBwRS058PZN1vB3IZIZ
jftYYYi9H_grazfwnAImjKbQC6tjQw==
```

Tokens can have a custom validity period of up to six months that can be revoked at any time. The scope of the tokens is limited to scope of your role.

2. ZTP server must be able to access the Internet



Note MASA application is served through HTTPS to provide a secure connection between the end user and the service.

User Permissions

The MASA Server supports Role Based Access Control and provides the following access:

- Regular user—By default, regular users have only read access to their organization. Admin users can provide additional privileges as required.
- Admin—Admin users have the ability to view and manage OVs for all routers in the database in their organization as well as other privileges as mentioned in the table below.

Table 59: User Permissions

| Type | Regular User | Admin |
|---|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Invite other People into the organization | Not allowed | Allowed by default |
| Add or remove permissions for other users | Not allowed | Allowed by default |
| View all existing vouchers | Allowed by default | Allowed by default |
| Request new vouchers | Permission can be provided by Admin | Allowed by default |
| Download vouchers | Permission can be provided by Admin | Allowed by default |
| Archive vouchers | Permission can be provided by Admin | Allowed by default |

Interacting with MASA Through Web Application

Table 60: Feature History Table

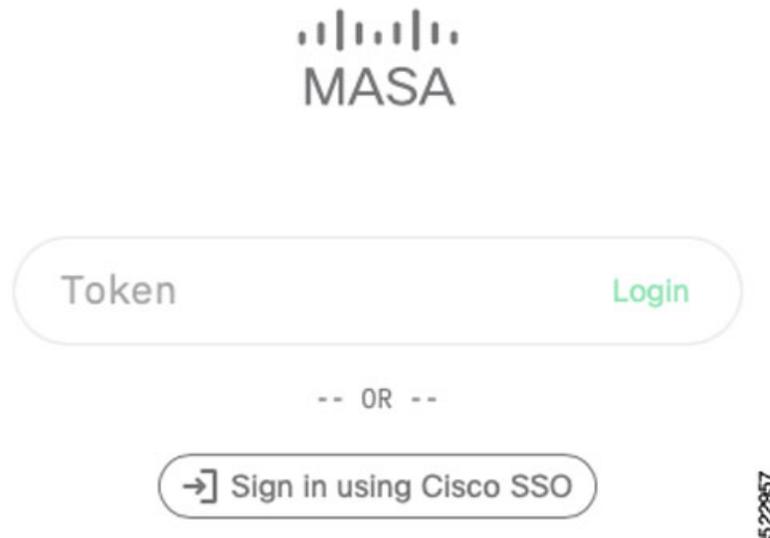
| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Pre-upload Pinned-Domain Certificate | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Pre-upload Pinned-Domain Certificate | Release 24.4.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |
| Pre-upload Pinned-Domain Certificate | Release 24.1.1 | You can now pre-upload your Pinned-Domain Certificate (PDC) credentials before requesting OVs Ownership Vouchers (OVs) from the MASA server, thus making the voucher request process easier. |

1. Go to masa.cisco.com

Figure 21: Sign in Page—MASA Web Application



2. Click **Sign in using Cisco SSO**.
3. Enter your username and password to access the application
4. Accept the End User License Agreement.

The MASA Home page displays the status of any recent requests that were initiated and quick links to download any recently generated ownership vouchers.

Figure 22: Home Page—MASA Web Application

| Serial Number | Requested By | Requested | Expires | Assertion | Status | Request ID | Voucher ID | PDC Organization | Actions |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------|-----------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| FOC2221R1AA | user@cisco.com | Sep 14 2022, 12:09 PM | Jun 2 2023, 12:27 PM | LOGGED | COMPLETED | c46e4fb8-3468-11... | c4780da8-3468-11... | Cisco Systems Inc. | Download Refresh |
| FOC21271Q1Q | user@cisco.com | Sep 1 2022, 4:07 PM | Jun 2 2023, 12:27 PM | LOGGED | COMPLETED | cb4a095a-2a4a-11... | cb5506ca-2a4a-11... | Cisco Systems Inc. | Download Refresh |
| FOC2249R0B9 | user2@cisco.com | Jun 7 2022, 10:44 AM | Jun 2 2023, 12:27 PM | LOGGED | COMPLETED | 7f275906-e689-11... | 7f295224-e689-11... | Cisco Systems Inc. | Download Refresh |
| FOC22362FRC | user2@cisco.com | Jun 6 2022, 7:05 PM | Jun 2 2023, 12:27 PM | LOGGED | COMPLETED | 5a527c68-e606-11... | 5a54cf24-e606-11... | Cisco Systems Inc. | Download Refresh |

Requesting OVs for Your Router

1. Click **New Request** on the top right of the Home page.
2. In the New Request dialog box, enter details for one of the following:

- Serial number of your router

You can get the serial number from the bottom of your router; it is an 11 digit alphanumeric string. You can also get the serial number by running the **show version** command on your router.

- Pinned-domain Certificate

There are multiple ways to generate a PDC (.pem). For example, through [OpenSSL](#). You can either paste the content of the certificate directly or browse to a file that contains the PDC.

You can pre-upload the certificate prior to requesting the OV.

To select the pre-uploaded certificate while requesting OV, turn on the toggle button named *use pre-uploaded certificate*. You can see the already uploaded certificates here, you can select the certificate from this list.

- Serial number of one or more routers for which you want the OVs.



Note Always use the serial number of the route processor (RP) of your router.

Figure 23: New Request Page

New Request ✕

Use Pre-Uploaded Certificate

Pinned Domain Certificate * Choose a file [Browse](#)

Drag or Choose a file, Paste or Enter Certificate

Serial Numbers * Choose a file [Browse](#)

Drag or Choose a file, Paste or Enter Serial Numbers

Platform Key Certificate Choose a file [Browse](#)

Drag or Choose a file, Paste or Enter Certificate

Expiry Default - 1 year

OS Type **IOS XR** IOS XE

Override OFF

Security profile OFF

[Request](#)

Figure 24: Home Page—With New OVs Displayed

MASA Home [Reset Filters](#) [+ New Request](#)

Active Cisco Systems Inc. 2 vouchers Select A Date Range Date Requested

| Serial Number | Requested By | Requested | Expires | Assertion | Status | Request ID | Voucher ID | PDC Organization | Actions |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----------|--------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> FOC22362ENG | user@cisco.com | Nov 23 2022, 1:11 PM | Jun 2 2023, 12:27 PM | | | 763854e8-6b73-11... | 76442cfa-6b73-11... | Cisco Systems Inc. | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> FOC2237R0NK | user@cisco.com | Nov 23 2022, 1:11 PM | Jun 2 2023, 12:27 PM | | | 763854e8-6b73-11... | 76f5e012-6b73-11... | Cisco Systems Inc. | |

Depending on your user permissions, you can perform the following actions from the Home page.

- Download the generated OVs.
- Regenerate OVs.
- View details of past requests
- Filter, sort, and group the requests based on their attributes
- Archive the OVs.

Interacting with MASA Through REST APIs

You can also use APIs to programmatically interact with the MASA service.

See the [OpenAPI documentation page](#) that contains details about the paths, formats, and structures of the APIs.

For example, use this API to request for the ownership voucher:

```
POST /request/ov
```

Use this API to fetch details about an already generated voucher:

```
GET /voucher/{voucher_id}
```

| Name | Description |
|--|---|
| voucher_id * required | The Voucher ID to fetch the details for |
| string(\$uuid)
<i>(path)</i> | |
| | <input type="text" value="voucher_id"/> |

522961

Response:

```
{
  "ok": true,
  "voucher": {
    "req_id": "3fa85f64-5717-4562-b3fc-2c963f66afa6",
    "voucher_id": "3fa85f64-5717-4562-b3fc-2c963f66afa6",
    "requested_at": "2022-08-31T09:43:39.719Z",
    "created_at": "2022-08-31T09:43:39.719Z",
    "expires_at": "2022-08-31T09:43:39.719Z",
    "last_renewal_at": "2022-08-31T09:43:39.719Z",
    "assertion": "logged",
    "status": "completed",
    "serial_number": "T8I52J1IKOM",
    "pdc_organization": "Cisco Systems",
    "requested_by": "user1@cisco.com"
  }
}
```



Note “serial Number” is serial number of the route processor. You can provide up to 20 serial numbers in a single request.

Interaction with MASA through gRPC

Table 61: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|------------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Interaction with MASA through gRPC | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8700 [ASIC: K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8712-MOD-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I |
| Interaction with MASA through gRPC | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100])(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |
| Interaction with MASA through gRPC | Release 24.1.1 | <p>From this release, you can use the gRPC protocol to interact with MASA APIs in addition to the current HTTP protocols. Through structured serialization of data with gRPC's Protocol Buffers, the communication between services is made more efficient, type-safe, and consistent.</p> |

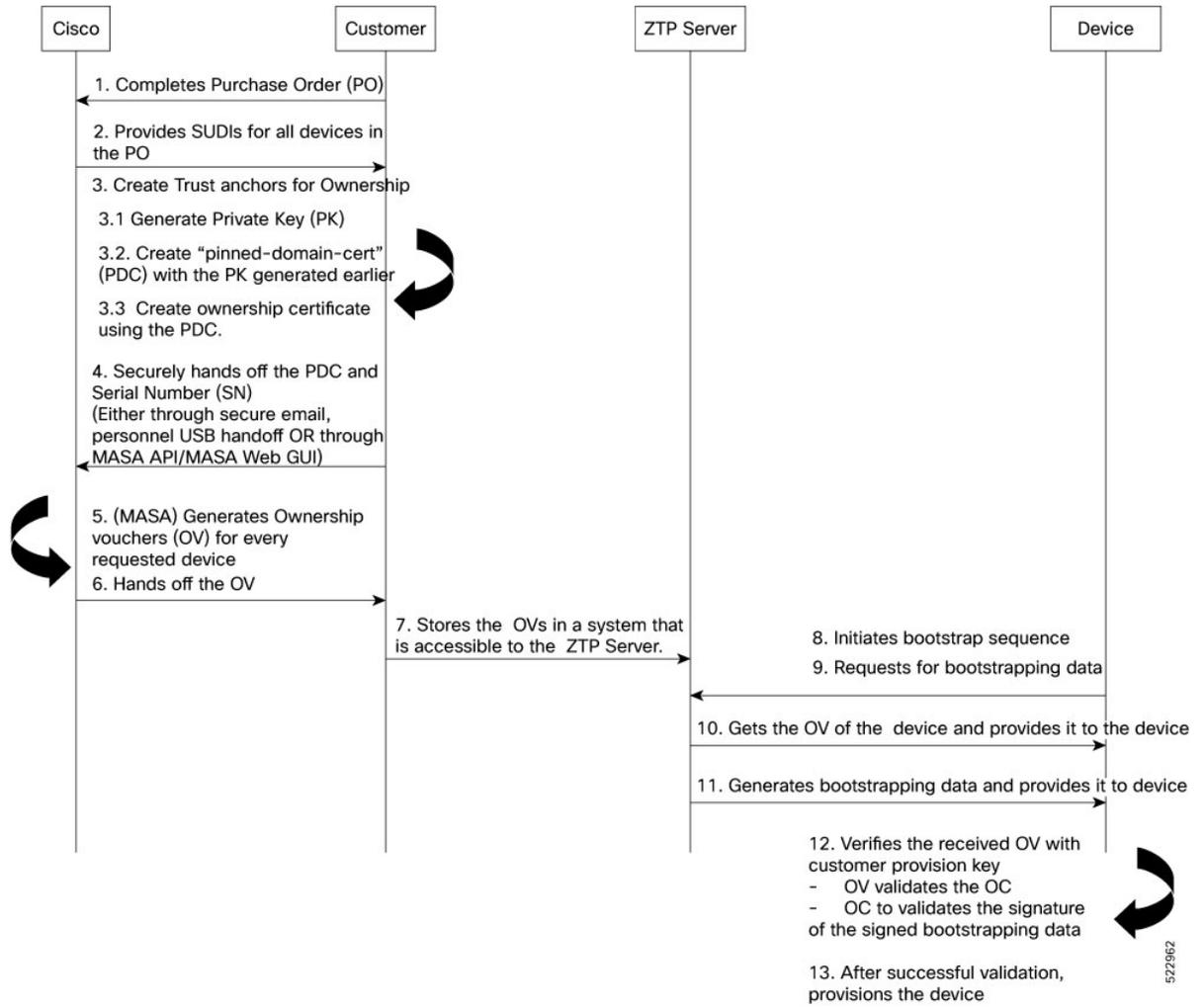
The following MASA APIs are accessible using gRPC protocol in addition to http protocol:

| RPC | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| rpc GetGroup | Returns the domain-certificates (keyed by id), serials, and user/role mappings for that group. |
| rpc AddUserRole | Assigns a role to a user in a named group. Username is unique to an Org ID. |
| rpc RemoveUserRole | Removes a role from a user in a named group. Username is unique to an Org ID. |
| rpc GetUserRole | Returns the roles that the user is assigned in the group. Username is unique to an Org ID. A user can only view roles of another user in the group that it has a role assigned to. |
| rpc CreateDomainCert | Creates the certificate in the group. |
| rpc GetDomainCert | Reveals the details of the certificate. |
| rpc DeleteDomainCert | Deletes the certificate from the database. |
| rpc GetOwnershipVoucher | Issues an ownership voucher. |

For more information on gRPC, see *Use gRPC Protocol to Define Network Operations with Data Models in the Programmability Configuration Guide for Cisco 8000 Series Routers*.

Workflow to Provision a Router Using Ownership Voucher

The following figure illustrates the complete workflow to provision a Cisco IOS XR router by using the ownership vouchers.





CHAPTER 16

Implementing Lawful Intercept

- [Implementing lawful intercept, on page 387](#)
- [Prerequisites for Implementing Lawful Intercept, on page 389](#)
- [Restrictions and Usage Guidelines for Implementing Lawful Intercept, on page 389](#)
- [Lawful Intercept Topology, on page 390](#)
- [Benefits of Lawful Intercept, on page 391](#)
- [Installing Lawful Intercept \(LI\) Package, on page 392](#)
- [How to Configure SNMPv3 Access for Lawful Intercept, on page 397](#)
- [Additional Information on Lawful Intercept, on page 399](#)

Implementing lawful intercept

Table 62: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|------------------|---------------------|---|
| Lawful intercept | Release 25.4.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8010 [ASIC: A100])(select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 8011-32Y8L2H2FH• 8011-12G12X4Y-A• 8011-12G12X4Y-D |
| Lawful intercept | Release 25.1.1 | Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8010 [ASIC: A100]) (select variants only*)

*This feature is supported on Cisco 8011-4G24Y4H-I routers. |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|------------------|---------------------|--|
| Lawful intercept | Release 24.4.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems(8200, 8700)(select variants only*); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])(select variants only*).</p> <p>This feature is now enabled on the following hardware thus allowing service providers to perform surveillance on an individual (or target) as authorized by a judicial or administrative order and share the communication intercepts with law enforcement agencies.</p> <p>*This feature is now supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 8712-MOD-M • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM • 88-LC1-36EH |
| Lawful intercept | Release 24.2.11 | <p>You can now enable Lawful Intercept (LI) by installing and activating the LI package to enable service providers to perform surveillance on an individual (or target) as authorized by a judicial or administrative order and share the communication intercepts with law enforcement agencies.</p> <p>This feature is supported on Cisco 8800 series routers that have the 88-LC1-36EH line card installed.</p> |

Cisco lawful intercept is based on RFC3924 architecture and SNMPv3 provisioning architecture. SNMPv3 addresses the requirements to authenticate data origin and ensure that the connection from the router to the Mediation Device (MD) is secure. This ensures that unauthorized parties cannot forge an intercept target.

Lawful intercept offers these capabilities:

- SNMPv3 lawful intercept provisioning interface
- Lawful intercept MIB: CISCO-TAP2-MIB, version 2
- CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB manages the Cisco intercept feature for IP and is used along with CISCO-TAP2-MIB to intercept IP traffic

- IPv4 and IPv6 user datagram protocol (UDP) encapsulation to the MD
- Replication and forwarding of intercepted packets to the MD

Prerequisites for Implementing Lawful Intercept

Lawful intercept implementation requires that these prerequisites are met:

- The router is used as content Intercept Access Point (IAP) router in lawful interception operation.
- **Provisioned Router**—The router must be already provisioned.



Tip For the purpose of lawful intercept taps, provisioning a loopback interface has advantages over other interface types.

- **Management Plane Configured to Enable SNMPv3**—Allows the management plane to accept SNMP commands, so that the commands go to the interface (preferably, a loopback interface) on the router. This allows the mediation device (MD) to communicate with a physical interface.
- **VACM Views Enabled for SNMP Server**—View-based access control model (VACM) views must be enabled on the router.
- **Provisioned MD**—For detailed information, see the vendor documentation associated with your MD.
- The MD uses the **CISCO-TAP2-MIB** to set up communications between the router acting as the content IAP, and the MD. The MD uses the **CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB** to set up the filter for the IP addresses and port numbers to be intercepted.
- The MD can be located anywhere in the network but must be reachable from the content IAP router, which is being used to intercept the target. MD should be reachable *only* from global routing table and *not* from VRF routing table.

Restrictions and Usage Guidelines for Implementing Lawful Intercept

The following restrictions are applicable for Lawful Intercept:

- Lawful intercept is supported only to match pure IP over Ethernet packets.
- Only 512 MDs, 1024 IPv4 and 512 IPv6 TAPs are supported.
- One Tap-to-multiple MDs is not supported.
- After the route processor reload or fail-over, the MD and Tap configuration must be re-provisioned.
- Both IPv4 and IPv6 MD are supported.
- The path to the MD must have the ARP resolved. Any other traffic or protocol will trigger ARP.
- MD next-hop must have ARP resolved. Any other traffic or protocol will trigger ARP.

- Lawful Intercept Stats is not supported.
- Even though the original packets can be fragmented, the LI packets cannot be fragmented. The MTU of the egress interface to the MD must be large enough to support the size of the packets captured.
- LI supports L3 TAPs for L3 interface types, including physical and bundle interfaces.
- LI traffic cannot be transmitted over the management interface.
- Lawful intercept does not provide support for these features on the router:
 - IPv4/IPv6 multicast tapping
 - Per interface tapping
 - Tagged packet tapping
 - Replicating a single tap to multiple MDs
 - Tapping L2 flows and SRv6 traffic
 - RTP encapsulation
 - Lawful Intercept and SPAN on the same interface

Restrictions on Configuring LI with Other Features

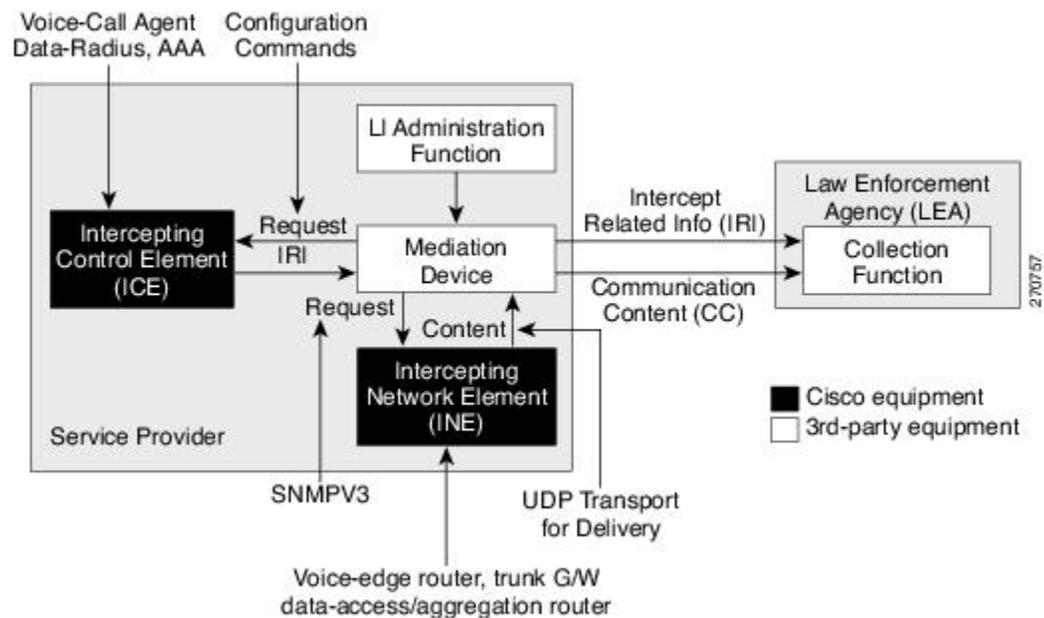
When configuring Lawful Intercept (LI) alongside other ACL-dependent features (An ACL-dependent feature refers to a capability in network systems that relies on Access Control Lists (ACLs) for its operation. These features include both global such as Lawful Intercept (LI), BGP Flow Specification (BGPFS) and interface-level configurations, such as Quality of Service with ACL (QoS-ACL), Security ACL, SPAN ACL, QoS Policy Propagation via BGP (QPPB), Policy Based Routing (PBR), Peering QoS, and L2 ACL for packets with L3 payload), adhere to these restrictions to avoid configuration conflicts and rejections:

- If LI is the first feature configured on the system, you can add up to three additional ACL-dependent features at either the interface or global level. Trying to configure more will generate an IOS message for features such as QPPB, QOS-ACL, SECURITY-ACL, and BGPFS.
- If LI is already enabled on the router, configuring SPAN with ACL on an interface will result in the configuration being rejected.
- If three ACL-dependent features are already configured on interfaces and LI RPM is installed, LI will attempt to tap ingress traffic on all interfaces.
- If four ACL-dependent features are configured on specific interfaces while others have fewer than three, and LI tap is set up, the LI will tap traffic on the interfaces with fewer than three features, bypassing those with four.

Lawful Intercept Topology

This figure shows intercept access points and interfaces in a lawful intercept topology for both voice and data interception.

Figure 25: Lawful Intercept Topology for Both Voice and Data Interception

**Note**

- The router will be used as content Intercept Access Point (IAP) router, or the Intercepting Network Element (INE) in lawful interception operation.
- The Intercepting Control Element (ICE) could be either a Cisco equipment or a third party equipment.

Benefits of Lawful Intercept

Lawful intercept has the following benefits:

- Allows multiple LEAs to run a lawful intercept on the same Router without each other's knowledge.
- Does not affect subscriber services on the router.
- Supports wiretaps in both the input and output direction.
- Supports wiretaps of Layer 3 traffic.
- Cannot be detected by the target.
- Uses Simple Network Management Protocol Version 3 (SNMPv3) and security features such as the View-based Access Control Model (SNMP-VACM-MIB) and User-based Security Model (SNMP-USM-MIB) to restrict access to lawful intercept information and components.
- Hides information about lawful intercepts from all but the most privileged users. An administrator must set up access rights to enable privileged users to access lawful intercept information.

Installing Lawful Intercept (LI) Package

As LI is not a part of the Cisco IOS XR image by default, you need to install it separately.

Installing and Activating the LI Package

To install the optional LI feature, use the following steps to install and activate the LI RPM package. This example shows the procedure and associated sample configurations to install an RPM package.

1. Use SCP (secure copy) to transfer the RPM files to a folder on the router.
2. Start the LI RPM installation.

```
Router#install source <location of the RPM package file> xr-8000-li xr-li
noprompt
```

Example:

```
Router#install source /harddisk:/li-rpms/optional-rpms-argon xr-8000-li xr-li
noprompt
```

3. To verify the progress of the RPM installation, use the following CLI command:

```
Router#show install request verbose
```

Example: RPM Installation (in progress)

```
Router#show install request verbose
Tue Apr 11 17:59:09.145 UTC
```

```
User request: install source file:///harddisk:/li-rpms/optional-rpms-argon xr-8000-li
xr-li
Operation ID: 1.1
State:          In progress since 2023-04-11 17:58:30 UTC
```

```
Current activity:  Verify input and download to internal repository if needed
Next activity:     Veto check
Time started:      2023-04-11 17:58:44 UTC
No per-location information.
```

Example: RPM Installation (complete)

```
Router#show install request verbose
Tue Apr 11 18:00:49.696 UTC
```

```
User request: install source file:///harddisk:/li-rpms/optional-rpms-argon xr-8000-li
xr-li
Operation ID: 1.1
State:          Success since 2023-04-11 18:00:46 UTC
```

```
Current activity:  Await user input
Time started:      2023-04-11 18:00:46 UTC
```

The following actions are available:

```
install package add
install package remove
install package upgrade
install package downgrade
install package replace
install package rollback
```

```
install replace
install rollback
install source
install commit
install replace reimage
```

4. To complete the LI package installation, use the following CLI command:

```
Router#install commit
```

Example:

```
Router#install commit
Tue Apr 11 18:00:55.671 UTC
Install commit operation 1 has started
Install operation will continue in the background
```

5. To verify the progress of the installation commit, use the following CLI command:

```
Router#show install request verbose
```

Example:

```
Router#show install request verbose
Tue Apr 11 18:01:10.078 UTC

User request: install commit
Operation ID: 1
State:          In progress since 2023-04-11 18:00:57 UTC

Current activity:  Commit transaction
Next activity:    Transaction complete
Time started:     2023-04-11 18:00:57 UTC

No per-location information.
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#show install request verbose
Tue Apr 11 18:09:57.666 UTC

User request: install commit
Operation ID: 1
State:          Success since 2023-04-11 18:01:36 UTC

Current activity:  No install operation in progress

The following actions are available:
install package add
install package remove
install package upgrade
install package downgrade
install package replace
install package rollback
install replace
install rollback
install source
install replace reimage
```

6. To verify the successful installation of the LI package, use the following CLI command:

```
Router#show install active summary
```

Example:

```
Router#show install active summary
Tue Apr 11 18:12:43.340 UTC
Active Packages:   XR: 208   All: 1325
```

```

Label: 7.11.1.01I
Software Hash: f73f9988276c2001702066ac8173de2fe5b9501849ca2c98d49f9828b4ab7522

Optional Packages
-----
xr-8000-l2mcast 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-8000-li 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-8000-mcast 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-8000-netflow 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-bgp 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-ipsla 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-is-is 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-li 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-lldp 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-mcast 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-mps-oam 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-netflow 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-ops-script-repo 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-ospf 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-perf-meas 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-perfmgmt 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-track 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1

```

Uninstalling the LI Package

To uninstall the LI package, use the following steps:

1. To start the uninstallation, use the following CLI command:

```
install package remove xr-8000-li xr-li
```

Example:

```

Router#install package remove xr-8000-li xr-li
Tue Apr 11 18:18:03.732 UTC
Install remove operation 2.1.1 has started
Install operation will continue in the background

```

2. To verify the progress of the uninstallation, use the following CLI command:

```
show install request verbose
```

Example: Uninstallation (in progress)

```

Router#show install request verbose
Tue Apr 11 18:19:08.473 UTC

User request: install package remove xr-8000-li xr-li
Operation ID: 2.1.1
State: In progress since 2023-04-11 18:18:05 UTC

Current activity: Package add or other package operation
Next activity: Await user input
Time started: 2023-04-11 18:18:44 UTC
Timeout in: 39m 34s
Locations responded: 0/1

Location 0/RP0/CPU0:
  Packaging operation stage: Package operations - completed 6/6
  No client notifications waiting

```

Example: Uninstallation (complete)

```

Router#show install request verbose
Tue Apr 11 18:19:56.671 UTC

User request: install package remove xr-8000-li xr-li
Operation ID: 2.1.1
State:          Success since 2023-04-11 18:19:37 UTC

Current activity:  Await user input
Time started:     2023-04-11 18:19:37 UTC

The following actions are available:
install package add
install package remove
install package upgrade
install package downgrade
install package abort latest
install package abort all-since-apply
install apply restart
install apply reload
install replace reimage

```

Least impactful apply method: install apply restart

- To apply the LI package uninstallation, use the following CLI command:

```
install apply restart
```

Example:

```

Router#install apply restart
Tue Apr 11 18:20:43.441 UTC
Install apply operation 2.1 has started
Install operation will continue in the background

```

Example: Apply restart (in progress)

```

Router#show install request verbose
Tue Apr 11 18:22:04.298 UTC

User request: install apply restart
Operation ID: 2.1
State:          In progress since 2023-04-11 18:20:44 UTC

Current activity:  Post-apply operation cleanup
Next activity:    Await user input
Time started:     2023-04-11 18:21:07 UTC

```

No per-location information.

Example: Apply restart (complete)

```

Router#show install request verbose
Tue Apr 11 18:22:21.102 UTC

User request: install apply restart
Operation ID: 2.1
State:          Success since 2023-04-11 18:22:09 UTC

Current activity:  Await user input
Time started:     2023-04-11 18:22:09 UTC

The following actions are available:
install package add
install package remove
install package upgrade

```

```

install package downgrade
install package replace
install package rollback
install replace
install rollback
install source
install commit
install replace reimage

```

4. To complete the LI package uninstallation, use the following CLI command:

```
install commit
```

Example:

```

Router#install commit
Tue Apr 11 18:22:55.627 UTC
Install commit operation 2 has started
Install operation will continue in the background

```

5. To verify the LI package uninstallation, use one of the following CLI commands:

- **show install request verbose**

Example:

```

Router#show install request verbose
Tue Apr 11 18:23:45.086 UTC

User request: install commit
Operation ID: 2
State: Success since 2023-04-11 18:23:35 UTC

Current activity: No install operation in progress

The following actions are available:
install package add
install package remove
install package upgrade
install package downgrade
install package replace
install package rollback
install replace
install rollback
install source
install replace reimage

```

- **show install active summary**

Example:

```

show install active summary
Tue Apr 11 18:24:12.052 UTC
Active Packages: XR: 206 All: 1323
Label: 7.11.1.01I
Software Hash: cdef36e9cf22ba3a1c1217d7b05b41a45b7e9ff6e8f30d871a1c52b91bf16047

Optional Packages
-----
xr-8000-l2mcast 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-8000-mcast 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-8000-netflow 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-bgp 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-ipsla 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-is-is 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1

```

```

xr-lldp 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-mcast 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-mps-oam 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-netflow 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-ops-script-repo 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-ospf 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-perf-meas 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-perfmgmt 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1
xr-track 7.11.1.01Iv1.0.0-1

```

How to Configure SNMPv3 Access for Lawful Intercept

Perform these procedures to configure SNMPv3 for the purpose of Lawful Intercept enablement:

Disabling SNMP-based Lawful Intercept

Lawful Intercept is enabled by default on the router after installing and activating the LI RPM package.

- To disable Lawful Intercept, enter the **lawful-intercept disable** command in global configuration mode.
- To re-enable it, use the **no** form of this command.

Disabling SNMP-based Lawful Intercept: Example

```

Router# configure
Router(config)# lawful-intercept disable

```



Note The **lawful-intercept disable** command is available on the router, only after installing and activating the LI RPM package.

All SNMP-based taps are dropped when lawful intercept is disabled.

Configuring the Inband Management Plane Protection Feature

If MPP was not earlier configured to work with another protocol, then ensure that the MPP feature is also not configured to enable the SNMP server to communicate with the mediation device for lawful interception. In such cases, MPP must be configured specifically as an inband interface to allow SNMP commands to be accepted by the router, using a specified interface or all interfaces.



Note Ensure this task is performed, even if you have recently migrated to Cisco IOS XR Software from Cisco IOS, and you had MPP configured for a given protocol.

For lawful intercept, a loopback interface is often the choice for SNMP messages. If you choose this interface type, you must include it in your inband management configuration.

Example: Configuring the Inband Management Plane Protection Feature

This example illustrates how to enable the MPP feature, which is disabled by default, for the purpose of lawful intercept.

You must specifically enable management activities, either globally or on a per-inband-port basis, using this procedure. To globally enable inbound MPP, use the keyword **all** with the **interface** command, rather than use a particular interface type and instance ID with it.

```
router# configure
router(config)# control-plane
router(config-ctrl)# management-plane
router(config-mpp)# inband
router(config-mpp-inband)# interface loopback0
router(config-mpp-inband-Loopback0)# allow snmp
router(config-mpp-inband-Loopback0)# commit
router(config-mpp-inband-Loopback0)# exit
router(config-mpp-inband)# exit
router(config-mpp)# exit
router(config-ctr)# exit
router(config)# exit
router# show mgmt-plane inband interface loopback0
Management Plane Protection - inband interface
interface - Loopback0
        snmp configured -
All peers allowed
router(config)# commit
```

Enabling the Lawful Intercept SNMP Server Configuration

The following SNMP server configuration tasks enable the Cisco LI feature on a router running Cisco IOS XR Software by allowing the MD to intercept data sessions.

Configuration

```
router(config)# snmp-server engineID local 00:00:00:09:00:00:00:a1:61:6c:20:56
router(config)# snmp-server host 1.75.55.1 traps version 3 priv user-name udp-port 4444
router(config)# snmp-server user user-name li-group v3 auth md5 clear lab priv des56 clear
lab
router(config)# snmp-server view li-view ciscoTap2MIB included
router(config)# snmp-server view li-view ciscoIpTapMIB included
router(config)# snmp-server view li-view snmp included
router(config)# snmp-server view li-view ifMIB included
router(config)# snmp-server view li-view 1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.4.1 included
router(config)# snmp-server group li-group v3 auth read li-view write li-view notify li-view
```



Note SNMP configuration must be removed while deactivating the LI RPM.

Additional Information on Lawful Intercept

Interception Mode

The lawful intercept operates in the **Global LI** mode.

In this mode, the taps are installed on all the line cards in the ingress direction. With the global tap, the traffic for the target can be intercepted regardless of ingress point. Only the tap that has wild cards in the interface field is supported.

Data Interception

Data are intercepted in this manner:

- The MD initiates communication content intercept requests to the content IAP router using SNMPv3.
- The content IAP router intercepts the communication content, replicates it, and sends it to the MD in either IPv4 or IPv6 UDP format.
- Intercepted data sessions are sent from the MD to the collection function of the law enforcement agency, using a supported delivery standard for lawful intercept.

Information About the MD

The MD performs these tasks:

- Activates the intercept at the authorized time and removes it when the authorized time period elapses.
- Periodically audits the elements in the network to ensure that:
 - *only* authorized intercepts are in place.
 - *all* authorized intercepts are in place.

Scale or Performance Values

The router support the following scalability and performance values for lawful intercept:

- A maximum of 1024 IPv4 intercepts and 512 IPv6 intercepts are supported.

Intercepting IPv4 and IPv6 Packets

This section provides details for intercepting IPv4 and IPv6 packets supported on the router.

Lawful Intercept Filters

The following filters are supported for classifying a tap:

- IP address type

- Destination IP address
- Destination mask
- Source IP address
- Source mask
- ToS (Type of Service) and ToS mask
- L4 protocol
- L4 destination port with range
- L4 source port with range



Note VRF (VPN Routing and Forwarding), flow-id, and interface filters are not supported.

Encapsulation Type Supported for Intercepted Packets

Intercepted packets mapping the tap are replicated, encapsulated, and then sent to the MD. IPv4 packets are encapsulated using IPv4 UDP encapsulation, while IPv6 packets are encapsulated using IPv6 UDP encapsulation. The replicated packets are forwarded to MD using UDP as the content delivery protocol.

The intercepted packet gets a new UDP header and IPv4 or IPv6 header, depending on the packet type. Information for IP header is derived from MD configuration. Apart from the IP and UDP headers, a 4-byte channel identifier (CCCID) is also inserted after the UDP header in the packet. The router does not support forwarding the same replicated packets to multiple MDs.



Note Encapsulation types, such as RTP and RTP-NOR, are not supported.

High Availability for Lawful Intercept

High availability for lawful intercept provides operational continuity of the TAP flows and provisioned MD tables to reduce loss of information due to route processor fail over (RPFO).

To achieve continuous interception of a stream, when RP fail over is detected; MDs are required to re-provision all the rows relating to CISCO-TAP2-MIB and CISCO-IP-TAP-MIB to synchronize database view across RP and MD.

Preserving TAP and MD Tables during RP Fail Over

At any point in time, MD has the responsibility to detect the loss of the taps via SNMP configuration process.

After RPFO is completed, MD should re-provision all the entries in the stream tables, MD tables, and IP taps with the same values they had before fail over. As long as an entry is re-provisioned in time, existing taps will continue to flow without any loss.

The following restrictions are listed for re-provisioning MD and tap tables with respect to behavior of SNMP operation on `citapStreamEntry`, `cTap2StreamEntry`, `cTap2MediationEntry` MIB objects:

- After RPFO, table rows that are not re-provisioned, shall return NO_SUCH_INSTANCE value as result of SNMP Get operation.
- Entire row in the table must be created in a single configuration step, with exactly same values as before RPFO, and with the rowStatus as CreateAndGo. Only exception is the cTap2MediationTimeout object, that should reflect valid future time.

Replay Timer

The replay timer is an internal timeout that provides enough time for MD to re-provision tap entries while maintaining existing tap flows. It resets and starts on the active RP when RPFO takes place. The replay timer is a factor of number of LI entries in router with a minimum value of 10 minutes.

After replay timeout, interception stops on taps that are not re-provisioned.



Note In case high availability is not required, MD waits for entries to age out after fail over. MD cannot change an entry before replay timer expiry. It can either reinstall taps as is, and then modify; or wait for it to age out.



CHAPTER 17

Device Ownership

Device ownership is a process by which a device establishes its first trusted connection with the device management service (network) and vice versa.

- [Establishing device ownership, on page 403](#)
- [Security profiles for Cisco IOS XR software, on page 407](#)

Establishing device ownership

Key components of the device ownership establishment process.

- **Owner Certificate:** The owner certificate (OC) is an X.509 certificate [[RFC5280](#)] that is used to identify an owner, for example, an organization. The OC can be signed by any certificate authority (CA).

The OC is used by a device to verify the CA signature using the public key that is also in the owner certificate.

The OC structure must contain the owner certificate itself, as well as all intermediate certificates leading to the "pinned-domain-cert" (PDC) certificate specified in the ownership voucher.

- **Ownership Voucher:** The ownership voucher (OV) [[RFC8366](#)] is used to securely identify the device's owner, as known to the manufacturer. The OV is signed by the device's manufacturer.

The OV is used to verify that the owner certificate has a chain of trust leading to the trusted certificate (PDC) included in the ownership voucher.

OVs are issued by Cisco's Manufacturer Authorized Signing Authority (MASA) service. For information on MASA, see the *Manufacturer Authorized Signing Authority (MASA)* chapter.

- **Serial Number:** The serial number (SN) of the router is typically in the format of *LLLYYWWSSSS*. Here, *LLL* represents the location of manufacturing. *YY* and *WW* represent the year and week of manufacture respectively. *SSSS* is the unique code of your router.

You can find the serial number at the bottom of the router or by running the **show platform security device-info location**<location> command. Here, <location> provides the device information pertaining to the specified location.

Summary

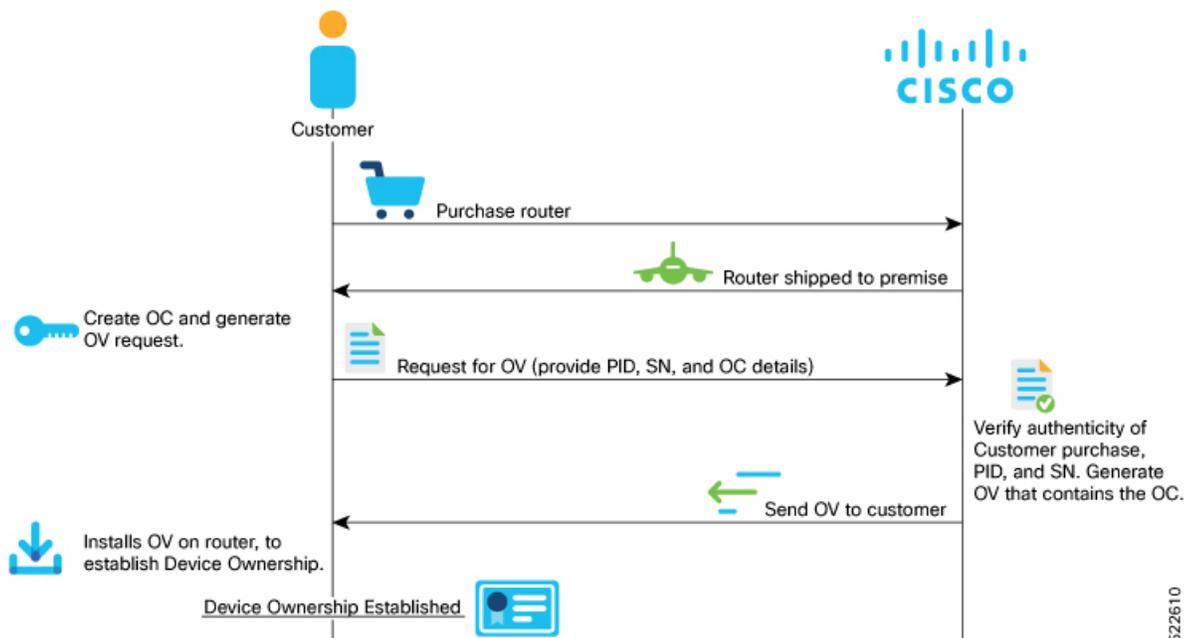
Device Ownership Establishment (DOE) is required to allow the network to validate the router, and for the router to validate the network. DOE also helps to validate the signature of third-party applications before being installed on the router.

DOE is also required to perform some tasks securely and without Cisco's intervention, such as:

- Enable or disable Reimage Protection mechanism
- Install and enable customer key package – a feature that provides a mechanism to verify and onboard third-party applications on Cisco IOS XR routers.

Workflow

Figure 26: Workflow for Device Ownership Establishment



These are the stages involved in establishing device ownership:

1. Create the OC (ownership certificate) using [OpenSSL](#) commands.
The router verifies that the OC has a chain of trust leading to the trust certificate (pinned-domain-cert [PDC]) that is included in the OV.
2. Create request for OV (ownership voucher). For more information, see [Interacting with the MASA server](#).



Note Device ownership is based on a specific node or a serial number. Ownership voucher must be created for each serial number.



Note Reference scripts to create OCs are available on Github at <https://github.com/ios-xr/key-package-scripts>.

3. Send the OV request to Cisco along with the serial number of the router.

Cisco verifies the authenticity of the artifacts and generates the OVs.



Note Modifying the .vcj file created as output from MASA may cause delays and reports errors when processing the file. If duplicate .vcj files are generated for the same serial number or card, the first valid file is applied and the duplicate files are rejected.



Note If multiple serial numbers are provided to Cisco MASA web interface to create OVs, separate .vcj output files may be archived using the standard TAR tool and provided as input to the GISO script or XR interfaces. There is no structure or directory hierarchy required within the TAR file as it is stored as a flat archive of individual Ownership Voucher files from the MASA output.

4. Execute the **platform security device-ownership**<OV or OC filepath>**location**<location> command to install the OVs on the router.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# platform security device-ownership
/disk0:/testing2/deliverable/bulk_ovs.tar.gz /disk0:/testing2/oc-single.cms location all
Mon Jun 14 16:05:15.008 UTC
```



Note

- This command requires you to provide a tar ball of OVs, with each OV representing a route processor (RP) on the router. You can choose to include an OV for the chassis in the tar ball. You can also choose to maintain a single tar ball of OVs of all the route processors you have purchased that you can then provide as input to the command.
- The OC must have its trust chain leading to the PDC in the OV.
- The command accepts only the latest OV. The installation fails if you install a version of the OV that is older than the version of the currently-installed OV.

The router verifies that the OC has a chain of trust leading to the trust certificate (pinned-domain-cert [PDC]) that is included in the OV.

The router adds the PDC and OC to a special trust point as a CA certificate. This trust point configuration appears by default in the router configuration and can be used by any third-party application to establish trust.

If a PDC or OC has expired or has been revoked, re-run the **platform security device-ownership** command with new certificates.

5. Run the **show platform security device-ownership** to verify device ownership is established.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios# show platform security device-ownership

Performing operation on all nodes..
```

```

=====
Location : 0/RP0/CPU0
=====

```

```
Trustpoint : device_ownership
=====
```

```
CA certificate
Certificate:
Data:
Version: 3 (0x2)
Serial Number:
f6:20:61:bd:db:22:30:74
...truncated...
```

Run the **show logging** command to view the log for device ownership.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show logging
```

```
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Oct 13 13:10:26.086 UTC: ownership_app[66652]: %SECURITY-OWNERSHIP-6-INFO
: Device ownership established.
```

For information on establishing device ownership through Secure Zero touch provisioning (sZTP), see the *Securely Provision Your Network Devices* chapter in the *System Setup and Software Installation Guide for Cisco NCS 540 Series Routers*.



Note OC and OV can also be included in a GISO.

Result

Device ownership is established, enabling secure validation between network and device.

Clear device ownership

Before you begin

Make sure that the customer consent token (CT) key is [enabled](#) before running the **clear device-ownership** command.

Clear device ownership uses the consent token workflow. For more information, see [Consent Tokens for Privileged Operations](#).

You can use the **clear device-ownership** command to clear PDC, OC and other artifacts such as key packages associated with an ownership voucher.

Procedure

Step 1 Execute the **clear device-ownership** to clear device ownership for all applications using the OC.

Example:

```
Router# clear device-ownership challenge customer location 0/RP1/CPU0
```

```
Do you want to clear the device ownership [Y/N]? Y
Tue Feb 10 05:20:07.811 UTC
```

```
+-----+
```

```

Node location: node0_RP1_CPU0
+-----+
Challenge string:
2G6nKAAAQYBAAQAAAFgAEAAAABAACLb98TiegyWHPAAQul/tEEkiuKEB1.2va2ScFMgUABAAAAUGAARhYmNkEwAEYWJjZAgABzg4MDatU1AJAAtGTOMyMzAyUDhIMw==
+-----+
Node location: node0_RP1_CPU0
+-----+
Challenge string:
2G6nKAAAQYBAAQAAAFgAEAAAABAACLb98TiegyWHPAAQul/tEEkiuKEB1.2va2ScFMgUABAAAAUGAARhYmNkEwAEYWJjZAgABzg4MDatU1AJAAtGTOMyMzAyUDhIMw==
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:ios#
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:ios#clear device-ownership response location 0/RP1/CPU0
Tue Feb 10 05:20:22.911 UTC
*****
Please enter challenge response string for node location node0_RP1_CPU0
*****

```

Once your clear device ownership, all applications that depend on the OC will not function.

Step 2 Execute the **show platform security device-ownership** to verify whether the device ownership is cleared or not.

Example:

```

Router# show platform security device-ownership

No platform ownership information found.

```

Security profiles for Cisco IOS XR software

Cisco IOS XR devices support a number of security profiles. For example, there are security profiles to support classic ZTP or secure ZTP, enable third-party RPM signature verification, support partner RPM GISO, and so on. You can select the appropriate security profile and override them based on your business needs. Each security profile support various user-configurable security parameters or security levels.

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|--|
| Security profiles for Cisco IOS XR software | Release 26.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100, K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100]); Centralized Systems (8600 [ASIC:Q200]) ; Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100])</p> <p>This feature supports different security profiles to ensure integrity and protection of the IOS XR system when transitioning between security profiles.</p> <p>The supported security profiles are Strict, Default, and Relaxed.</p> |

Table 63: Cisco IOS XR security profiles

| Security profile | Purpose |
|------------------|--|
| Strict | Enables all security features. This profile corresponds to the High security level to enable security features. For more information, see the Signature verification for owner RPMs . |
| Default | All security features have a default value, which exists from releases prior to Cisco IOS XR Release 26.1.1. |
| Relaxed | Sets the security level of the device to Low where certain security checks are not enforced like verifying signatures of owner RPMs. For more information, see the Signature verification for owner RPMs . |

These security profiles are added using the ownership voucher (OV).



Note When using the Cisco MASA web interface to create OVs, it is important to select the same security profile setting for all cards (serial numbers) that are part of, or to be part of, the same chassis. The MASA interface does not enforce this, since the cards (serial numbers) and their corresponding OVs may belong to, or be intended for, different chassis with different security requirements.



CHAPTER 18

Consent Tokens for Privileged Operations

Consent tokens are security tokens signed by Cisco and are used to enable or disable restricted actions on the router. Cisco verifies that the user requesting the consent token is the legitimate owner of the device before issuing the token.

Key characteristics of consent tokens:

- Device-specific: Each token is associated with a particular device.
- Time-limited: Tokens must be used within a defined time window.
- Single-use: Each token can be used only once.

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Customer consent token configuration | Release 26.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100, K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100]); Centralized Systems (8600 [ASIC:Q200]) ; Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100])</p> <p>This feature allows you to enable the customer consent token workflow so that the key name is linked to the key package.</p> <p>This chapter introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI: A new command, consent-token customer, has been added.</p> |

Consent tokens are used when

- disabling secure ZTP, or
- enabling or disabling lawful intercept.

Owner tokens

An owner token or a customer consent token functions similarly to a consent token. Unlike a consent token which is signed by Cisco, an owner token or a customer consent token is signed by a customer key (rooted in the customer's OC). This allows customers to control who is authorized to perform restricted actions and to enforce stricter authentication requirements. Owner tokens or customer consent tokens can only be used if the customer has installed an OV/OC.

Customer consent tokens are used to clear device ownership.

- [Provisioning Cisco-signed consent tokens, on page 410](#)
- [Provisioning customer consent tokens, on page 411](#)

Provisioning Cisco-signed consent tokens

Summary

Consent tokens use a challenge-response process. The challenge string generated on the router is valid for a defined time interval. The response string for this challenge must be provided within this time interval to authenticate the user to perform the restricted action.

If you use Cisco's consent token workflow, you need to contact Cisco TAC for every request to enable or disable certain privileged operations.

Workflow

These are the stages used in provisioning a Cisco-signed consent token:

1. Generate the challenge string on the router.

```
Router# request consent-token generate-challenge <feature>
```

This produces a challenge string containing the device ID, a nonce, and the requested action. Here, **<feature>** can be any supported security feature, namely, **secure-ztp**, **lawful-intercept**, **factory-reset**, and so on.

2. Submit the challenge string to a Cisco TAC engineer.

Cisco verifies that the requester is the legitimate device owner and is authorized to perform the requested action. If verified, the TAC engineer provides a signed response string.

3. Paste the response string provided by the TAC engineer when prompted, to install the signed response on the router.

```
Router# request consent-token accept-response
```

The router validates the signature and confirms that the device ID and nonce match its own records. If valid, the requested feature is enabled or disabled.

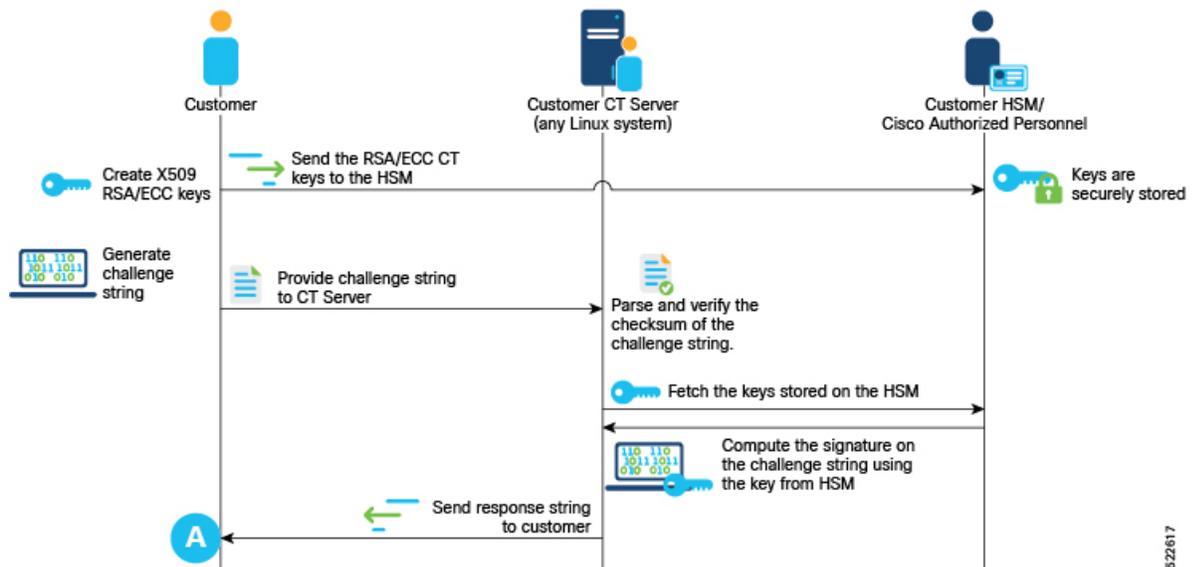
Provisioning customer consent tokens

Summary

This process allows you to set up a server on your premises to handle the customer consent token based challenge-responses.

Workflow

Figure 27: Workflow for the Consent Token Server



These are the stages involved in provisioning customer consent tokens:

1. Generate customer consent token keys using the [openssl](#) commands.
2. Onboard the customer consent tokens keys on to the router using [key packages](#).
3. Enable the customer consent token to link the key name with the key package.

```
Router# configure
Mon Feb  2 13:22:58.355 UTC
Router(config)#consent-token customer cert-name CT_KEY key-name key1 product-name prod1
Router(config)#commit
```

Here **cert-name** indicates the name of consent token certificate added through a key package, **key-name** indicates the name of the consent token key, and **product-name** indicates the product name for consent token.

4. Set up the consent token server on your premises using the sample script, `ct_sim.py`, available on Github at <https://github.com/ios-xr/consent-token-signing-server>.
5. Generate the challenge for features that support customer consent token workflow.
6. Sign the challenge string using your consent token signing server.

The server parses the challenge, verifies the checksum, and computes the signature using the key fetched from HSM (Hardware Security Module).

7. Accept the response generated by the consent token signing server.

The requested feature is now enabled or disabled.



CHAPTER 19

Provision Third-party Key Packages

Key packages are required for onboarding owner keys, customer consent tokens, and owner RPMs on the router.

- [Key packages, on page 413](#)
- [Install key packages on the router, on page 416](#)
- [Handling key rotation, on page 418](#)

Key packages

A key package is a Cryptographic Message Syntax (CMS [RFC5652]) that must be digitally signed with private keys of the customer's Ownership Certificate (OC). Key packages can be used to

- add one or more keys to the router
- delete one or more keys from the router, and
- revoke one or more keys from the router.

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Key package enhancements | Release 26.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100, K100], 8010 [ASIC: A100]); Centralized Systems (8600 [ASIC:Q200]) ; Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100])</p> <p>This feature introduces you to the version 3 key package. With the version 3 key package, you can create, validate, sign a key package before the key package is provisioned on the router.</p> <p>Unlike the reserved customer consent token name, CUS-CT, used in version 1 and version 2 key packages, you can now use any name for the customer consent token that you include in the key package.</p> <p>However, to enable the customer consent token workflow, execute the consent-token customer command after the key package installation.</p> |

A key package provides a secure mechanism to install owner or third-party public keys (GPG or X.509) on the router.

Key package versions and IOS XR releases

You can create key packages using the [GitHub script](#) for different key package versions. These key packages can be installed on the router based on the supported IOS XR releases.

Table 64: Key package versions and IOS XR releases

| Key package version | IOS XR release | Purpose |
|------------------------------|--|--|
| key-pkg-ver1 | Cisco IOS XR Release 7.6.x, Cisco IOS XR Release 7.7.x | <p>With <code>key-pkg-ver1</code>, you can perform the following operations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Create a single key package with signed keys. • Remove any existing key package. • Verify a key package. <p>The key request in the key package supports ADD, DELETE, or REVOKE action.</p> |
| key-pkg-ver2 | Cisco IOS XR Release 7.8.x – Cisco IOS XR Release 25.4.x | <p>With <code>key-pkg-ver2</code>, you can perform the following operations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Create a super key package with two or more key packages or a single key package containing signed keys, • Remove any existing key package or super key package. • Verify a key package or super key package. <p>The key request in the key package supports ADD, DELETE, or REVOKE action.</p> |
| key-pkg-ver3 | Cisco IOS XR Release 26.1.1 and later | <p>With <code>key-pkg-ver3</code>, you can perform the following operations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Create a single key package JSON file containing signed keys. • Validate the key package. • Sign the key package. <p>Key requests do not include action (add, delete, revoke).</p> |

Prerequisites for key packages

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before installing key packages on the router:

- Device ownership should be established.
- The router must be up and running.
- Any uncommitted install operations should not be in progress.

Restrictions for key packages

- Key packages to add, remove, revoke or unrevoke customer or Cisco keys must have a timestamp.
- Key packages must be processed based on the timestamp order. Key packages with a timestamp earlier than that of a processed key package are rejected.
- A key package to remove a key fails if there are any installed packages signed with this key.

Install key packages on the router

This procedure allows you to add or install a customer or third-party key package on the router.

Key package versions 1 and 2 support ADD, DELETE, and REVOKE actions in key requests.

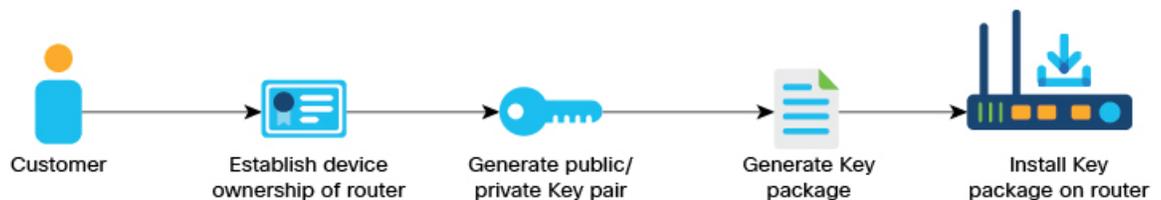
Starting from Cisco IOS XR Release 26.1.1, the ADD, DELETE, and REVOKE actions should not be included anymore in key requests to install, remove, and revoke keys respectively. Instead, if you want to add a new key, include the new key with other installed keys in the new key request. Similarly, to remove an installed key, exclude this key and include other installed keys in the new key request.

For example, if keys K1 and K2 are installed, and if you want to install key K3 on the router, include keys K1, K2, and K3 in the new key request. If you want to remove key K2 from a list of keys K1, K2, and K3, include keys K1 and K3 only in the new key request.

You can also use your keys to sign the consent token response.

To unrevoke a key by removing a key from the list of revoked keys using the **clear device-ownership** command. For more information, see [Clear device ownership, on page 406](#).

Figure 28: Workflow for installing a key package on the router



522616

Before you begin

Ensure that your device ownership is established.

Procedure

Step 1 On a Linux machine, use the standard [openssl](#) commands to generate an RSA/GPG key-pair.

Note

Generate your own public-private key-pair (typically this key pair is a GPG key, but it could also be an X509 certificate).

Step 2 Generate version 1, version 2, or version 3 key package using the script at <https://github.com/ios-xr/key-package-scripts>.

Step 3 Install the key package on the router.

Copy the key package to router and execute the **platform security key-package customer install** *key-package-file* command to install the key package.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# platform security key-package customer install
disk0:/testing2/key-pkg/key_add.kpkg
Mon Jun 14 16:09:28.238 UTC
```

```
Key package successfully validated
Config file successfully parsed.
Successfully added key cust-ct.der to TPM
Successfully processed all keys.
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#
```

Step 4 Verify that the key package is installed.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show platform security key-package customer allowed-list location 0/RP0/CPU0
```

```
Mon Jun 14 16:10:01.440 UTC
```

```
-----
Node - node0_RP0_CPU0
-----
```

```
Key Name: D3CUS-CT1
```

```
Key:
```

```
MIIC7TCCAduCAQIwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQELBQAwOzELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxDDAKBgNV
BAoMA3h6eTEMMAoGA1UECwwDYWJjMRAdGyYDVQQDDAdST09ULUNOMB4XDTEyMDYx
NDElMjkwVowXDTI0MDMxMDElMjkwVowPjELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxDDAKBgNVBAoM
A3h5eJEMMAoGA1UECwwDYWJjMRMwEQYDVQQDDApDVVNULUNULUNOMIIBIjANBgkq
hkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEAYOT2SGTuJcQ1AHCsQn4gcoZGK+po1A6g
LPV5AzOBcY0pfXV5eXoxf6S8qbmQP414v5MjsHzFTououMmijpGYFJv7TORwJ2Xw
weJ5aKbqsYTQ1SQSUZ1XxG7AOdHMshVRzy7vIA7LLQJnD0j1F1U2FoRi5NhhY12L
wmYA4aPj1o+LoubAfjF1BV13vE8rfI0mzsXODJIKs+oeJbsq4HmyMbOAzLVdeucp
7bu3S8kD1c1ph4zqm81BkdZgV1++2CoCBWROt9dRZrp+ENw1GEHcXgS659iZpUmj
juG1n0W3Y6br8SE+EqqhMqkAFsb08vaG02qYtTUNJ5gkMcTljCfDAQIDAQABMA0G
CSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAA4IBAQCDeJ5ov2gG3rj5tthfibxiakpz1706W9crjIePJka6
CWS7Y3nxt02+PGsBBYecBPV7aU8oH2GfKN4jNZHDChfzGN7rtfRE2CG+ttvTxJLC
Ba+LjzKFSveKgPRG/gAAkZY0hRmTe7FkgmKB4UCi+u0XP3U5V1T5XRP3LGVox0fc
rY4/GBKkG5eOF+VGD4iyPfoHjrwduO/K2DqDXyUfalPXZDzatpnin07ShkCJQoT+
u6C1SotJ8mtrFJpePDUsa5W3O2oPROFHd4sGCivt40AbpaWECK+KLPKC+DoqN+46
tMV79rpQ0mtXo/Xfy4UGir4weH9g/e2fct4g+Y2E/BD+
```

```
Key Name: D3CUS-CTX
```

```
Key:
```

```
PNM:APNAM,KNM:AKNAM,
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#
```

Note

Key packages can be also included in a GISO and installed on the router from the GISO. For more information, see [Install signed owner RPMs using GISO](#).

Handling key rotation

Summary

Key rotation is a process that allows you to install new keys on the router and delete installed keys from the router using a single key package or multiple key packages based on the key package version. `key-pkg-ver-1` and `key-pkg-ver-2` allow you to add and remove keys using multiple key packages. If you use `key-pkg-ver-3`, you can use a single key package that include the keys to be installed on the router and keys to be removed from the router.

Workflow

These are the stages in the key rotation process:

1. If you are using `key-pkg-ver-1` and `key-pkg-ver-2`, create two key packages, one to remove an existing key, and the other to install a new key.

If you are using `key-pkg-ver-3`, create a single key package that includes new keys to be installed on the router and omits existing keys that should be removed from the router.
2. Install the key package or key packages created in stage 1 using the **platform security key-package customer install** `<pkg-name>.kpkg` command.



CHAPTER 20

EST protocol for Automated Certificate Provisioning

This feature allows you to enable the EST (Enrollment Over Secure Transport) protocol for all trustpoints while using TLS to secure transport.

- [EST protocol for automated certificate provisioning, on page 419](#)
- [Configure the EST protocol, on page 423](#)

EST protocol for automated certificate provisioning

Enrollment over Secure Transport (EST) is a digital certificate provisioning protocol that

- enhances security by using TLS for secure communication, and
- automates the renewal of certificates to minimize manual intervention.

Table 65: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|--|
| EST protocol for automated certificate provisioning | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: Q200, P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100, K100]); Centralized Systems (8600 [ASIC:Q200]) ; Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100])</p> <p>This release introduces support for Enrollment over Secure Transport (EST), a digital certificate provisioning protocol, which enhances certificate management by offering secure transport using TLS and designated certificate requestors. It enables automated certificate renewal.</p> <p>EST is an enhancement of the existing Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP), providing improved security and flexibility for certificate management operations over both IPv4 and IPv6 networks.</p> <p>The feature introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The method-est keyword is introduced in the crypto ca trustpoint command. • The client-authentication command is introduced. • The SSL-profile command is introduced. <p>YANG Data Model:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cisco-IOS-XR-crypto-cepki-cfg • Cisco-IOS-XR-um-crypto-cfg <p>(see GitHub, YANG Data Models Navigator)</p> |

EST protocol—key features and benefits

These are the key features and benefits of the EST protocol:

- **Secure transport**—EST utilizes TLS to ensure that all messages and certificates are securely transmitted without the need for additional encapsulation.
- **Designated certificate requestors**—With EST, the certificate signing request (CSR) can be associated with a specific trusted requestor that is authenticated with TLS.
- **Automated certificate renewal**—The protocol supports automatic re-enrollment, facilitating seamless renewal of certificates.

EST protocol—key components and related terminologies

Understand key components and terms related to the EST protocol:

- **Certificate Management Protocol (CMP)**—A protocol with comprehensive management capabilities for managing digital certificates, including their enrollment, renewal, and revocation.
- **Certificate signing request (CSR)**—A message sent by the client to the CA to request a digital certificate. It includes the client's public key and identifying information.
- **PKCS 7**—A standard used for cryptographic message syntax, which is employed by SCEP to encapsulate messages.
- **Public Key Infrastructure (PKI)**—The framework that manages digital certificates and keys, essential for certificate provisioning operations using the EST protocol.
- **Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP)**—An older protocol used for certificate provisioning that relies on HTTP and PKCS 7 for securing messages and lacks some of the modern security features of EST.

Client authentication options in the EST protocol

- **TLS certificate-based authentication (mTLS)**—Requires the client to have a valid certificate chain signed by a CA in the EST server trust store so that server can verify the client during mutual TLS (mTLS) authentication. The bootstrap certificate is used only during the first enrollment and can be onboarded using existing methods like SCEP. For re-enrollment, the certificate issued during the initial enrollment is used in the mTLS handshake.
- **HTTP-based authentication**—Used when a bootstrap certificate is not available for initial enrollment. After establishing a TLS session, the EST client sends HTTP authentication details. The HTTP-based authentication method uses Type6 encryption to secure passwords configured on the router, preventing unauthorized access. Type6 encryption is disabled by default and must be enabled. Additionally, a master key must be created, which is securely stored in TAM. This authentication method involves sending a username and clear text password through the TLS-protected channel, ensuring password security via encryption.

Guidelines and limitations for configuring the EST protocol

Supported key types

- In IOS-XR release 25.1.1, only RSA keys are supported for signing the Certificate Signing Request (CSR) during enrollment; ECDSA keys are not.

Client authentication methods

- The EST client supports both TLS certificate-based authentication and HTTP-based authentication. Cisco recommends using TLS certificate-based authentication as per RFC 7030, even though both methods are available.

TLS validation and authentication requirements

- If client or server certificate validation fails during the TLS handshake, EST enrollment fails. No fallback mechanism switches to HTTP authentication if TLS certificate-based client authentication fails.

Re-enrollment

- For re-enrollment, the client always uses the previously issued certificate to establish the TLS connection.
- A re-enrollment profile is required in scenarios where the EST server uses a fixed username and password for re-enrollment, but uses a one-time password (OTP) for initial enrollment. This behavior is optional and depends on how the EST server is configured.

Certificate types and their uses in EST protocol

Learn about the types of certificates used in the EST protocol, along with their issuers and specific uses.

Table 66: Certificates and their corresponding uses

| If the certificate type is... | And the issuer is... | Then it is used for... |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|--|
| EST server certificate | EST server | authenticating the CA during the TLS handshake when the EST server interacts with clients. |
| EST client certificate | EST client | authenticating to the EST server during certificate enrollment operations. |
| End entity or leaf certificate | EST server | non-EST uses, such as authenticating devices in different contexts beyond EST operations. |
| EST server certificate | third-party web CA | providing authentication for the EST server by a CA that is not part of the EST infrastructure but trusted as a third party. |
| third-party EST client certificate | third-party web CA | authenticating the EST client to the EST server for initial interactions before enrollment. |

Trust anchor databases in EST protocol

Effective certificate validation and authentication in the EST protocol involve different types of trust anchor (TA) databases, each serving specific purposes.

A TA database refers to a repository of trusted anchor certificates used to verify the authenticity of a Certification Authority (CA) during the certificate enrollment process. The database acts as a trusted source for validating the CA issuing certificates to clients through the EST protocol.

Table 67: Trust anchor databases and their uses

| If the TA database type is... | Then it is used by... | For the purpose of... |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| EST server | EST server | authenticating certificates issued by the EST CA during enroll and re-enroll operations. |
| EST server (implicit) | EST server | authenticating certificates issued by third-party TAs; can be disabled if not needed. |
| EST client | EST client | authenticating EST server certificates issued by the EST CA. |
| EST client (implicit) | EST client | authenticating an EST server using an externally issued certificate; can be disabled if unnecessary. |

Pre-defined message types in EST protocol

The EST protocol includes several pre-defined message types, each serving distinct functions to facilitate secure certificate provisioning:

- **CACerts**—This message type is used to request the CA certificates. It ensures the client can validate the CA's authenticity before proceeding with certificate enrollment.
- **SimpleEnroll**—Utilized for simple enrollment of a certificate, this message type involves a client sending a certificate signing request (CSR) to the CA. If the request is valid, the CA issues a certificate in response.
- **Reenroll**—Designed for requesting certificate renewal or reissuance, this message type allows clients to obtain a new certificate with updated validity or information when an existing certificate is about to expire.

Configure the EST protocol

Use this procedure to configure the EST protocol on your router, enabling secure and automated certificate provisioning.

Before you begin

Before configuring the EST protocol, ensure

- access to the EST server is established and operational,
- required certificates and keys are available for configuration,
- you meet specific encryption requirements if you must use HTTP-based authentication:

- Type6 encryption is enabled using the command **password6 encryption aes** for secure password handling, and
- you create a master key and store it in Trust Anchor Module (TAM) using the command **key config-key password-encryption** to facilitate encryption.



Note A master key for Type 6 encryption is typically stored securely within the device internal memory, specifically within a protected area known as the TAM.

Procedure

Step 1

Select the authentication method.

You can configure either TLS certificate-based authentication, HTTP-based authentication, or both. Use the table below to determine the appropriate sub-step based on the availability of a bootstrap certificate.

Table 68: Bootstrap certificate availability and authentication method

| If... | Then follow... |
|--|---|
| A bootstrap certificate is not available | HTTP-Based Authentication sub-step. |
| A bootstrap certificate is available | TLS-Based Authentication sub-step. |

- a) For HTTP-based authentication, create client authentication profiles for enrollment and re-enrollment.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# client-authentication profile P1_enroll
Router(config-client-authentication-profile)# username estuser password Encrypt6 estpwd_enrol
Router(config-client-authentication-profile)# client-authentication profile P2_re-enroll
Router(config-client-authentication-profile)# username estuser password Encrypt6 estpwd_re_enrol
Router(config-client-authentication-profile)# commit
```

Table 69: Re-enrollment profile scenarios for HTTP-based authentication

| If... | Then... |
|---|--|
| separate profiles are configured for enrollment and re-enrollment | <i>P1_enroll</i> is used for enrollment and <i>P2_re-enroll</i> is used for re-enrollment. |
| only the enrollment profile is configured | <i>P1_enroll</i> is used for both enrollment and re-enrollment. |

- b) For TLS-based authentication, configure an SSL profile with the bootstrap certificate.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# ssl profile EST_SSL_profile
Router(config-SSL-profile)# certificate EST_BOOTSTRAP_TP
Router(config-SSL-profile)# commit
```

For initial enrollment, ensure you add a bootstrap certificate using existing methods like terminal, SCEP, and so on.

Step 2 Configure a PKI trustpoint to specify the enrollment method as EST and attach the authentication profiles.

The code example includes CLI commands to attach both HTTP and TLS-based authentication profiles.

This command initializes the EST method for the specified trustpoint.

Example:

```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)#crypto ca trustpoint EST_TP
Router(config)#SSL profile EST_SSL_profile
Router(config-trustp)#method est
Router(config-method-est)#commit
Router(config-trustp)#enrollment authentication-profile P1_enroll
Router(config-trustp)#re-enrollment authentication-profile P2_re-enroll
Router(config-trustp)#commit
```

Step 3 Authenticate and enroll the certificates.

Run the CLI commands in EXEC mode.

```
Router# crypto ca authenticate EST_TP
Router# crypto ca enroll EST_TP
```

Step 4 Verify the certificate enrollment using EST is successful.

Example:

```
Router# show crypto ca trustpoint EST_TP:
crypto ca trustpoint est_tp
  ssl-profile example
  method est
  !
  enrollment authentication-profile enroll
  re-enrollment authentication-profile re_enroll
  !
```

Step 5 Verify the certificates are enrolled on the trustpoint.

Example:

```
Router# show crypto ca certificates EST_TP

Trustpoint      : EST_TP
=====
CA certificate
  Serial Number  : 10:01
  Subject:
      CN=SUB_CA_CERT,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
  Issued By      :
      CN=TWO-LEVEL-CA,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
  Validity Start : 12:31:40 UTC Sun Jun 14 2020
  Validity End   : 12:31:40 UTC Wed Jun 12 2030

  CRL Distribution Point
      http://10.105.236.78/crl.der
  SHA1 Fingerprint:
      D8E0C11ECED96F67FDBC800DB6A126676A76BD62
Trusted Certificate Chain
  Serial Number  : 0F:A0:06:7A:C9:5E:A9:E7:61:A2:B9:2B:27:D1:D6:8F:3D:51:43:3B
  Subject:
      CN=TWO-LEVEL-CA,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
  Issued By      :
      CN=TWO-LEVEL-CA,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
```

Configure the EST protocol

```
Validity Start : 13:12:32 UTC Sun Jun 07 2020
Validity End   : 13:12:32 UTC Sat Jun 02 2040

CRL Distribution Point
  http://10.105.236.78/crl.der
SHA1 Fingerprint:
  08E71248FB7578614442E713AC87C461D173952F
Router certificate
Key usage      : General Purpose
Status        : Available
Serial Number  : 28:E5
Subject:
  CN=test
Issued By     :
  CN=SUB_CA_CERT,OU=SPBU,O=CSCO,L=BGL,ST=KA,C=IN
Validity Start : 08:49:54 UTC Mon Feb 06 2023
Validity End   : 08:49:54 UTC Wed Mar 08 2023
SHA1 Fingerprint:
  6C8644FA67D9CEBC7C5665C35838265F578835AB
Associated Trustpoint: EST_TP
```



CHAPTER 21

802-1x Port Based Authentication

- [802.1X port-based authentication, on page 427](#)
- [Usage guidelines and restrictions for 802.1X port-based authentication, on page 430](#)
- [Understanding 802.1X Port-Based Authentication, on page 431](#)
- [Configure 802.1X host-modes, on page 432](#)
- [Configure 802.1X with remote RADIUS authentication, on page 432](#)
- [Configure 802.1X with local EAP authentication, on page 434](#)
- [Configure router as 802.1X supplicant, on page 435](#)
- [Verify 802.1X Port-Based Authentication, on page 436](#)
- [802.1X port-based authentication with MAB fallback, on page 438](#)
- [RADIUS Change of Authorization for 802.1X and MAB sessions, on page 442](#)

802.1X port-based authentication

The 802.1X port-based authentication is a type of authentication that enables port-based network access control as defined by the IEEE 802.1X standard that

- operates at the Layer 2 and prevents an unauthorized network device from connecting to a network via LAN ports,
- uses a client-server model to authenticate a client network device (hereafter referred to as client) before allowing it access to a network, and
- controls port access, ensuring the port-interface blocks all traffic to and from a client until it is successfully authenticated.

In 802.1X port-based authentication, the client-server model involves a client device requesting network access by communicating with an authentication server, typically a Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) server. The client sends its credentials, which the server verifies against authorized user databases. Upon successful authentication, the server permits network access, ensuring only authorized devices can connect.

This chapter describes how to configure IEEE 802.1X port-based authentication in Cisco 8000 series routers to prevent unauthorized network devices from gaining access to the network.

Table 70: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| 802.1X port-based authentication | Release 26.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: Q200, P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100, K100], Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q100, Q200, P100])(select variants only*)</p> <p>*This feature is extended to these hardware variants:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8201 • 8201-32FH • 88-LC0-36FH-M • 8212-48FH-M • 8711-32FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM • 8712-MOD-M • 8711-48Z-M • 8011-4G24Y4H-I • 8011-32Y8L2H2FH • 8011-12G12X4Y-A |

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| 802.1X port-based authentication | Release 25.1.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100], 8700 [ASIC: P100]); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: P100])</p> <p>You can now secure network access by requiring client network devices to authenticate with encrypted digital certificates before gaining access.</p> <p>The 802.1X port-based authentication ensures that a port remains closed to all traffic until the connected client successfully completes authentication using the Extensible Authentication Protocol with TLS (EAP-TLS) encryption. This prevents unauthorized access and enforces secure, certificate-based communication, enhancing network security and integrity.</p> |

Supported protocols for 802.1X port-based authentication

802.1X port-based authentication supports these protocols for secure and reliable network access:

- **EAP**—Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) is a flexible authentication framework that supports multiple authentication methods, allowing network devices to negotiate the most appropriate protocol for secure communications.
- **EAP-TLS**—Extensible Authentication Protocol with Transport Layer Security (EAP-TLS) is an authentication protocol that leverages TLS to provide robust encryption and mutual authentication, ensuring secure and private communication between the client and server during the authentication process.
- **EAPOL**—Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN (EAPOL) is a network protocol used in the IEEE 802.1X standard, facilitating the exchange of EAP packets over wired or wireless LANs, enabling secure port-based network access control.

IEEE 802.1X Device Roles

Devices in the network have specific roles in IEEE 802.1X authentication:

- **Authenticator**—A router that facilitates authentication for other network devices or clients on the same LAN.
- **Supplicant**—A network device or client that seeks authentication from an authenticator on a point-to-point LAN segment.

- **Authentication server**—A RADIUS server that verifies client credentials and authorizes network access through the authenticator.

802.1X host modes

The 802.1X host modes table describes the two host modes supported by 802.1X.

For information on how to configure the host modes, refer to Configure 802.1X host-modes.

Table 71: 802.1X host modes

| Host modes | Description |
|-------------|---|
| Single-host | While in this mode, the port allows a single host or client to be authenticated and allows only ingress traffic from the authenticated peer. A security violation is detected if more than one client is present. |
| Multi-auth | This is the default host mode. While in this mode, multiple hosts can independently authenticate through the same port and ingress traffic is allowed from all authenticated peers. The router can support up to 20 clients using the 802.1X protocol in multi-authentication mode. |

Prerequisites for 802.1X Port-Based Authentication

Prerequisites for 802.1X port-based authentication are:

- K9sec RPM is required to enable this feature.
- Ensure that both RADIUS/EAP-server and supplicant are configured with supported EAP methods when remote authentication is used.
- If the device is used as a local EAP server, only EAP-TLS method is supported.
- Ensure that a Certificate Authority (CA) server is configured for the network with a valid certificate.
- Ensure that the supplicant, authenticator, and CA server are synchronized using Network Time Protocol (NTP). If time is not synchronized on all these devices, certificates may not be validated.

Usage guidelines and restrictions for 802.1X port-based authentication

Consider these restrictions and usage guidelines when implementing 802.1X port-based authentication on the Cisco 8000 platform:

Port authentication

- 802.1X port authentication must be configured on physical ports.
- Supported modes for 802.1X port-based authentication:
 - Single-host

- Multi-auth

VLAN sub-interfaces

- VLAN sub-interfaces must have pre-configured VLAN IDs.
- All VLAN-tagged traffic is dropped until successful 802.1X authentication of the port.
- No default VLAN assignment is provided for unauthenticated MAC addresses.
- Authenticated MAC addresses are validated at the main port, independent of VLAN assignment.
- VLAN-tagged traffic is allowed only for authenticated MAC addresses.

Untagged traffic

- Untagged EAPoL traffic is always allowed.
- All other untagged traffic is dropped until successful 802.1X authentication of the port.
- Untagged traffic is allowed only for authenticated MAC addresses.
- No default VLAN assignment is provided for untagged traffic by the port.

Unsupported hardware variants

802.1X port-based authentication is not supported on these hardware variants.

- 8608-SYS
- 8404-RSP1-48-EM
- 8404-RSP1-2FH/4H

Understanding 802.1X Port-Based Authentication

IEEE 802.1X port-based authentication is configured on Cisco 8000 series router to prevent unauthorized routers (supplicants) from gaining access to the network. An authentication server validates the supplicant that is connected to an authenticator port, before the services offered by the client or the network is made available to the supplicant.

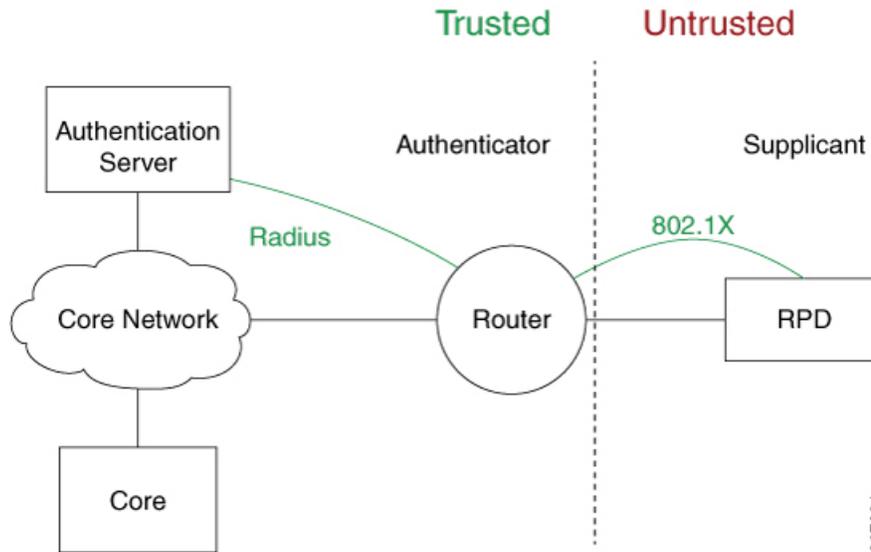
Until the supplicant is authenticated, the port is in *Unauthorized* state, and 802.1X access control allows only Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN (EAPoL) packets through the port. EAPoL frames can have either default EtherType of 0x888E or Cisco-defined EtherType of 0x876F. After successful authentication of the supplicant, the port transitions to *Authorized* state, and normal traffic passes through the port for the authenticated client.

Periodic reauthentication can be enabled to use either the port-configured value or from authentication server. The authentication server communicates the reauthentication-timer value in Session-Timeout attribute, with the final RADIUS Access-Accept message. On 802.1X reauthentication failure, the port is blocked and moved back to the *Unauthorized* state.

If the link state of a port changes from up to down, or if an EAPOL-logoff frame is received, the port returns to the *Unauthorized* state.

The following figure shows the topology for IEEE 802.1X port-based authentication:

Figure 29: Topology for IEEE 802.1X Port-Based Authentication



By default, the dot1x configured port is in multi-auth mode. However, this behaviour can be altered by changing the host mode under dot1x profile.



Note Port-control is enforced only on the ingress traffic.

Configure 802.1X host-modes

Use the following steps to configure 802.1X host-modes. Here, `host-mode` is introduced under the authenticator mode in dot1x profile. The default is `multi-auth` mode.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# dot1x profile {name}
Router(config-dot1x-auth)# pae {authenticator}
Router(config-dot1x-auth-auth)# host-mode
    multi-auth    multiple authentication mode
    multi-host    multiple host mode
    single-host   single host mode
```

Configure 802.1X with remote RADIUS authentication

Use this procedure to configure 802.1X port-based authentication using a remote RADIUS server. This method enables centralized authentication and access control, ensuring network security.

Before you begin

Before you configure 802.1X port-based authentication using a remote RADIUS server, verify

- the RADIUS server is operational and reachable, and
- the pre-shared key for secure communication between the device and the RADIUS server is available.

Procedure

Step 1 Configure the RADIUS server.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# radius-server host 209.165.200.225 auth-port 1646 key secret007
Router(config)# radius-server vsa attribute ignore unknown
Router(config)# commit
```

Verify the configuration using the **show run radius** command.

Step 2 Configure the 802.1X authentication method.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
Router(config)# commit
```

Note

Only default AAA method is supported for 802.1X authentication.

Verify the configuration using the **show run aaa** command.

Step 3 Configure the 802.1X authenticator profile.

Example:

```
Router(config)# dot1x profile auth
Router(config-dot1x-auth)# pae authenticator
Router(config-dot1x-auth)# authenticator
Router(config-dot1x-auth-auth)# timer reauth-time 3600
Router(config-dot1x-auth-auth)# host-mode {multi-auth | single-host}
Router(config-dot1x-auth-auth)# commit
```

Verify the configuration using the **show run dot1x** command.

Step 4 Attach the 802.1X profile to an interface.

Example:

```
Router(config)# interface HundredGigE 0/3/0/0
Router(config-if)# dot1x profile auth
Router(config-if)# commit
```

Verify the configuration using the **show run interface HundredGigE 0/3/0/0** command.

The port now uses 802.1X EAP-TLS authentication to validate connected devices via the remote RADIUS server. Unauthorized devices cannot access the network until successfully authenticated.

Configure 802.1X with local EAP authentication

Use this procedure to configure 802.1X port-based authentication using a locally hosted EAP server on a Cisco 8000 router. This configuration enables mutual authentication between the router and client using certificates.

In local EAP authentication, the EAP-server is co-located with the authenticator locally on the router. This feature enables the router to authenticate 802.1X clients with EAP-TLS method using TLS Version 1.2. It provides EAP-TLS based mutual authentication, where a Master Session Key (MSK) is generated on successful authentication.

Procedure

Step 1 Generate an RSA key pair.

Example:

```
Router# crypto key generate rsa <keypair-label>
```

Step 2 Configure a trustpoint.

Example:

```
Router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint <tp_name>
Router(config-trustp)# enrollment url <ca-url>
Router(config-trustp)# subject-name <x.500-name>
Router(config-trustp)# rsakeypair <keypair-label>
Router(config-trustp)# commit
```

Trustpoints let you manage and track CAs and certificates. A trustpoint includes the identity of the CA, CA-specific configuration parameters, and an association with one, enrolled identity certificate. After you have defined a trustpoint, you can reference it by name in commands requiring that you specify a CA.

Step 3 Configure a domain name.

Example:

```
Router(config)# domain name <domain-name>
```

The domain name is required for certificate enrollment.

Step 4 Configure certificates.

Example:

```
Router# crypto ca authenticate <tp_name>
Router# crypto ca enroll <tp_name>
```

Ensure the Certificate Authority (CA) issues the required certificates for authentication.

Step 5 Configure an EAP profile.

Example:

```
Router(config)# eap profile <profile_name>
Router(config-eap)# identity <user-name>
Router(config-eap)# method tls pki-trustpoint <tp_name>
Router(config-eap)# commit
```

Step 6 Configure the 802.1X authenticator profile.

Example:

```
Router(config)# dot1x profile local_auth
Router(config-dot1x-auth)# pae authenticator
Router(config-dot1x-auth)# authenticator
Router(config-dot1x-auth-auth)# eap profile <profile_name>
Router(config-dot1x-auth-auth)# host-mode {multi-auth | single-host}
Router(config-dot1x-auth-auth)# timer reauth-time 3600
Router(config-dot1x-auth-auth)# commit
```

Step 7 Configure 802.1X profile on an interface.

Example:

```
Router(config)# interface <interface-name>
Router(config-if)# dot1x profile local_auth
Router(config-if)# commit
```

The router now uses 802.1X with a local EAP server to authenticate connected devices using EAP-TLS and certificates.

Configure router as 802.1X supplicant

Before you begin

Before you configure the router as a 802.1X supplicant

- generate an RSA key pair for certificate-based authentication,
- configure a trustpoint with the appropriate Certificate Authority (CA),
- configure a domain name,
- obtain CA certificate for the given trust point and enroll the device certificate with CA, and
- ensure an EAP profile is configured for authentication.

Procedure

Step 1 Configure the 802.1X supplicant profile.

Example:

```
Router(config)# dot1x profile supp
Router(config-dot1x-supp)# pae supplicant
Router(config-dot1x-supp)# supplicant
Router(config-dot1x-supp-supp)# eap profile <profile_name>
Router(config-dot1x-supp-supp)# commit
```

Step 2 Attach the supplicant profile to an interface.

Example:

```
Router(config)# interface <interface-name>
Router(config-if)# dot1x profile supp
Router(config-if)# commit
```

The router is now configured as a supplicant in 802.1X authentication, enabling it to authenticate with an upstream authenticator using EAP-TLS and certificates.

Verify 802.1X Port-Based Authentication

The 802.1X authentication can be verified using the following:

- Show command outputs
- Syslog messages

Show Command Outputs

The **show dot1x interface** command verifies whether the 802.1X port-based authentication is successful or not. If the authentication is successful, the traffic is allowed on the configured interface.

```
Router# show dot1x interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0 detail
```

```
Dot1x info for HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
-----
Interface short name      : Hu 0/0/1/0
Interface handle          : 0x4080
Interface MAC              : 021a.9eeb.6a59
Ethertype                 : 888E
PAE                        : Authenticator
Dot1x Port Status       : AUTHORIZED
Dot1x Profile              : test_prof
L2 Transport              : FALSE
Authenticator:
  Port Control             : Enabled
  Config Dependency        : Resolved
  Eap profile              : None
  ReAuth                   : Disabled
Client List:
```

```

Supplicant           : 027e.15f2.cae7
Programming Status   : Add Success
Auth SM State        : Authenticated
Auth Bend SM State   : Idle
Last authen time     : 2018 Dec 11 17:00:30.912
Last authen server   : 10.77.132.66
Time to next reauth  : 0 day(s), 00:51:39
MKA Interface:
Dot1x Tie Break Role : NA (Only applicable for PAE role both)
EAP Based Macsec     : Disabled
MKA Start time       : NA
MKA Stop time        : NA
MKA Response time    : NA

```

Syslog Messages

Syslogs on Authenticator

When 802.1x configuration is applied on an interface, the port becomes 802.1X controlled, and the following syslog message is displayed:

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-PORT_CONTROL_ENABLE_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/1/0 : Port Control Enabled
```

After successful authentication of supplicant, the following syslog messages are displayed:

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-AUTH_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/1/0 : Authentication successful for client 027E.15F2.CAE7
```

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-PORT_CONTROL_ADD_CLIENT_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/1/0 : Port Access Enabled For Client
027E.15F2.CAE7
```

When 802.1X port-based configuration is removed from an interface, the following syslog message is displayed:

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-PORT_CONTROL_DISABLE_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/1/0 : Port Control Disabled
```

When authentication fails, the following syslog messages are displayed:

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-AUTH_FAIL : Hu0/0/1/0 : Authentication fail for client 027E.15F2.CAE7
```

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-PORT_CONTROL_REMOVE_CLIENT_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/1/0 : Port Access Disabled For Client
027E.15F2.CAE7
```

When authentication server is unreachable, the following syslog message is displayed:

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-AAA_UNREACHABLE : Hu0/0/1/0 : AAA server unreachable for client 027E.15F2.CAE7
, Retrying Authentication
```

When authentication method is not configured, the following syslog message is displayed:

```
%L2-DOT1X-4-NO_AUTHENTICATION_METHOD : Hu0/0/1/0 : No authentication method configured
```

Syslogs on Supplicant

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-SUPP_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/1/0 : Authentication successful with authenticator
008a.96a4.b050
```

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-SUPP_FAIL : Hu0/0/1/0 : Authentication successful with authenticator
0000.0000.0000.0000
```

```
%L2-DOT1X-5-SUPP_FAIL : Hu0/0/1/0 : Authentication successful with authenticator
008a.96a4.b028
```

802.1X port-based authentication with MAB fallback

MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB) is a network fallback authentication method that

- applies to networks with both 802.1X-capable and non-802.1X-capable devices
- authenticates devices that cannot use 802.1X,
- allows 802.1X to take precedence over MAB, and
- terminates the MAB authorization upon successful 802.1X authentication.

Table 72: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|---|---------------------|---|
| MAC Authentication Bypass fallback method for 802.1X authentication | Release 25.3.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: P100]); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q200, P100]) (select variants only*)</p> <p>You can use MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB) as a fallback method to enhance network security and flexibility when routers do not support the 802.1X protocol. By default, 802.1X authentication is set as the primary authentication method. In multi-authentication mode, a router supports up to 20 MAB clients simultaneously, in networks with a mix of 802.1X-capable and non-802.1X-capable devices.</p> <p>The feature introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI:</p> <p>show dot1x port authentication</p> <p>*This feature is supported on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8212-48FH-M • 88-LC0-36FH-M • 88-LC1-36EH • 88-LC1-12TH24FH-E • 88-LC1-52Y8H-EM |

Methods used to prioritize 802.1X authentication

An 802.1X-enabled port running in fallback MAB mode can prioritize 802.1X authentication using one of these methods:

- **EAPOL detection:** In MAB mode, the router monitors for EAPOL packets from a supplicant. If EAPOL packets are detected and 802.1X authentication succeeds, the 802.1X session takes precedence, terminating MAB authorization and assuming control.
- **Change of Authorization (CoA):** The AAA server triggers a CoA request through RADIUS to enforce 802.1X authentication.

Conditions for MAB fallback from 802.1X authentication

Each condition outlines a specific scenario and the corresponding router response that triggers fallback to MAB.

- **Initial authentication:** If no EAPOL packets are detected within three intervals of 10 seconds each.
- **Reauthentication:** If no EAPOL packets are detected within three intervals of 30 seconds each.
- **Authentication failure:** If 802.1X authentication failure is reported by the remote server.
- **Authentication timeout:** When the RADIUS server times out during 802.1X authentication, and the **server dead action auth-fail** command is explicitly set under the dot1x profile. Although the command is enabled by default, explicitly configuring it ensures that the intended action remains consistent across software updates or device replacements. This reduces the risk of unintended changes in behavior.

Authentication failure scenarios of 802.1X and MAB

Authentication failure scenarios that help to understand the common failure reasons and the router's response to them.

- [802.1X authentication failure scenarios](#)
- [MAB authentication failure scenarios](#)

802.1X authentication failure scenarios

- **No EAPoL received:** The client either does not support 802.1X or has not responded to the 802.1X EAPoL request.
- **Server reject:** The RADIUS server sent an *Access-Reject* message for 802.1X authentication, indicating authentication failure.
- **Server unreachable:** When the RADIUS server is unavailable, and the default **server dead action auth-fail** command is applied.

Behavior on 802.1X authentication failure

- **No EAPoL received:** The client either does not support 802.1X or has not responded to the 802.1X EAPoL request.

- Server reject: The RADIUS server sent an *Access-Reject* message for 802.1X authentication, indicating authentication failure.
- Server unreachable: When the RADIUS server is unavailable, and the default **server dead action auth-fail** command is applied.

MAB authentication failure scenarios

This section outlines common RADIUS server failures affecting MAB authentication.

- Server reject: The RADIUS server sent an *Access-Reject* message for MAB authentication, indicating authentication failure.
- Server unreachable: When the RADIUS server is unavailable, and the default **server dead action auth-fail** command is applied.

Behavior on MAB method failure

If all authentication methods have failed, after 60 seconds, the client and any associated programming will be deleted.

Configure 802.1X port-based authentication with MAB fallback

The purpose of this task is to configure 802.1X and MAB authentication methods and verify the result of each authentication method attempted.

Procedure

- Step 1** Configure the port to enforce 802.1x and MAB authentication before allowing access to various services through the port.

Example:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#dot1x profile auth_mab
Router(config-dot1x-auth_mab)#pae authenticator
Router(config-dot1x-auth_mab)#mab
Router(config-dot1x-auth_mab)#authenticator timer reauth-time 60
Router(config-dot1x-auth_mab)#authenticator server dead action auth-fail
```

The 802.1x profile named **auth_mab** is configured globally with **pae authenticator** and **mab** commands.

- Step 2** Execute the **show run dot1x profile <profile-name>** command to verify if the port is configured to authenticate both 802.1X and MAB.

Example:

```
Router#show run dot1x profile auth_mab
Mon Jun  9 14:20:38.956 IST
dot1x profile auth_mab
mab
pae authenticator
authenticator
timer reauth-time 60
```

```
server dead action auth-retry
!
!
```

Step 3 Enable the port control on the interface by configuring the 802.1x profile under it.

Example:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 0/1/0/0
Router(config-if)#dot1x profile auth_mab
```

Step 4 Execute the **show run interface <interface>** command to verify that the port control is configured on the interface.

Example:

```
Router#show run interface GigabitEthernet 0/1/0/0
Mon Jun 9 14:23:13.982 IST
interface GigabitEthernet0/1/0/0
 dot1x profile auth_mab
!
```

Step 5 Verify that the output shows 802.1X authentication failed because no EAPoL packets were received from the client.

Example:

```
Router#show dot1x port authentication
Thu Feb 6 05:50:00.086 UTC

NODE: node0_2_CPU0
=====
Interface          Client          Method          Status
=====
GigabitEthernet 0/1/0/0  ac4a.6730.0620  mab             Authorized

Router#show dot1x port authentication detail
Thu Feb 6 05:42:37.691 UTC

NODE: node0_2_CPU0

Port Authentication Info for GigabitEthernet 0/1/0/0
-----
Interface Handle   : 0x80001c0
Interface State    : Up
Port Status        : Authorized (1/1)
Profile            : test_auth_mab
Method List        : dot1x, mab
Client :
MAC Address        : ac4a.6730.0620
Status             : Authorized
Programming Status : Add Success
Unauthorized Timer  : 60s, timer off
Method:
dot1x              : Failed (No EAPoL received)
mab                : Success
```

a) Verify that the output shows the client is authenticated through the 802.1X authentication method.

Example:

```
Router#show dot1x port authentication
```

```

Thu Feb  6 05:50:00.086 UTC

NODE: node0_2_CPU0
=====
      Interface           Client           Method           Status
=====
GigabitEthernet 0/1/0/0  ac4a.6730.0620   dot1x            Authorized

Router#show dot1x port authentication detail
Thu Feb  6 05:59:41.206 UTC

NODE: node0_2_CPU0

Port Authentication Info for GigabitEthernet 0/1/0/0
-----
Interface Handle       : 0x80001c0
Interface State        : Up
Port Status            : Authorized (1/1)
Profile                : test_auth_mab
Method List            : dot1x, mab
Client :
MAC Address            : ac4a.6730.0620
Status                 : Authorized
Programming Status    : Add Success
Unauthorized Timer     : 60s, timer off
Method:
dot1x                  : Success
mab                    : Not Run

```

RADIUS Change of Authorization for 802.1X and MAB sessions

RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA) is an authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) feature that

- provides a mechanism to dynamically change the attributes of the active client sessions on the router using CoA requests
- allows CoA clients such as external AAA or policy servers to initiate re-authentication requests to the device that is functioning as the CoA server, such as a Cisco IOS XR router
- supports CoA requests per session for re-authentication of 802.1X and MAC authentication bypass (MAB) sessions using the RADIUS protocol, and
- eliminates the need for complete session termination for changing the session attributes of active client sessions.

CoA using RADIUS protocol is an AAA feature that allows you to change the client session attributes after authentication. When a policy changes for a user or user group in AAA, administrators can send the RADIUS CoA packets from the AAA server to reinitialize authentication and apply the new policy.

Table 73: Feature History Table

| Feature Name | Release Information | Feature Description |
|--|---------------------|--|
| RADIUS Change of Authorization for 802.1X and MAB sessions | Release 25.3.1 | <p>Introduced in this release on: Fixed Systems (8200 [ASIC: Q100, Q200], 8700 [ASIC: K100]); 8010 [ASIC: A100]); Modular Systems (8800 [LC ASIC: Q100, Q200])</p> <p>You can now prioritize dot1x authentication on a dot1x-enabled port that is already running in fallback MAC authentication bypass (MAB) mode on your router. This feature allows Change of Authorization (CoA) for 802.1X- or MAB-authenticated clients through RADIUS CoA requests from the external AAA server or policy server. This capability allows external servers to trigger authentication updates for the client sessions without the need to disconnect and reconnect.</p> <p>The feature introduces these changes:</p> <p>CLI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The show dot1x port authentication command is modified to include the statistics keyword. • The show radius dynamic-author command is modified to include the Dot1x COA Statistics field in the output. |

RADIUS CoA requests for 802.1X and MAB sessions

Cisco IOS XR Software supports the RADIUS CoA extensions defined in RFC 5176 to support CoA for 802.1X and MAB sessions. These CoA extensions are typically used in a push model in which the request originates from the external server to the device attached to the network. It enables dynamic reconfiguration of sessions from external AAA or policy servers to allow session identification, host re-authentication, and session termination.

Response codes for CoA requests

Two response codes are possible with the push model's CoA-Request:

- CoA acknowledgment (CoA-ACK)
- CoA non-acknowledgment (CoA-NAK)

Error strings in the CoA-NAK message

These are the possible error strings in the CoA-NAK message:

- Client not found
- Client not authorized
- Invalid Request
- Invalid NAS port ID
- Resource unavailable at the moment, try after sometime
- Missing mandatory subscriber:command=reauthenticate
- Missing mandatory Calling-Station-Id
- Invalid subscriber command received
- Calling-Station-Id format is invalid

These are the error strings in the CoA-NAK message that are specific to rate limit:

- Per-client CoA rate limit: 1 request every 60s
- Global CoA rate limit: 128 requests per minute

CoA commands and rules for 802.1X and MAB session re-authentication

To initiate session re-authentication, the AAA server must send a standard CoA-Request message containing specific Vendor-Specific Attributes (VSAs) listed in this table.

| CoA command | Cisco VSA |
|-----------------------------|---|
| session reauthenticate | Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:command=reauthenticate" |
| session reauthenticate-type | Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:reauthenticate-type=last"
or
Cisco:Avpair="subscriber:reauthenticate-type=rerun" |

The **reauthenticate-type** defines the type of authentication method to be used for re-authentication. It can be either of these:

- **last**: The CoA re-authentication request uses the authentication method that last succeeded on the session
- **re-run**: The authentication process is completely rerun

These rules apply to 802.1X and MAB session re-authentication using RADIUS CoA requests:

- The **subscriber:command=reauthenticate** must be present in the VSA to trigger a re-authentication.

- If **subscriber:reauthenticate-type** is not specified, the behavior is same as that of **reauthenticate-type=last**. That is, the system reruns the previous successful authentication method for that session, by default.
- The **subscriber:reauthenticate-type** is valid only when included with the **subscriber:command=reauthenticate** VSA.

Session identification attributes in the CoA requests

Session identification attributes included in the CoA message must match the session with the router. Else, the router returns a CoA-NAK message.

| Attribute | IETF attribute | Importance |
|--------------------|---|------------|
| Calling-Station-Id | Attribute 31, which contains the host MAC address. | Mandatory |
| NAS-Port-ID | Attribute 87, which contains the complete interface name on which the client MAC address is currently served. | Optional |

Guideline for supporting RADIUS CoA for 802.1X and MAB sessions

Explicitly configure the CoA server with the IP address of the CoA client and the associated pre-shared key to ensure secure communication.

The router supports only pre-shared key-based RADIUS CoA.

Enable RADIUS CoA for 802.1X and MAB sessions

The purpose of this task is to enable RADIUS CoA for 802.1X and MAB sessions on Cisco IOS XR routers.

Before you begin

Configure CoA server with the IP address of the CoA client and the associated pre-shared key to ensure secure communication.

Procedure

Step 1 Enable RADIUS CoA server on the router.

Example:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#aaa server radius dynamic-author
Router(config-dynamic-author)#port 1700
Router(config-dynamic-author)#server-key test-password
Router(config-dynamic-author)#client 10.101.130.122 vrf default
Router(config-dynamic-author-client)#server-key test-password
Router(config-dynamic-author-client)#commit
```

Step 2 Set up the remote RADIUS server on the router.

Example:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#radius-server vsa attribute ignore unknown
Router(config)#radius-server host 10.101.130.122 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
Router(config-radius-host)#key test-password
Router(config-radius-host)#commit
```

Step 3 Send a CoA request with Cisco VSAs from the CoA client to change authorization for an existing 802.1X or MAB session. The CoA client can be an external AAA server or policy server.

Step 4 Check the system logs on the router to verify if the change of authorization for the client session succeeded.

Table 74: System logs for CoA-ACK scenarios

| If the client is... | And re-authentication type is... | Then the router displays.. |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| 802.1X-authenticated | last | %L2-DOT1X-5-COA_ACK : Hu0/0/0/5: Processed the CoA to 'reauthenticate(last)' client 008a.96a4.b052
%L2-DOT1X-5-AUTH_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/0/5: Authentication successful for client 008a.96a4.b052 |
| 802.1X-authenticated | rerun | %L2-DOT1X-5-COA_ACK : Hu0/0/0/5: Processed the CoA to 'reauthenticate(rerun)' client 008a.96a4.b052
%L2-DOT1X-5-AUTH_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/0/5: Authentication successful for client 008a.96a4.b052 |
| MAB-authenticated | last | %L2-DOT1X-5-COA_ACK : Hu0/0/0/5: Processed the CoA to 'reauthenticate(last)' client f4db.e62e.c61b
%L2-DOT1X-5-MAB_AUTH_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/0/5: Authentication successful for client f4db.e62e.c61b |
| MAB-authenticated | rerun | %L2-DOT1X-5-COA_ACK : Hu0/0/0/5: Processed the CoA to 'reauthenticate(rerun)' client f4db.e62e.c61b

The router processes 802.1X authentication first. If it fails, it proceeds with the re-authentication process using MAB.

%L2-DOT1X-5-MAB_AUTH_SUCCESS : Hu0/0/0/5: Authentication successful for client f4db.e62e.c61b |

Table 75: System logs for CoA-NAK scenarios

| If the client is... | And re-authentication type is... | Then the router displays.. |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| 802.1X- or MAB-unauthorized | last | %L2-DOT1X-5-COA_NAK : Hu0/0/0/5:008a.9634.5cd4: Rejected the CoA to 'reauthenticate(last)' because of 'Client not authorized' |

| If the client is... | And re-authentication type is... | Then the router displays.. |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| 802.1X- or MAB-unauthorized | rerun | %L2-DOT1X-5-COA_NAK : Hu0/0/0/5:008a.9634.5cd4: Rejected the CoA to 'reauthenticate(rerun)' because of 'Client not authorized' |
